



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Edie T 1719. 05. 660

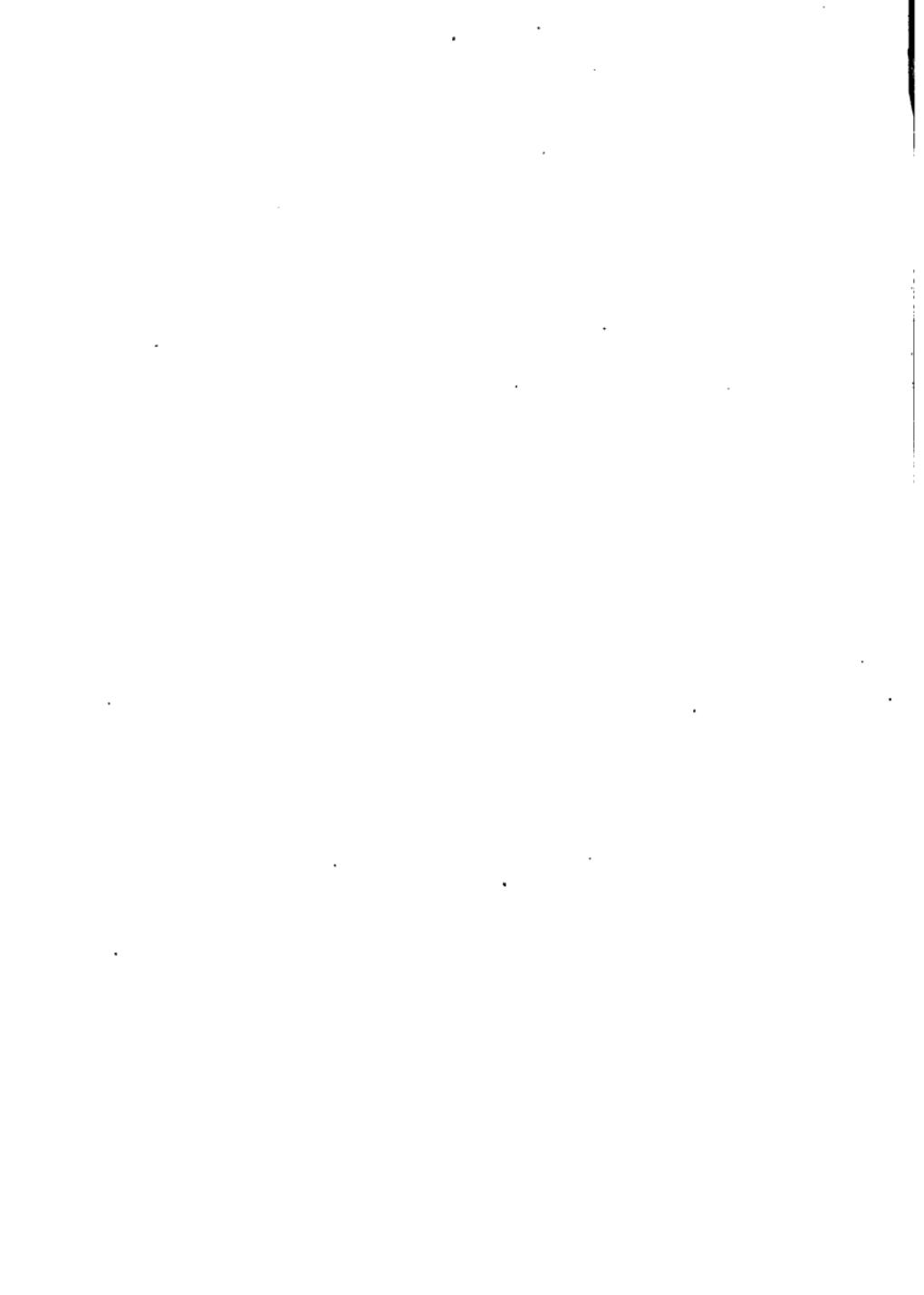
German Study Room

Given to
Library of
Mount Holyoke College

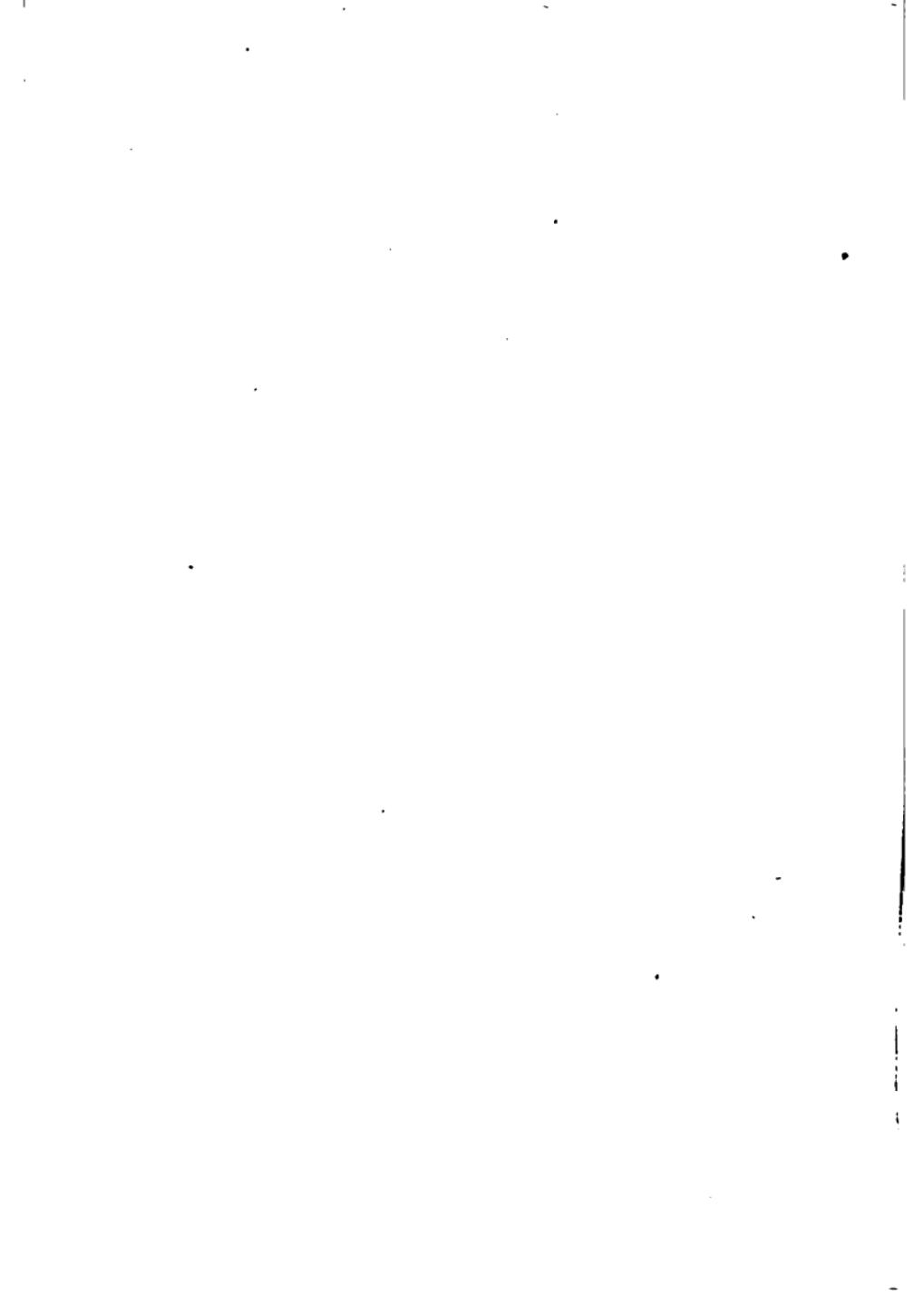
by



3 2044 102 778 099







ELEMENTARY GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY
CHARLES P. OTIS

EIGHTH EDITION
THOROUGHLY REVISED AND PROVIDED WITH
NEW EXERCISES

BY
WILLIAM HERBERT CARRUTH, PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES IN THE UNIVERSITY
OF KANSAS



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
1905

Due T 1719.05.660



COPYRIGHT
BY CHARLES P. OTIS
1881, 1883, 1888

COPYRIGHT, 1889, 1893, 1904
BY
HENRY HOLT & CO.

EDITOR'S PREFACE.

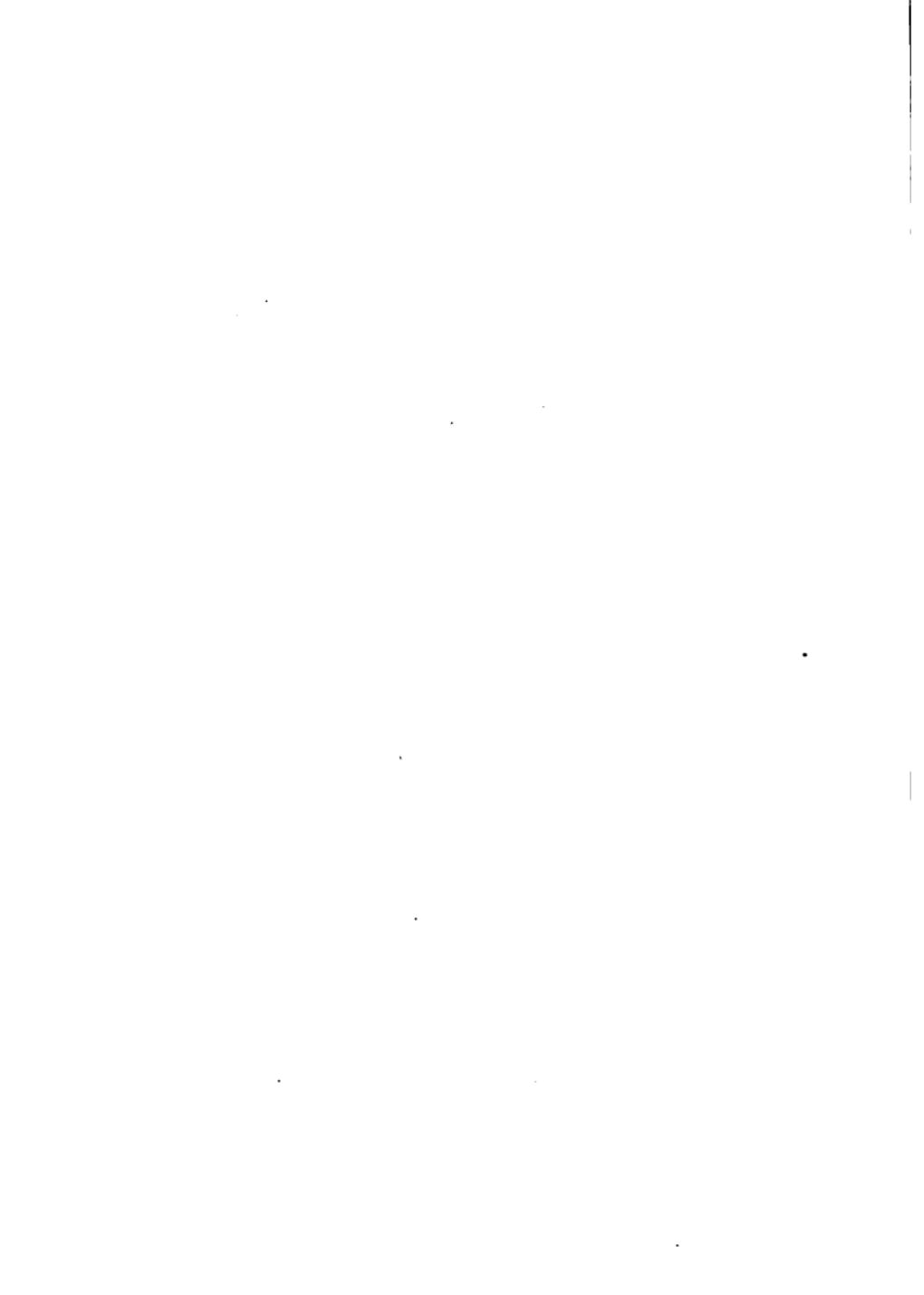
PROFESSOR OTIS'S ELEMENTARY GERMAN has proved to be on the whole such a serviceable book for beginners in German, that it has seemed to me better to revise it thoroughly than to add to the already great number of such handbooks on the market.

The chief features of the revision are a new set of Exercises and the fusion of the two parts into one continuous series of thirty lessons, while in addition some subjects receive a fuller treatment in the book as it now appears. The reasons for the changes will appeal to all friends of Professor Otis's work. The best of exercises grow hackneyed and wear out. The new exercises are fuller and have a certain continuity. The practical objection to the two parts is, that teachers are tempted to slight or to omit the second part, whereas it contains some of the most important features of the subject.

The handbook as it now stands will meet all the needs of high-school students, while the advanced college student will, of course, need a more complete grammar for reference.

W. H. C.

UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS, January, 1904.



AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

THIS manual is intended to serve as a general introduction to German, and consists of a brief outline of the main essentials of the grammar, with exercises and material for practice and illustration. It is therefore no new method, and whatever merit it may have consists in the manner of presentation. It is based on the conviction, that, while a systematic though brief study of the structure of the language should form the groundwork, there should be as much practice as possible with the actual language both as talked and as written. Accordingly, each lesson treats of some essential of the grammar, and provides material for practice both written and oral.

In the *grammar* outline, the aim has been to present the more essential facts as briefly and simply as possible, and in the order best favoring the early practical use of the language. The usual order of presentation has accordingly been deviated from in introducing the verb earlier, and also in postponing the subjunctive mood to the end. Less essential facts of grammar are given in notes scattered through the lessons, which do not, however, in every case refer to the topic under consideration in the particular lesson.

In the *conversations*, the arrangement is such that the question suggests the answer. As indicated, they can be still further extended at pleasure, what is given being rather suggestions for treatment by question and answer than any attempt at exhaustion of the theme. Actual communication in the new language is thus secured from the first, and the pupil enabled to realize that life which the oral use of it inspires, and to gain an impression of its spirit and character.

At the end of each lesson is a short and simple *reading* exercise. This is so arranged with translation or notes, that the pupil will at once see the meaning, though he may not understand the grammatical construction. Indeed, the object of these readings is not grammar-drill, but to furnish material for practice and memorizing, and to gratify the natural eagerness of the beginner to see the language itself. A considerable number of these selections are popular German songs. Pupils should be encouraged, if not required, to sing these. They will thus be memorized in the surest and most agreeable manner, and will prove to be a great assistance to further work and in the cultivation of enthusiasm for the study.

C. P. O.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.

IT is recommended that the teacher go over the lesson with the class in advance, explaining the grammar topic, pronouncing and remarking upon the exercises and conversations, and giving especial attention to the vocabularies. The English exercises should be written at home, and handed in for correction. When corrected they should be copied into a book kept for the purpose and memorized for recitation the following day.

The class may then be called upon to recite the previous German and English exercises, the latter with books closed, the sentences in each at the same time being varied so as to introduce other forms and words.

Blackboard-exercises are very useful, and may consist of the writing of the English exercise for the day, to be corrected by the teacher with the help of the class while the pupils at their seats correct their own or their fellows' work; in the writing of declensions, forms of the verb, or other grammar facts, German sentences from dictation, or English to be put into German on dictation; also the writing from memory of proverbs, or a reading piece (the title being given).

The conversation exercise concludes; here not only the topic for the day is to be gone over, but previous

ones brought up, and variations and additions introduced as the pupil advances in vocabulary and facility.

The conversation exercise may be greatly extended by means of questions and answers based upon the reading pieces.

In large classes it will be found necessary, if liberal use is made of drill and dictation and conversation, to devote two recitations to each lesson, at least for the first fourteen lessons. In this case the division may be made between the German and the English exercises, or including the correction of the latter if done in class.

With regard to the pronunciation at the beginning, after learning the alphabet with the name and approximate sounds of the letters, the class may be directed to turn at once to p. 11. The teacher himself will first pronounce the words illustrative of the vowel *a*, then let the pupil do the same, and so on. In practising the lesson at home, the pupil can refer to the exposition that precedes.

After the first nine lessons, when the pupil has obtained a general view of the verb, translation may be taken up, and alternated with the lessons. At first it would be well for the teacher to translate beforehand to the pupils. At each lesson in translation some part of speech might form a special subject of study; at first the verb, the pupil being directed to look out and study each one.

CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
I. ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.	
READING.—Ende gut alles gut. Lerne recht	14
II. DEFINITE ARTICLE <i>der</i>. Rules for Gender. Present tense of <i>sein</i>.	
NOTE 1.— <i>Sie</i> , "you." NOTE 2.—"I speak," "I do speak," "I am speaking"	19
CONVERSATION.—Sprechen Sie Deutsch?	20
READING.—Eile mit Weile. Das Glück	20
III. "Der" WORDS. Present of <i>haben</i>.	
NOTE 3.—"Some" not translated. NOTE 4.—Article for possessive	23
NOTE 5.—Use of <i>man</i>	25
CONVERSATION.—Sprechen Sie Deutsch?	26
READING.—Ach, wie ist's möglich dann?	26
Rätsel	27
IV. INDEFINITE ARTICLE <i>ein</i> AND "ein" WORDS. Present of <i>sein, haben, werden</i>.	
NOTE 6.—"They have." NOTE 7.—Es gibt	30
CONVERSATION.—Die Hand	33
NOTE 8.—Declension of <i>ein</i>	33
READING.—Übung macht den Meister. Der rechte Leibenslauf. Der Esel und der Wolf	34
V. VERBS. NEW CONJUGATION.	
NOTE 9.—"I lived," "I was living," "I did live".	39
NOTE 10.—Prepositions with the Accusative	39
CONVERSATION.—Zählen	41
READING.—Gleich und gleich gesellt sich gern. Was sind das für Sachen! Der Esel in der Löwenhaut	42
VI. VERBS. OLD CONJUGATION.	
NOTE 11.—Prepositions governing the dative	45
CONVERSATION.—Buchstabieren	48
READING.—Sprichwort	48
Spruch. Die wilde Taube und die Biene	49

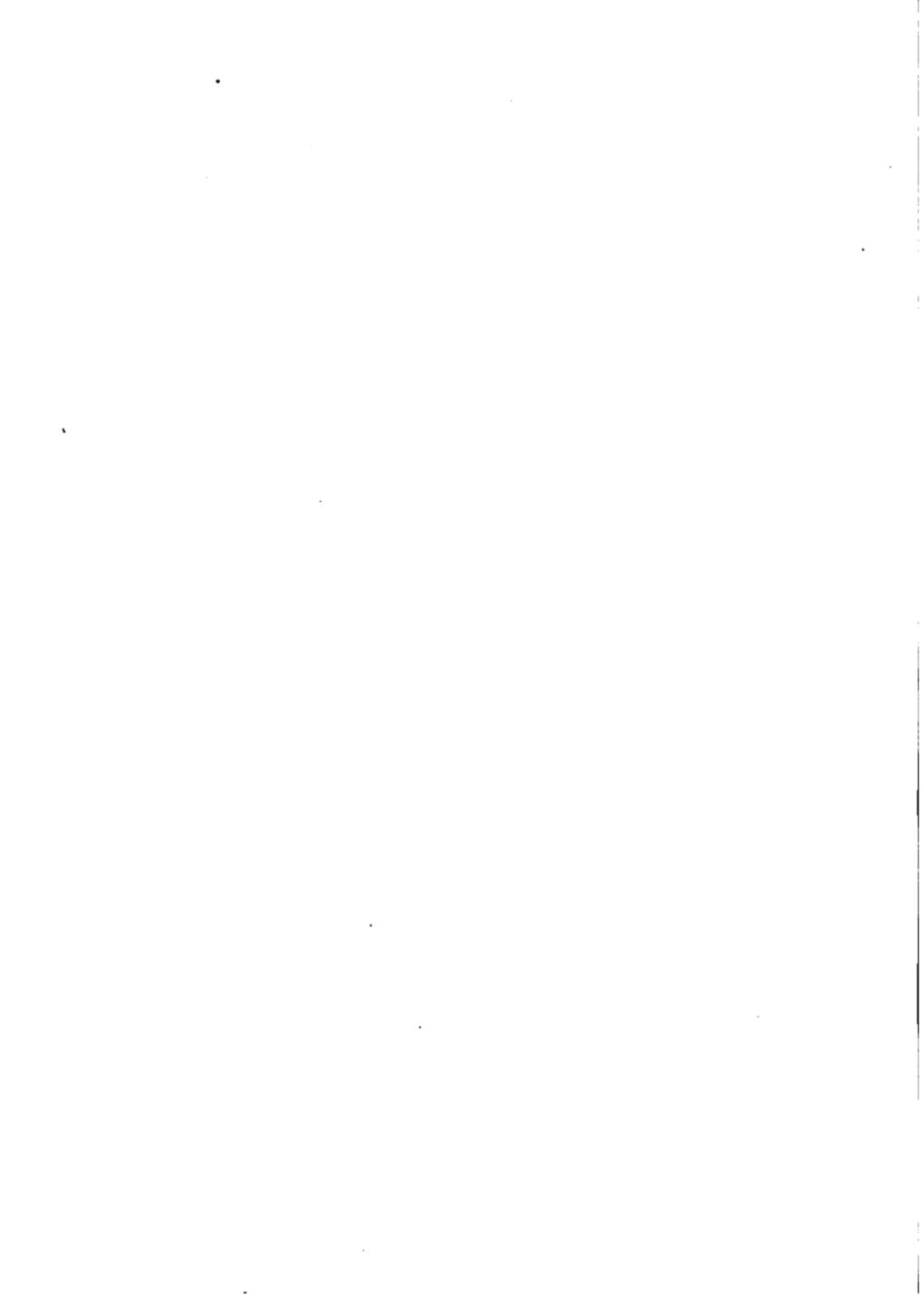
LESSON		PAGE
VII. VERBS. OLD CONJUGATION; CLASSES AND IR- REGULARITIES.		
NOTE 12.— Prepositions with dative or accusative		53
CONVERSATION.— Wort und Laut		55
READING.— Sprichwort. Der gute Kamerad		56
VIII. VERBS. COMPOUND TENSES. <i>Haben</i> and <i>sein</i> as auxiliaries.		
NOTE 13.— Infinitive and participle at end of sentence		61
CONVERSATION.— Die Redeteile. Sprichwort		64
READING.— Spruch. Das Wasser		65
IX. COMPOUND TENSES, CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES. Compound tenses of <i>sein</i> , <i>haben</i> , <i>werden</i> .		
NOTE 14.— Use of <i>du</i> . NOTE 15.— Inversion of verb and subject		70
CONVERSATION.— Die Woche		72
READING.— Sprichwort. Die Wacht am Rhein		73
X. NOUNS. FIRST DECLENSION. CLASS I.		
NOTE 16.— Transposition of the verb. NOTE 17.— Endings <i>-chen</i> and <i>-lein</i>		78
CONVERSATION.— Der Monat. Sprichwort		81
READING.— Der Tannenbaum		82
XI. NOUNS. FIRST DECLENSION. CLASS II.		
NOTE 18.— <i>Worin</i> for <i>in was</i> , <i>darin</i> for <i>in dem</i> , etc.		84
NOTE 19.— Time when? and how long?		86
CONVERSATION.— Das Jahr		87
READING.— Sprichwort		87
Die Jahreszeiten. Deutschland		88
XII. NOUNS. FIRST DECLENSION. CLASS III. Inter- rogative and relative pronouns.		
NOTE 20.— Declension of compound nouns. NOTE 21.— Order when a dative and accusative depend upon the same verb		91
NOTE 22.— Verbs followed by a dative instead of an ac- cusative		94
CONVERSATION.— Das Zimmer		94
READING.— Sprichwort. Zufriedenheit		94, 95

LESSON	PAGE
XIII. NOUNS. SECOND DECLENSION. Demonstrative and possessive pronouns.	
A TABLE OF DECLENSIONS	98
NOTE 23.— <i>Mensch</i> and <i>Mann</i> . NOTE 24.—Formation of feminine nouns in <i>-in</i> . NOTE 25.—Transla- tion of "a cup of," "a pair of," etc.	99
CONVERSATION.—Das Zimmer	101
READING.—Reiter's Morgenlied	102
XIV. ADJECTIVES. FIRST DECLENSION.	
CONVERSATION.—Die Wohnung	108
READING.—Wenn die Schwalben heimwärts ziehn . .	109
XV. ADJECTIVES. SECOND DECLENSION.	
CONVERSATION.—Das Haus	116
READING.—Sprichwörter. Du bist wie eine Blume Tischgebete	117
	118
XVI. ADJECTIVES, COMPARISON OF.	
NOTE 26.—Adjectives irregularly compared	121
CONVERSATION.—Die Beleuchtung	123
READING.—Es ist bestimmt in Gottes Rat	124
XVII. VERBS, INSEPARABLE.	
NOTE 27.—Plural of <i>Mann</i> in compounds	129
CONVERSATION.—Die Stadt	132
READING.—Die Lorelei	133
XVIII. VERBS, SEPARABLE.	
NOTE 28.—Separable prefixes used inseparably. NOTE 29.—Expressions for the time of day	136
CONVERSATION.—Die Zeit	139
READING.—Sprichwort. Der Storch. Der Araber in der Wüste	140
XIX. SUBJUNCTIVE MODE, CONJUGATION.	
NOTE 30.—Use of the conjunction <i>wenn</i>	144
NOTE 31.—Order in subordinate clause	146
CONVERSATION.—Der Spaziergang	147
READING.—Andreas Hofer	148
XX. MODAL AUXILIARIES. KÖNNEN AND DÜRFEN.	
CONVERSATION.—Messer und Bleistift	156
READING.—Die sechs Wörtlein	157

LESSON		PAGE
XXI.	MODAL AUXILIARIES: Mögen, wollen.	
	CONVERSATION.— Bei Tische	164
	READING.— Abschied	164
XXII.	MODAL AUXILIARIES: Müssen, sollen.	
	CONVERSATION.— Der Tramwagen	170
	READING.— Die kluge Maus	171
XXIII.	VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.	
	CONVERSATION.— Romane	177
	READING.— Die Frau und die Henne. Gute Lehre	178
XXIV.	REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.	
	NOTE 32.— Government of reflexive verbs	182
	CONVERSATION.— Gesundheit und Wetter	184
	READING.— Freut euch des Lebens	185
XXV.	ORDER OF THE GERMAN SENTENCE: PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.	
	CONVERSATION.— Die Bootfahrt	194
	READING.— Der Löwe und der Hase	194
XXVI.	ORDER OF THE SENTENCE: INVERTED AND TRANSPOSED.	
	CONVERSATION.— Der Lesestoff	200
	READING.— Der Star	201
XXVII.	THE INFINITIVE.	
	CONVERSATION.— Die Reise	208
	READING.— Lebewohl	209
XXVIII.	THE PARTICIPLES.	
	CONVERSATION.— Der Briefträger	216
	READING.— Das zerbrochene Ringlein	217
XXIX.	THE SUBJUNCTIVE: DETAILS.	
	CONVERSATION.— Der Spaziergang	222
	READING.— Ein Brief	223
XXX.	THE INDECLINABLES.	
	CONVERSATION.— Vom Studium der Sprache	233
	READING.— An den Mond	234

APPENDIX.

	PAGE
Gender, Rules for	237
" Double, Double Plural	238
Article, Use of	240
Declension, Exceptions to I, Class I	241
" " " " 2	242
" " " " 3	242
Cases, Uses of Genitive	243
" " " Dative	243
" " " Accusative	244
Government of Verbs, Genitive	245
" " " Dative	246
" " Adjectives, Genitive	246
" " " Dative	246
" " " Accusative	247
Prepositions governing the Genitive	247
" " " Dative	248
" " " Accusative	248
" " " Dative or Accusative	249
" Discriminated	249
Prefixes, Separable	252
Prefixes, Separable or Inseparable	253
Conjunctions, Coördinating	254
" " Subordinating	255
Strong, or Irregular Verbs, List of	259
German Script	271
<hr/>	
VOCABULARY, German-English	277
VOCABULARY, English-German	319
INDEX	343



ELEMENTARY GERMAN.

LESSON I.

ALPHABET.

LETTER.	NAME.	LETTER.	NAME.
À à	ä	Ñ ñ	ëñ
Ù ù	ö	Ô ô	ô
Œ œ	tsä	Œ œ	pä
œ œ	dä	œ œ	kü
È è	ä	È è	ër
Ӄ Ӄ	ef	Ӄ Ӄ	ës
ӄ ӄ	gä	ӄ ӄ	tä
Ӆ Ӆ	hä	Ӆ Ӆ	ü (oo)
Ӈ Ӈ	ë	Ӈ Ӈ	fow*
ӈ ӈ	yöt	ӈ ӈ	vä
Ӊ Ӊ	kä	Ӊ Ӊ	ix
ӌ ӌ	ël	ӌ ӌ	psilon
Ӎ Ӎ	ëm	Ӎ Ӎ	tsët

Umlauts.

ӂ ä Ӄ ö ӄ ü

REMARKS ON THE ALPHABET.

2. **The German Printed Character.**—The German character is used in newspapers and the ordinary works of literature. In scientific books and

* *ow* as in *cow*.

periodicals it has, however, been almost entirely superseded by the Roman type, and will probably yield still further to the latter, which is simpler and prevails generally elsewhere. The German type, as the style in common use in literary journals and books, is employed both in our Exercises and in the Vocabulary.

As the German printed character closely resembles our “Old English” style, the individual letters will be readily recognized; yet it requires much practice to become familiar with them in the connected text. Special attention should be given to letters which resemble each other. These are :

Capitals, B, ß; C, E; D, Ð, Ð; G, S; K, N, Ñ.*

Small letters, b, ð, h; f, ñ; t, t; r, x.

Combined forms, ch (ch), ck (ck); sz (sz), tz (tz).

(For Alphabet in German script see Appendix.)

3. The Umlauts are simple sounds like the other vowels. They are of later origin than these, and this name is given them with reference to their being modifications of other vowel sounds. As capitals, they are written Æ, Æ, Ûe, or at present preferably Ú, Ð, Û.

4. The letters c, x and y, borrowed from the Roman alphabet, rarely occur in any words originally German, and c only in the combinations ch, ck and sz.

* Capitals I and J are identical in form: the first may be known by its being followed by consonants chiefly; the latter is followed by vowels only.

5. The German uses capital initial letters for the first word in a sentence, for all nouns (and words used as nouns), for adjectives, pronouns, and ordinals used in royal titles, for pronouns employed in address, especially in correspondence, for adjectives derived from names of persons, and adjectives ending in -er derived from names of places. Usage varies considerably however in this matter. Small initials are used for adjectives of nationality, as *englisch*, "English"; also for the pronoun *ich*, "I."

PRONUNCIATION.*

6. The German language as written is much more nearly phonetic than is English or French, and in so far the difficulty of learning its pronunciation is much less.

* In a variety of points there is no one single and only correct German pronunciation, any more than this would be true of English. There was a time when the pronunciation of the province of Hanover was regarded as the standard, but that time is past. However, in German the provincial variations are greater than in English. In general there are two divisions: stage and every-day pronunciation, illustrated in the difference of final *g*, *Weg* in the one = *væk*, in the other = *væch*. Again there are certain marked differences between the North and South German, and while the former is apt to prevail owing to the national capital being in North German territory, it is itself a mark of provincialism to characterize the pronunciation of any large number of educated South Germans as inelegant or incorrect. *Sie* like English *see* and *Goethe* like English *Kæ-th* (almost) are South German, while the North German pronounces the words *zɛ̄e* and *Gö-tə*.

But it would be a serious error for the student to assume, on account of this diversity, that it is a matter of indifference how he pronounces, or that he cannot acquire a good German pronunciation. In fact it is easy for a flexible American youth to learn to pronounce like a German. In the main the following notes will be a safe guide to the average German pronunciation, though they must be interpreted with the aid of imitation of the living voice. These notes must overlook a vast deal of precise

7. The greatest difficulty in learning to pronounce German is presented by the *new sounds*; that is, those which are unfamiliar in English. These are principally the Umlaut vowels ö and ü, the gutteral g (χ), the rolled r, and initial ž.

8. As these sounds are unfamiliar, much practice is necessary in order to train the organs of speech to make them with accuracy and readiness. The following descriptions and directions will aid the beginner, in addition to the assistance by imitation from the teacher.

ä long = a (father) : habe.

ä short = nearly o in hot, as spoken in the Middle West: hat.

ai = ei = i in mile: Baiern.

au = ou in out, as spoken in the Middle West: aus.

äh = ai = i: Bayern.

ä (called a-umlaut or modified a) has nearly the same sound as e. In fact, ä, when short, is identical with short e; when long it has properly a somewhat more open sound than e, like the French è in père, and resembles the English sound in where: Bäter, hätte.

äu = eu = oi in oil: Häute.

details and of exceptions. For more minute information, as well as for most lucid and impartial exposition of the whole subject of speech, pupils as well as teachers are referred to Hempl's German *Orthography and Phonology*, Ginn & Company, Boston. For a precise description of the method of forming English and German sounds, see Grandgent's *German and English Sounds*, D. C. Heath & Co., Boston.

One general direction should be taken to heart by all learners: Open the mouth wider than is your wont, make the long vowels a, o, u full and prolonged and do not fear to exaggerate the peculiar German sounds and tone.

b initial and medial between vowels = b; final and before unvoiced consonants = p (unvoiced but usually less explosive): Bube, Abt, Lob.

c (occurs independently only in foreign words), before e, i, ȳ, ȫ, Ȣ = ts : Cicero, Cäsar ; before a, o, u and consonants = k : Cacao, Accord.

ch, initial before a, o, u and consonants = k, (but in French loan-words, like Chef = sh); initial before e, i, ȫ, and final ch is the guttural spirant which has no familiar correspondent in English (g when final has usually the same sound, though less explosive) : China, Charakter.

The German guttural spirant is of *two varieties*. It is softer and made farther forward in the mouth after e and i, than after a, o and u. As a rule it will be found that this distinction is made involuntarily ; if not, the teacher must insist upon it.

For the *first* variety of the guttural approximate the middle of the tongue to, but not touching, the roof of the mouth, and then expel the breath, being careful to keep the tip of the tongue down, and not to make the English sh sound. The tongue position is the same as for English k in key except that there must be no complete closure of the oral passage. A prolonged whispered key ending with a quick push of the breath without closure of the oral passage will give the sound closely. If then the initial f be gradually eliminated the result will be a fair pronunciation of German ich.

EXAMPLES: ich, richtig, recht, fischen.

For the *second* variety of the guttural, approximate the back of the tongue to but not touching the back part of the mouth. Be careful not to make the English *k* sound, though the position, saving the closure, is the same. Whispering the syllable *kō* with the same directions as in the preceding paragraph will result in a fair pronunciation of German *Köch*.

EXAMPLES: *Tochter, Buch.*

dh (in one syllable) = *x*, as *Dhüs*.

d = *k*: *baden*.

b initial and medial between vowels = *d*; final = *t* (unvoiced but somewhat less explosive): *da, mard*.

e long = *a*; short = *ɛ* in *bet, des*; in unaccented syllables especially final, **e** has an obscure sound, like the *ə* in English *comma*, which leads to its frequent elision, *deßten, habe*. Note that this unaccented **e** is the only German vowel that is commonly slighted or represented by an apostrophe.

ei = *i* in *bite, mein*.

eu = *oi* in *oil, heute*.

f = *f*, *frei*.

g initial in native words and before consonants in the same syllable = *g* in *god, gehen*; initial in French loanwords = *s* in *azure, Genie*; medial and final **g** is a guttural spirant, usually *voiced* when between vowels or voiced consonants. For the method of formation see **d ante**. When final, though unvoiced, the spirant is usually less violent than **h**, *Tag, Tage*.

h initial = *h*, *heute*; final or after **t** in the same syllable **h** is silent; *weh*. Note the frequent combination **th** = simple *t*, English *th* being one of the sounds not found in German, *Theorie*.

i long (printed always ih or ie) = ē in *mete*; short = ī in *bit*, ihn, bitte.

ie = ē in *mēte*, sie; but in unaccented syllables of Latin loan-words = ē-ē', or yē, as in *Tragödie*, *Glorie*.

j = y in *you*, but aspirated, ja; in French words = zh.

k = k,lein.

l = l (the lip-opening wider and narrower than in English), lieben, hell; ll after i and followed by a vowel in French loan-words = ly-, as in *Billet'*.

m = m, mein.

n = n, nein.

ng = ng in *singer*, Singer; but not = ng+g as in *finger* (except in some proper nouns, as *ingo*).

o long = ö in *note*, loben; short, the same sound but uttered very quickly without any shade of a following oo as in English, as in New England pronunciation of 'stone.' Avoid pronouncing Gott like either *goat* or *got*; distinguish between Göthe (*Goth*) and Götte (dative of *God*).

ö Umlaut.—To pronounce ö, round the lips as when oo in *boot* is uttered, and then pronounce ä, or *vice versa*. Described phonetically this is the rounded mid-front vowel. It is not a diphthong, and differs only by the rounding from English a. Many Germans so pronounce it, and ö and e are recognized as more or less permissible rhymes. Avoid giving it the sound of u in *fur*, as often erroneously directed. Do not pronounce 'Goethe' *Gerty*.

EXAMPLES: (long) Öl, König, Göthe, schön, (short) öffnen, können.

ø (in French loan-words) = wä, as *Toile'tte*.

p = p; ph (in Greek loan-words) = f, as *Telegraph*.

q (only in the combination qu) = kw or kv with the v quite weak, *Quelle*.

r = *r*, but usually trilled either with the tip of the tongue, or, more commonly, with the uvula or even with the vocal chords, *rot*, *frei*. The uvular *r* sounds like a more forcible and prolonged *d̥* after *a*. Note that *r* is never silent, as in parts of New England when final, nor a mere vocalic glide as in many other parts of the United States.

ſ (*s* final) = *s* initial, *was*; *ſ* initial varies from initial *s* to *z*, depending on the stress and force of adjacent syllables and the part of the country, *Sie jagen*. Either sound is in accord with good usage, but a medium between the extremes is advisable. Initial before *t* and *p*, **ſ** = *sh*, but is also heard as simple *s*, *ſtehen*, *ſprechen*.

ß = *s* initial, *Haß*.

ſh = *sh*, *ſheu*.

t = *t*; but remember that *t̥* never = *th*, the *h* being silent, though a sign of length for the preceding vowel; *t* before *i* + another vowel, in Latin loan-words = *ts*, *Portion*.

ts = *ts*, *jetzt*.

u long = *oo* in *boot*; **u** short = the same sound pronounced briefly, but not far from *oɔ* in *good*.

ü Umlaut.—To pronounce *ü*, round the lips as when *oo* in *boot* is uttered, and then pronounce *e*, or *vice versa*. It is the rounded high-front vowel. It differs only by the rounding from English *ē* or German *ī*, and many Germans so pronounce it. Like *ö*, it is a simple vowel, and not a diphthong. It is the same as the sound of the French *u* as in *tu*.

EXAMPLES: (long) *Übel*, *Schüler*; (short) *Glück*, *füllen*.

ui = *oo' + i*, with slight preponderance of accent on the first vowel. Occurs only in *Hui* and *Bfui*.

uo = *u' + o*, the *o* much slighted, in Swiss names, as *Kuoni*.

v = *f*, *von*; save in some foreign loan-words, such as *Violine*, *Venus*, where it = *v*.

w = *v*, but often made with the two lips instead of with the lower lip and upper teeth. The voicing is less obvious and the spirant less forcible than in English *v*, *weh*, *Löwe*.

g = *x*, *exerzierien*.

ŋ = *ĕ*, many words formerly written with *ŋ* have now substituted *i*, as in *Silbe*, *Stil*; there is a pedantic tendency to pronounce *ŋ* in Greek loan-words = *ü*, *Ψῆγεῖτ*.

ʒ = *ts*. Medial and final this combination is common in English; initial also it is common colloquially and should cause no difficulty. For instance, '*t's in* (= *it is in*)' = *Zinn* perfectly, '*t's on* (= *it is on*)' = *Zahn* nearly. **ʒ** = *ts*.

9. Quantity.—Vowels, even when not varying in quality, are in *quantity* either long or short. Each vowel has thus two sounds and no more. However, *e* in an unaccented syllable usually has a lighter shade than elsewhere, corresponding nearly to the sound of *ə* in the English "comma."

10. The following general rules determine the quantity in a great number of cases:—

1. A vowel doubled or followed by another vowel or **h** is long.

2. A vowel is also long in an open syllable, i. e. in a syllable ending with a vowel, but this does not apply to final *-e*. (See rules for syllabification, p. 10, §15.)

3. A vowel is short before a doubled consonant, and generally before a group of two different consonants.

11. Vowels are doubled for the purpose of indicating quantity, and are not therefore to be pronounced as diphthongs. The vowel *i* is never doubled, but the sign of *ie* is used instead, which

accordingly has the sound of the English ē; u never occurs double.

12. So far as the quantity is not determined by these rules, it must be ascertained from the dictionary. It is not desirable, however, to direct the attention of the beginner too minutely to the subject of quantity at first. It is best learned by practice and observation.

13. *Accent.* — The accent in original German words is in general the same as in English, i. e. on the root syllable, usually the first, unless the word begins with one of the prefixes: *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, which are never accented. But verbs in -ieren always have the accent on the ie of this ending.

14. *Foreign Words.* — These vary greatly in their accent, according as they have become more or less fully naturalized, being sometimes accented as in the foreign tongue, sometimes as in German, and sometimes partly in one way and partly in the other. Most loan-words from the Latin and French have the accent on the last syllable. A standard *Fremdwörterbuch* is the best guide.

EXAMPLES: *Soldat'*, *Student'*, *Patient'*, *Kultur'*, *General'*, *Regiment'*, but *Professor*, *Doll'tor*.

15. *Division into Syllables.* — The syllabification of German words follows the English rather than the American usage. A consonant between two vowels generally goes with the latter vowel, except in compounds. For this purpose *ch*, *tch*, *pch*, *tch*, and *pf* after *m* and *r*, are considered as representing one sound. Of several medial consonants, the last alone goes with the second syllable.

EXAMPLES: A-me-ri-ka, tre-ten, Mo-ritz, Do-ro-the-a, Bre-men,
Dä-ne-mark, dar-um, Lang-sam-leit, auf-er-ste-hen, la-chen, lös-schen,
Dr-tho-gra-phie, här-ter, Was-ser, klop-fen, He-xe, Karp-fen, emp-
finden, Finger, Fuß-e (ü long), Fuß-se (ü short).

16. In learning to pronounce German (as any new language), the attention of the beginner should be called to a *distinct and forcible* utterance. In this way the various organs and means of speech are brought into more energetic action than in pronouncing English, to which he has become accustomed, and the sounds of which he has been trained to make. Raising the voice and speaking loud will tend to produce this greater energy of action. Practice in reading aloud and committing to memory are fruitful aids in accomplishing the desired object of training the organs of speech.

EXERCISE I. (a.)

VOWELS.

- Long.—1. Basel. Tal. gar. Wagner. zahm.
Haar. Saale. lahm. Abend.
2. Feder. Herde. geben. Schwert. Seele. See.
Reh. geht. Spree. Käf-fee.
3. Liebe. hier. Friedrich. Dieb. sieben. Wien.
Bier. Wiesbaden. vier. Melodie' (ie = ē).
4. Rose. so. Rohr. Oder. Moor. Los. Boot
Hanno'ver. Mendelssohn. Lorelei'.
5. Blut. gut. Uhländ. Uhr. Ruhe. Geburt.
Bruder. nun. du.
6. Käse. Bäder. Dänemark. spät.
7. Römer. hören. Höhle. Göthe. König. schön.
Öfen. Röhler. Öl.
8. Übel. über. für. Brüder. fühl.

- Short.** — 1. dann. alt. Hamburg. Magdeburg.
 falt. hatte. Kant. Mann. all. an. Abt. Ball.
 Band. Hand.
2. besser. Ende. Betten. essen. Elbe. Mo'sel.
 Andersen. Neckar. Sonne.
3. in. Lippe. mild. Moriz. Bismarck.
4. wollen. kommen. kosten. hoffen. Gott. offen.
 Bonn. Korn. soll. Moltke.
5. dummm. Mutter. unter. Mund. Ulm. Fuß.
 Null. Brust. Wurst.
6. Hände. hätte. Kälte. Händel.
7. Götter. öfter. können. Köln.
8. Hütte. Mütter. füllen. Nürnberg.

EXERCISE I. (b.)**DIPHTHONGS.**

1. Mai. Kaiser. Main. Hayden. Bay'ern (or
 Baiern).
2. Reim. mein. Freiheit. reiten. Rhein. sein
 (archaic seyn). Freitag. Meyerbeer. Heyse.
3. Haus. Baum. aus. Maus. Donau. Auer-
 bach. Faust. Hauff. Frau. faul.
4. Heu. treu. Freund. Deutschland. Preußen.
 Teufel. heute. Leute. neu.
5. Räume. Häuser. Fräulein.

EXERCISE I. (c.)**CONSONANTS.**

1. (b) Ball. breit. Ebbe. Elbe. Grab. Stab.
 gehabt. Habsburg. Berlin'.

2. (c) Cato. Concert, spelled also Konzert'. Cicero.
3. (χ = f) Christ. Charak'ter. Chor. (= χ) Chemie. Chili. China. But Chamisso (χ = sh).
4. (χs) Fuchs. Ochs. Wachs. Sachs.
5. (d) du. Troddel. Donau. Tod. Stadt. Karlsbad. milb. dic. drei.
6. (g) Gips. Garten. General'. Gymna'sium. Dogge. Regiment'. Flagge.
7. (guttural g, χ) König. gütig. ich. Weg. Tag. kochen. Buch München. Heidelberg. Nacht. Liebig. Magd.
8. (h) Heu. ihn. roh. Theorie'. ruhen. Wilhelm.
9. (j) ja. jung. Jude. Jungfrau. Journal (pr. zhōōr-nāl').
10. (l) Liebe. toll. Billet' (pr. bil-yet'). Postillon' (pr. pōs-tēl-yōng).
11. (ng) Finger. singen. lange. bringen. Bingen. Göttingen. Kissingen.
12. (ph) Philosophie'. Geographie'. Adolph. Photograpf'. Prophet'.
13. (qu) Quarz. Quelle. Quäker.
14. (r) Rad. Erde. Burg. Herr. Dresden. Bremen. Grimm. Prinz Ruprecht. frisch. frei. froh.
15. (s) Sohn. Glas. Haus. Siegfried.
16. (ʃp, št = shp, sht), sprechen. Stall. Stein. Stroh. Strauß. Stuttgart. Student'. Straßburg.
17. (ſh) Schiff. Schühe. Kindisch. Schiller. Schweden. englisch. Schubert.

18. (ß) Haß. Schloß. daß.
 19. (t) Portion'. Nation'. Station'. Tor.
 20. (th) Thea'ter. Gotha. Thü'ringen. Frei=grath. Dorothe'a. Bayreuth'. Luther.
 21. (v) Vater. voll. freveln. In the following
 =v: Sklave. Vene'dig. Ve'nus. Universität'. Virgil'.
 22. (w) Wein. Weber. Weser. Wilhelm.
 23. (y) Text. Hexe. Xenophon. Axt.
 24. (z) zehn. zu. Zeit. Tanz. jetzt. Leipzig.
 Mozart. Schweiz. Zauberflöte.

A few connected phrases introducing delicate shades of distinction: Der Knäb' hat knäppe Hosen (The boy has close-fitting trousers). Mein Väte bät um ein Bäd (My god-father asked for a bath). Das Dach lässt den Täg herein (The roof lets in the daylight). Ein blünter Blöd (A motley club). Der Töd ist töt (Death is dead). Was macht die Mägd? (What is the maid doing). Er wirft den Teig in den Teich (He throws the dough into the pond). Sie nicht nicht (She does not nod).

READING I.

Sprichwort ("Say" = saying)

Ende gut alles gut.
End good all good.

"All's well that ends well."

Erne recht (Learn rightly).

Was du lernst, das lerne recht,
What thou learnest, that learn rightly,
Was du machst, das mach' nicht schlecht.
What thou makest, that make not badly.

LESSON II.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

RULES FOR GENDER — PRESENT TENSE OF *sein*.

1. *In the use of the article, as in other matters assume that German is like English until the contrary has been remarked.*

2. *Ich bin der Sohn des Mannes in dem Garten*
I am the son of the man in the garden
und die Frau im Hause ist des Mannes Mutter.
and the woman in the house is the man's mother.

3. Learn this sentence, and derive from it the principles involved in the exercises of this lesson, viz., the case of the predicate noun and the position of the genitive or possessive relative to the noun it limits.

4. **Gender.** There are three genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. In German nouns without sex may be masculine or feminine as well as neuter, and aside from such rules as those given below this arbitrary gender must be learned by memory alone.

5. **Rules for Gender.** Natural gender determines grammatical gender, with but few exceptions, i. e. names of male living beings are masculine (*der*), names of female living beings are feminine (*die*). The noun agent, formed from nearly every verb-stem with the ending *-er*, is masculine, but may be made feminine by adding *-in*: *der Lehrer*, *the*

(*man*-)teacher, die Lehrerin, (*woman*-)teacher. For detailed rules see Appendix.

6. Cases. There are four cases: *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, and *accusative*. The nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond in general to the English nominative, possessive (or "of" case), and objective, respectively. The dative is the case of the indirect object, the English "to" or "for" case.

7. The following facts of declension in general are to be noted :—

1. § is not the ending of the plural, but of the genitive singular of most neuter and masculine nouns.

2. The dative plural always ends in n; the other three cases are alike.

3. In the feminine and neuter singular, and in the plural, the nominative and accusative are the same.

4. Feminine nouns do not change form in the singular; the article alone shows the case.

8. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE *der, the.*

	Singular.			Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.F.N.	
Nom.	<i>der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>the.</i>
Gen.	<i>des,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>des,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>of the.</i>
Dat.	<i>dem,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem,</i>	<i>den,</i>	<i>to the.</i>
Acc.	<i>den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>the.</i>

(When stressed the word also means *this* or *that*.)

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Mann, *the man, husband.*
 der Garten, *the garden.*
 der Vater, *the father.*
 der Sohn, *the son.*
 der Hund, *the dog.*
 des Mannes, *of the man.*
 des Sohnes, *of the son.*
 des Vaters, *of the father.*

FEMININE.

die Frau, *the woman, wife.*
 die Mutter, *the mother.*
 die Tochter, *the daughter.*
 die Stadt, *the city.*
 die Dame, *the lady.*

NEUTER.

das Haus, *the house.*
 das Kind, *the child.*
 die Kinder, *the children.*

wo, *where?*

klein, *small, short.*

und, *and.*

jung, *young.*

wer, *who?*

schön, *handsome, pretty, fine.*

nicht, *not.*

un'artig, *ill-behaved.*

auch, *also, too.*

grün, *green.*

alt, *old.*

grau, *gray.*

gut, *good.*

häflich, *homely.*

REMARK.—In learning German nouns, care should be taken always to prefix the article, as the best way of fixing in mind the proper gender; as *der Mann, die Frau, das Haus.*

For idiomatic uses of the Article see Appendix.

The forms *dem, das, der* coalesce frequently with certain prepositions, as *im*, *für* *in dem*, *ans* for *an das*, *zur* for *zu der*.

INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT TENSE OF *sein, to be.*

ich bin, *I am.*

wir sind, *we are.*

{ du bist, *thou art.*

{ ihr seid, *ye are.*

{ Sie sind, *you are.*

{ Sie sind, *you are.*

er (sie, es) ist, *he (she, it) is.*

sie sind, *they are.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Der Mann ist nicht jung.
2. Er ist der Vater der Kinder.
3. Wo sind die Kinder?
4. Sind sie im Hause?
5. Das Haus ist groß und häflich, sie sind in dem

Garten. 6. Der Hund ist auch im Garten. 7. Ist der Garten schön? 8. Er ist groß und schön. 9. Wo ist die Mutter der Kinder? 10. Ist sie auch im Garten? 11. Sie ist (es¹) nicht, sie ist im Hause. 12. Sie ist jung und schön. 13. Die Kinder sind auch schön. 14. Sind sie auch die Kinder der Frau? 15. Sie sind (es). 16. Wer ist das Kind? 17. Es ist die Tochter des Mannes. 18. Sie ist jung und klein. 19. Der Sohn ist auch klein. 20. Der Hund ist der Hund des Sohnes und nicht der Tochter. 21. Das Haus ist das Haus des Mannes und auch der Frau. 22. Sie sind in der Stadt. 23. Wo sind Sie? 24. Wir sind im Hause. 25. Karl, du bist unartig. 26. Ich bin (es) nicht. 27. Wer ist das? 28. Das ist der Vater der Kinder.

¹ Words in parentheses are not to be rendered in translation; es refers to im Garten. German cannot leave the predicate noun or adjective or verb understood, as in English, but expresses it by es,—not by so.

EXERCISE 2.

1. The man is old. 2. He is old and gray. 3. Is he the father of the woman? 4. He is not the father; he is the husband of the woman. 5. And the woman is young and handsome. 6. She is the mother of the son. 7. Where is the child? 8. It is naughty, it is in the house. 9. The daughter is in the garden. 10. Is she the daughter of the man? 11. She is [it].¹ 12. She is good and pretty. 13. The father is in the city. 14. The city is gray and old. 15. The garden

is green and pretty. 16. Who are you? 17. We are the children of the man. 18. I am the son, she is the daughter. 19. And who is the man? 20. He is the father of the children. 21. We are in [the] father's garden.

¹ German cannot leave an adjective or substantive implied or understood, but always represents it, when repetition is desired, by *das* or *es*. Words in brackets are not needed in the original language, but must be rendered in translation.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

sprechen Sie, do you speak, are you speaking?	der Russ, the Russian.
ich spreche, I speak, I do speak, I am speaking.	der Däne, the Dane.
wer spricht, who speaks?	der Schwede, the Swede.
er spricht, he speaks.	der Spa'-ni-er, the Spaniard.
ja, yes. nein, no.	Deutsch,* German (the Ger- man language.)
nichts, nothing.	Englisch, English.
der Deutsche, the German.	Französisch, French.
der Engländer, the English- man.	Italiensch, Italian.
der Franzose, the Frenchman.	Russisch, Russian.
der Italiener, the Italian.	Dänisch, Danish.
der Schwede, the Swede.	Schwedisch, Swedish.
der Spanier, the Spanish.	Spanisch, Spanish.

* This and the following words are capitalized only when used substantively = the German language, etc.

NOTE 1.—In German, *Sie* (with capital *S*) is "you," whether one or more persons are addressed, and the verb is always in the plural. This is the general "you." *Du* is used only to relatives, children and servants, and *ihr* is its plural.

NOTE 2.—*Ich spreche* expresses the three English forms, "I speak," "I do speak," "I am speaking." German has no separate emphatic, interrogative and progressive verb-forms.

CONVERSATION I.—Sprechen Sie Deutsch?

1. Sprechen Sie Deutsch?
2. Ja, ich spreche Deutsch.
1. Sprechen Sie Englisch?
2. Ja, ich spreche Englisch.
Etc., etc.

1. Wer spricht Deutsch?
2. Der Deutsche spricht Deutsch.
1. Wer spricht Englisch?
2. Der Engländer spricht Englisch.
Etc., etc.

READING 2.

Sprichwort.

Eile mit Weile.
Hasten with delay.

“Make haste slowly.”

Das Glück.

Willst du immer weiter schweifen?¹
Wilt thou always farther roam?
Sieh, das Gute liegt so nah',
See, the good lies so near,
Verne nur das Glück ergreifen,
Learn only happiness to seize.
Denn das Glück ist immer da,
For happiness is always here.

¹ Note the order of the German words, which is here normal and in many respects rigid. For rules, see Lessons XXV and XXVI.

LESSON III.

DIESER AND OTHER WORDS DECLINED LIKE *der*.
 „*der*“ WORDS. — PRESENT OF *haben*.

1. Depend upon resemblances in sound in learning the German vocabulary, as in *Vater*, *Mutter*, *Bruder*, but remark the exceptions: *wer* is not ‘where,’ *wo* is not ‘who,’ *wie* is not ‘we.’

2. Der Schüler in jenem Garten hat gewiß diese
 The scholar in yonder garden has certainly this
 Blume; sie ist schön blau.
 flower; it is beautiful(ly) blue.

3. Learn this sentence, analyze it and derive from it the case after ‘in’, the case of the object of a transitive verb, and the agreement of the pronoun.

4. *dieser* is declined like *der*, except that it has in the neuter singular nominative and accusative —es instead of —as, and in the plural and feminine singular nominative and accusative —e instead of —ie.

5. Declension of *dieser*, *this*.

	Singular.			Plural.
	M.	F.	N.	M.F.N.
Nom.	<i>dieser</i> ,	<i>diese</i> ,	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>this</i> .
Gen.	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>dieser</i> ,	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>of this</i> .
Dat.	<i>diesem</i> ,	<i>dieser</i> ,	<i>diesem</i> ,	<i>to this</i> .
Acc.	<i>diesen</i> ,	<i>diese</i> ,	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>this</i> .
				<i>diese</i> , <i>these</i> .
				<i>dieser</i> , <i>of these</i> .
				<i>diesen</i> , <i>to these</i> .
				<i>diese</i> , <i>these</i> .

6. Like *dieser* are declined: *jener*, “that,” “yonder”; *welcher*, “which”; *jeder*, “every”; *mancher*,

“many,” “many a”; *solcher*, “such,” “such a” and a few others. It will be convenient to call these „*der*“ words. They are both pronouns and adjectives.

7. *Dieser* and *jener* are used especially in contrast; when only one object is pointed out *dieser* is often used for English *that*. In sequence *dieser* means *the latter*, *jener* *the former*.

8. The contracted neuter singular pronoun *dies*, or *das*, is commonly used as subject in first calling attention to an object without regard to the gender or number of the predicate noun = *this* or *these*. *Dies* *ist* mein Vater, *das* *find* meine Kinder, the verb here agreeing with the predicate noun.

9. *Der* also serves, when stressed, as a demonstrative, *this*, *that*, or an emphatic *he*, the genitive forms in this case being lengthened to *dessen*, *deren*, *dessen*, *deren* and the dative plural to *denen*.

10. For the oblique cases of the demonstrative or the personal pronoun governed by a preposition, *when the reference is not to a person*, German uses a compound of *da* with the preposition, instead of *von dem* (*diesem*), *davon*, etc. Note that while this substitute is archaic in English (*thereof*) it is colloquial in German; *wir sprechen davon*, *we are speaking of it* (or *that*).

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Schüler, *the scholar, pupil.*
der Bruder, *the brother.*
der Freund, *the friend.*
des Schülers, *of the scholar,*
the scholar's.
des Bruders, *of the brother,*
the brother's.

FEMININE.

die Schwester, *the sister.*
die Freundin, *the (lady) friend.*
die Blume, *the flower.*

NEUTER.

das Buch, *the book.*
das Papier, *the paper.*
eine (fem.), *a.*
was, *what?* *wie*, *how?*
hier, *here.*
neu, *new.*
blau, *blue.*
nun, *now; well* (colloquial at
beginning of sentence).
davon, *of it (that).*
gewiß, *certainly.*
sehr, *very, very much.*

REMARK.—For words not given here, see general vocabulary at the end of the book. So hereafter.

INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT TENSE OF *haben*, *to have.*

ich habe, *I have.*

du hast, *thou hast.*

Sie haben, *you have.*

er (sie, es) hat, *he (she, it) has.*

wir haben, *we have.*

ihr (habet) habt, *ye have.*

Sie haben, *you have.*

sie haben, *they have.*

NOTE 3.—“Some” in the English expressions, “some paper,” “some water,” etc., unstressed, should not be translated in German. “Some” standing alone is *etwas*, also *einige* (pl.).

NOTE 4.—The definite article in German serves instead of a possessive adjective when the possessive relation is evident, as, *Reichen Sie mir die Hand*, Give me your hand.

EXERCISE III.

1. *Wer ist dieser Mann?*
2. *Er ist des Bruders Freund.*
3. *Dieser Freund des Bruders ist der Vater jenes Schülers.*
4. *Ist er nicht auch der Freund der*

Schwester? 5. Ja, er ist (es). 6. Welches Buch haben Sie da? 7. Das ist des¹ Bruders Buch. 8. Jeder Schüler hat dieses Buch. 9. Wir haben es² nicht. 10. Nun, Sie sind nicht Schüler. 11. Jeder Schüler hat auch Papier. 12. Dieser Mann hat Buch und Papier. 13. Die Schüler sind im Garten des Mannes. 14. Der Mann ist der Vater dieses Schülers. 15. Die Frau und die Schwester des Mannes sind auch im Garten. 16. Was haben die³ da? 17. Sie haben das Buch des Bruders. 18. Und wo ist nun⁴ dieser Garten? 19. Der Sohn des Mannes spricht davon. 20. Der Garten der Mutter ist grün und schön. 21. Ist jeder Garten schön? 22. Nein, gewiß nicht, mancher Garten ist häßlich. 23. Aber, ist nicht jede Blume schön? 24. Diese Blume ist klein und blau. 25. Das ist Vergißmeinnicht.

¹ If referring to the brother of the speaker, render *my*. ² Note the order. German has no contraction corresponding to ‘haven’t,’ but may contract *haben es* to *haben’s*. ³ Refer to paragraph 9, Lesson 3. ⁴ *nun* = *well*, may stand thus in the predicate.

EXERCISE 3.

1. Who is that lady?
2. She is the sister of the pupil.
3. The sister of which pupil is she?
4. Of that pupil there in the house.
5. This pupil is the friend of my¹ sister.
6. Have you not a flower?
7. Yes, the flower is pretty (and) blue.
8. Where do you keep² the flower?
9. We have it now in the garden.
10. [The] father and [the] mother are in the garden.

11. Which flower have you in the house? 12. We have this flower in the house also. 13. Every pupil has this flower. 14. It is the forget-me-not. 15. Well, the flower is certainly very pretty. 16. Have they (some) ³ paper? 17. Yes, they have this in the house also. 18. Which book has the man? 19. Every man has this book now. 20. This man hasn't it. ⁴ 21. He is speaking ⁵ of it. 22. It is new and very pretty.

¹ Render by definite article. ² *do you keep*, haben Sie. ³ Words in parentheses are needed in English but not to be rendered in German. ⁴ tr. *Has it not.* ⁵ See Lesson 2, note 2, p. 19.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

wo spricht man, where speaks one, where do they speak?	gar nicht, not at all. nie, niemals, never.
man spricht, one speaks, they speak.	etwas, some, somewhat. Deutschland, Germany.
nur, only.	England, England.
ein wenig, a little.	Frankreich, France.
nicht geläufig, not fluently.	Ita'-li-en, Italy.
sehr gut, very well.	Ružland, Russia.
ziemlich geläufig, pretty flu- ently.	Dänemark, Denmark.
ziemlich gut, tolerably well.	Schweden, Sweden.
	Spa'-ni-en, Spain.

NOTE 5.—The expression with the indefinite man (French *on*) corresponds to the English one with “one,” “they,” “people,” and to the passive form: e. g., man spricht, “one speaks, they speak, people speak”; man spricht Deutsch hier, “German is spoken here.” The oblique cases for man are supplied from einer (see L. IV), the possessive is sein.

CONVERSATION 2.—Sprechen Sie Deutsch?

1. Wo spricht man Deutsch?
 2. Man spricht Deutsch in Deutschland.
 1. Wo spricht man Englisch?
 2. Man spricht Englisch in England.
- Etc., etc.
1. Wie sprechen Sie Deutsch?
 2. Ich spreche nur ein wenig Deutsch.
 1. Wie sprechen Sie Deutsch?
 2. Ich spreche nicht geläufig Deutsch.
- Etc., etc.

READING 3.

Ach, wie ist's möglich dann!*

Ach, wie ist's möglich dann,
Ah how is it possible then
Dass ich dich lassen kann?
That I thee leave can
Hab' dich von Herzen lieb,
Hold thee at heart dear
Das glaube mir.
This believe me.
Du hast das Herz mein
Thou hast the heart of me
So ganz genommen ein,
So wholly taken in

* The melody of this and all the following songs can be had in Deutscher Liebeschatz, Band I, costing about \$1 bound, or in Deutsches Lieberbuch by Tonger, cost about 25 cents. Teachers are advised to procure the latter book for their classes. They can be had through any music dealer, or of G. Schirmer, New York City.

Daß ich kein' andre lieb',
 That I no other love
 Als dich allein.
 Than thee alone.

Blau ist ein Blümlein,
 Das heißt Vergißnichtmein,
 is called
 Dies Blümlein leg' an's Herz
 flowret lay on thy heart
 Und denk' an mich.
 think of me.

Stirbt Blum' und Hoffnung gleich,
 (If) Dies hope alike
 Wir sind an Liebe reich,
 in love rich
 Und die stirbt nie bei mir,
 in me
 Das glaube mir. — *Volkslieb.*

Rätsel.

Es kam ein Vogel federlos,
 There 'came bird featherless,
 Saß auf den Baum blattlos,
 Seated (itself) on the tree leafless,
 Da kam die Jungfer mundlos
 maiden mouthless
 Und aß den Vogel federlos
 ate
 Von dem Baume blattlos.

[ANS.—The snow and the sun.]

¹The expletive ‘there’ is in German *es*. In this meaning the following verb does not agree in number with *es*, but with the logical subject.

LESSON IV.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE *ein*; POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES;
PREFERIT OF *sein*, *haben*, *werden*.

1. When a distinctly German idiom has been introduced, do not avoid it, but use it at all possible opportunities.

2. Der Bruder dieses Kaufmanns hat einen Garten :
The brother of this merchant has a garden ;
es gibt keine Bäume darin, aber die Rosen waren dieses
there are no trees in it but the roses were this
Jahr sehr hübsch.
year very pretty.

3. Learn this sentence, analyze it, and note the idiom for ‘there are,’ the contraction for ‘in it,’ and the order after the coördinate conjunction aber.

4. Declension of the indefinite article *ein*, “a,” “an,” used only in the singular number :—

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>ein</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>ein</i> ,
Gen.	<i>eines</i> ,	<i>einer</i> ,	<i>eines</i> ,
Dat.	<i>einem</i> ,	<i>einer</i> ,	<i>einem</i> ,
Acc.	<i>einen</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>ein</i> ,
			<i>a.</i>

5. Like *ein* are declined *fein*, *no*, *mein*, *my*, and the remaining possessive adjectives, as follows :—

<i>dein</i> , thy, your.	<i>Ihr</i> , your.
<i>sein</i> , his, its.	<i>ener</i> , your.
<i>ihr</i> , her.	<i>ihr</i> , their.
<i>unser</i> , our.	

It will be convenient to call these „*ein*“ words. They form the plural like that of *dieser*.

Declension of *mein*, "my," "mine."

	singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.F.N.		
Nom.	<i>mein</i> ,	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>mein</i> ,	<i>my.</i>	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>my.</i>
Gen.	<i>meines</i> ,	<i>meiner</i> ,	<i>meines</i> ,	<i>of my.</i>	<i>meiner</i> ,	<i>of my.</i>
Dat.	<i>meinem</i> ,	<i>meiner</i> ,	<i>meinem</i> ,	<i>to my.</i>	<i>meinen</i> ,	<i>to my.</i>
Acc.	<i>meinen</i> ,	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>mein</i> ,	<i>my.</i>	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>my.</i>

6. In this form these words are adjectives only ; with full nominative endings, like those of *dieser*, they are also pronouns, *Ihr Vater und meiner, your father and mine.*

Note that the -er of *unser* and *euer* is not an ending, but part of the stem ; thus, the genitives are *unseres*, *eueres*.

7. INFLECTION OF THE PRETERIT TENSE OF *sein*, *to be*, AND *haben*, *to have*.

<i>ich war</i> , <i>I was.</i>	<i>ich hatte</i> , <i>I had.</i>
<i>du warst</i> , <i>thou wast.</i>	<i>du hattest</i> , <i>thou hadst.</i>
<i>Sie waren</i> , <i>you were.</i>	<i>Sie hatten</i> , <i>you had.</i>
<i>er war</i> , <i>he was.</i>	<i>er hatte</i> , <i>he had.</i>
<i>wir waren</i> , <i>we were.</i>	<i>wir hatten</i> , <i>we had.</i>
<i>ihr wart</i> , <i>ye were.</i>	<i>ihr hattet</i> , <i>ye had.</i>
<i>Sie waren</i> , <i>you were.</i>	<i>Sie hatten</i> , <i>you had.</i>
<i>sie waren</i> , <i>they were.</i>	<i>sie hatten</i> , <i>they had.</i>

8. INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT AND PRETERIT TENSES OF *werden*, *to become*.

<i>ich werde</i> , <i>I become.</i>	<i>ich wurde</i> , <i>ward,* I became.</i>
<i>du wirst</i> , <i>thou becomest.</i>	<i>du wurdest</i> , <i>wardst, thou be-</i>
<i>Sie werden</i> , <i>you become.</i>	<i>camest.</i>
<i>er wird</i> , <i>he becomes.</i>	<i>Sie wurden</i> , <i>you became.</i>
	<i>er wurde</i> , <i>ward, he became.</i>

* The second form is less used than the first.

wir werden, we become.
ihr werdet, ye become.
Sie werden, you become.
sie werden, they become.

wir wurden, we became.
ihr wurdet, ye became.
Sie wurden, you became.
sie wurden, they became.

NOTE 6.—“They have” should be rendered man hat, whenever “they” is general or indefinite, i. e. has no definite antecedent, as ‘they have no good music in this city,’ man hat keine gute Musik in dieser Stadt.

NOTE 7.—“There is,” “there are,” are rendered es ist, es sind, when the scope of the affirmation is definite and limited in time or place, but when general and sweeping, especially stating facts of nature, both are rendered es gibt (lit. it gives) with the predicate noun in the accusative. Thus one may say, Es gibt keine Tiger in Kansas (tigers are not found in Kansas), and at the same time, Es sind diese Woche zwei Tiger in Kansas (i. e. with a menagerie), both statements being true. But the line between general and particular statements is faint and must be learned by experience. In many cases either expression may be used.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Baum, the tree.
die Bäume, the trees.
der Kaufmann, the merchant.
des Kaufmanns, of the merchant.
des Freundes, of the friend.
die Freunde, the friends.
der Tisch, the table.
der Apfel, the apple.
die Äpfel, the apples.

FEMININE.

die Rose, the rose.
die Hand, the hand.

die Blumen, the flowers.
die Farbe, the color.
die Tinte, the ink.
die Feder, the feather, pen.
die Gabel, the fork.
die Gabeln, the forks.

NEUTER.

das Zimmer, the room.
das Messer, the knife.
die Messer, the knives.
das Jahr, the year.
so, so.
wohl, well, not ill.
jawohl, yes, indeed.

krank, ill, sick.	es sind, es gibt, there are.
in, in (with dative) in answer to ‘where?’ accusative in answer to whither?	häbsch, pretty.
auf, upon (with dat.).	müde, tired.
viel, much.	süß, sweet.
viele, many.	oh, oh!
aber, but.	ach, ah! oh!
	reif, ripe.
	einige, some (pl.).

EXERCISE IV.

1. Die Bäume in unserem Garten sind grün. 2. Gibt es Bäume in Ihres Bruders Garten? 3. Nein, er hat nur Blumen in seinem Garten. 4. Er hat auch keine Äpfel in seinem Garten. 5. Nein, man hat Äpfel nur auf Bäumen. 6. Oh, wir hatten Äpfel auf einem Tisch in dem Garten des Kaufmanns. 7. Ja, aber sie wurden auf dem Tische nicht reif. 8. Gewiß nicht, sie wurden auf den Bäumen reif. 9. Aber Ihr Freund, der Kaufmann, hat keine Bäume. 10. Nun, man hat aber Bäume in der Stadt. 11. Es gibt (or sind) keine Äpfel auf meinen Bäumen. 12. Hatten Sie nie Blumen in Ihrem Garten? 13. Ach ja, aber nur nicht dieses Jahr. 14. Wo gibt es dieses Jahr Blumen? 15. Es gibt sehr viele in dem Garten meines Freundes. 16. Dieser Garten wird sehr schön. 17. Hat er auch Tische und Stühle in seinem Garten? 18. Ja, aber man hat Tinte und Feder nur in dem Hause. 19. Wir waren niemals in seinem Hause. 20. In Ihrem Garten ist¹ es sehr schön. 21. Sind Sie nicht müde?

¹ Note the order; if part of the predicate begins the sentence the verb must precede the subject.

EXERCISE 4.

1. Is this your garden? 2. Yes indeed, it is our father's garden. 3. Is it not very pretty? 4. Yes, it¹ has so many trees. 5. And yonder is a rose. 6. Have you also many flowers? 7. Yes, but the flowers are not in this garden. 8. Our mother has also a garden and this has the flowers. 9. There are no apples this year in my brother's garden. 10. But we had some, and they were very sweet. 11. Well, your friend, the merchant had them in his garden. 12. Were they on his trees? 13. Oh no, they were only on a table. 14. What was the color of those apples? 15. They were green, but they were ripe. 16. Our apples are becoming red and ripe. 17. The flowers were on a table in my friend's garden. 18. They² had no knives and forks on the table. 19. But there³ were paper and ink and a pen. 20. My sister had the pen in her hand. 21. She was not very well. 22. They have no ink in the house. 23. We are becoming tired. 24. I too became tired, but I was not sick.

¹ Remember that the pronoun agrees in gender with its antecedent. ² Refer to Note 6. ³ Refer to Note 7.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

wie heißt das, how is that called?	oder, or.
what is the name of that? what is that?	jedermann, every one.
das heißt, that is called, that is.	wie viele, how many.
	an, on (with dat.).
	zwischen, between (with dat.).

<i>neben</i> , by the side of (with dat.).	die Hände , the hands.
<i>jemals</i> , je, ever.	der Finger , the finger.
<i>eins</i> (eines), one.	die Finger , the fingers.
<i>zwei</i> , two.	der Daumen , the thumb.
<i>drei</i> , three.	die Daumen , the thumbs.
<i>vier</i> , four.	der Mittelfinger , the middle-finger.
<i>fünf</i> , five.	der Ringfinger , the ring-finger.
<i>sechs</i> , six.	der Kleine Finger , the little-finger.
<i>sieben</i> , seven.	
<i>acht</i> , eight.	die Faust , the fist.
<i>neun</i> , nine.	
<i>zehn</i> , ten.	die Fäuste , the fists.

NOTE 8.—The neuter form *eins* is employed when the numeral *ein* is used substantively in *counting*; with another numeral, *ein* alone is used (as in *ein und zwanzig*); preceded by the definite article *der*, it is declined according to Class I of the Second Declension of Adjectives (p. 111).

CONVERSATION 3.—Die Hand.

1. Wie heißt das?
2. Das heißt eine Hand.
1. Wie heißt das?
2. Das heißt ein Finger.
1. Haben Sie eine Hand oder zwei Hände?
2. Ich habe zwei Hände.
1. Hat jedermann zwei Hände?
2. Ja, jedermann hat zwei Hände.
Etc., etc.
1. Wie heißt dieser Finger?
2. Das heißt der Daumen.
1. Wie heißt dieser Finger?
2. Das heißt der Beigefinger,
Etc., etc.

1. Wie viele Finger sind das?
 2. Das sind drei Finger.
 1. Wie viele Beigefinger hat man an jeder Hand?
 2. Man hat nur einen Beigefinger an jeder Hand.
- Etc., etc.

READING 4.

Sprichwort.

Übung macht den Meister.

Practice makes the master.

“Practice makes perfect.”

Der rechte Lebenslauf.

Mit Gott fang' an, mit Gott hör' auf!

With begin, end.

Das ist der rechte Lebenslauf.

That right course of life.

Der Esel¹ und der Wolf.²

Ein Esel begegnete³ einem hungrigen Wolfe. „Habe Mitleid⁴ mit mir,“ sagte⁵ der zitternde⁶ Esel; „ich bin ein armes, frankes Tier; sieh⁷ nur, was-für-einen⁸ Dorn⁹ ich mir in den Fuß getreten¹⁰ habe.“ „Wahrhaftig,¹¹ du dauerst¹² mich,“ versetzte¹³ der Wolf; „und ich finde mich in meinem Gewissen¹⁴ verbunden,¹⁵ dich von diesen Schmerzen¹⁶ zu befreien.“¹⁷ Raum¹⁸ war das Wort gesagt,¹⁹ so ward²⁰ der Esel zerrissen.²⁰

Geffing.

¹ donkey.

⁶ trembling.

¹¹ really.

¹⁶ pains.

² wolf.

⁷ see.

¹² cause pity.

¹⁷ free.

³ met.

⁸ what a.

¹³ replied.

¹⁸ scarcely.

⁴ pity.

⁹ thorn.

¹⁴ conscience.

¹⁹ spoken.

⁵ said.

¹⁰ trodden.

¹⁵ bound.

²⁰ was torn to pieces.

LESSON V.

VERBS.—NEW CONJUGATION.—PREPOSITIONS WITH
THE ACCUSATIVE.

Conjugation of Verbs.

1. *The first and third persons plural of all verbs are alike, and also the first and third singular preterit.*

2. **Der Lehrer lobt den Schüler, aber der Schüler spielt nicht sehr gut.**
The teacher praises the pupil but the pupil is not playing very well.

3. Examine the construction of the sentence. Note the case of subject and object of *lobt*, also that the simple form *spielt* represents the English 'is playing' between which comes the 'not' in English.

4. All German verbs are conjugated according to one of two forms, called the New and the Old Conjugations. The verbs of the New or *weak* Conjugation comprise the great majority of German verbs. The verbs of the Old or *strong* Conjugation, though few in number, are mostly in common use.

5. The mode of forming the preterit and past participle is the distinguishing feature between these two conjugations. In the New Conjugation the preterit is formed by an addition to the stem; in the Old Conjugation there is no addition, but a change in the vowel of the stem, called *Ablaut*.

6. The *stem* of a verb is that part which remains after dropping the infinitive ending -en or -n.

7. The *principal parts* of a verb are three: infinitive, preterit, and past participle. Thus the principal parts of lieben (a verb of the New Conjugation) are lieben, liebte, geliebt, "to love," "(I) loved," "loved."

The New Conjugation will be taken up first, as simpler, since the verbs belonging to it are more nearly regular in their form-changes.

NEW CONJUGATION.

8. The *past participle* is formed by prefixing ge- to the stem (so also in the Old Conjugation), and by adding -(e)t. ge- is not prefixed to verbs ending in -ieren, as marschieren, "to march," past participle marschiert, nor to verbs having an unaccented prefix. (See Lesson XVII.)

9. The *present participle* is formed in both conjugations by adding -end to the stem.

Personal Endings.

10. The following endings are added in both conjugations to the stem to form the *present tense*, as follows with the stem lob-, *praise*:

Singular.

1. lob-e.
2. " -(e)t.
3. " -(e)t.

Plural.

1. lob-en.
2. " -(e)t.
3. " -eu.

11. The *e* in parentheses is omitted unless there would result thereby such a combination of consonants as would be difficult to pronounce

12. The following forms show the endings of the *preterit* tense.

Singular.	Plural.
1. lob-te.	1. lob-ten.
2. " -teſt.	2. " -tet.
3. " -te.	3. " -ten.

13. Before *te* of the preterit ending, *e* is inserted, when the root ends in a letter that cannot easily be pronounced before *te*, as *bet-eſtē*, *prayed*.

14. While the form *Sie lieben* is historically of the third person plural, in practical use it is second person both singular and plural, and should be recited as an alternative form. *Du* is used to children and relatives.

15. In the Imperative, the singular is formed by adding *e* to the stem, and the plural is the second person plural of the Present Indicative inverted.

16. SIMPLE TENSES (INDICATIVE MOOD) OF A VERB OF THE NEW CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

lieben, liebte, geliebt.

Present.

*ich liebe, I love.
du liebst, thou lovest.
Sie lieben, you love.
er liebt, he loves.*

Preterit.

*ich liebte, I loved.
du liebtest, thou lovedst.
Sie liebten, you loved.
er liebte, he loved.*

NOTE 9.—*ich lebte* expresses alone the three English forms, "I lived," "I did live," "I was living." So in the case of other verbs.

NOTE 10.—**Prepositions with the Accusative.** The following prepositions govern the accusative case: *durch, through, by means of, für, for, gegen, against, ohne, without, um, around, about, at (time).*

EXERCISE V.

1. Die Schüler lieben (die) Musik.
2. Diese Musik ist für die Freunde eines Schülers.
3. Sagen Sie mir: wo lebt Ihr Freund?
4. Er lebt jetzt in Berlin.
5. Ich hörte ihn einst eine Oper spielen.¹
6. So, hörten Sie ihn spielen?
7. Jawohl, er spielt sehr gut.
8. Ich kaufte einst in Berlin ein Stück Musik.²
9. Mein Kind hörte das Stück und lachte.
10. Warum kaufsten Sie es denn?
11. Ach, ein Freund meines Bruders lobte es so sehr.
12. Spielt der Lehrer selbst diese Oper?
13. Das sagt man, aber er lernt ³ sie nur ³ eben.
14. Nicht wahr ⁴, dieser Lehrer lebte einst in London?
15. Ich glaube, er war dort unser Nachbar.
16. Wir wohnten damals in (der) Bow-Straße.
17. Hören Sie, mein Onkel spielt das Stück für uns.
18. Er spielt ja ⁵ ohne Noten.
19. Wir lernen dieses Stück morgen; das ist unsere Aufgabe.
20. Was sagten Sie da ⁶, mein Freund?
21. Ich sagte nur, wir haben morgen dieses Stück zu lernen.
22. Haben Sie denn etwas gegen das Stück?
23. O nein, gewiß nicht; es ist reizend.

¹ Note the German order; the infinitive always stands at the end of the clause. ² After words indicating measure the noun

representing the thing measured is in apposition in German, unless preceded by an adjective. ³ is only just learning. ⁴ Lit. not true; tr. didn't he, at end. ⁵ why, at beginning. ⁶ da is often then, as well as there.

EXERCISE 5.

1. Who is playing the opera? 2. They say, it is our friends in [the] William-street. 3. Why,¹ this piece is charming! 4. Did you not² hear it that-time in Berlin? 4. Yes, I believe (so), but I did not² like it then. 3 6. Our teacher* always praised ,it ,though.⁴ 7. Yes, he himself plays it charmingly. 8. Our teacher's uncle plays ,very ,well ,too. 9. Are your friends now living in Berlin? 10. O no, it is the William-street in this city. 11. And⁵ does the teacher live on that street too? 12. I thought I heard him playing⁶. 13. Yes, he is playing the lesson for the pupils. 14. He is playing, but the pupils are laughing. 15. They say he plays very well. 16. Yes, and the pupils are learning (to) ,play ,without ,notes. 17. Tell me, is that good for them? 18. Well, all my friends praise the teacher. 19. Do you buy your music through the teacher? 20. Then⁷ buy for me too. 21. He bought this piece (of) music in America. 22. When do you play to-morrow? 23. I believe we play at seven o'clock.⁸

¹ Aber after ist. ² Nicht when it limits the verb, as here, is usually at the end of the clause in simple tenses. ³ damals. ⁴ aber. ⁵ denn, after verb. ⁶ infinitive. ⁷ So. ⁸ Uhr.

* Numbers before and below the words indicate the German order so far as the numbered words are concerned.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

auf Deutsch or im Deutschen,	sechzehn, sixteen.
<i>in German.</i>	sieb(en)zehn, seventeen.
wollen Sie, <i>will you?</i>	achtzehn, eighteen.
von, <i>from;</i> bis, <i>to.</i>	neunzehn, nineteen.
das Einmaleins, <i>the one time</i>	zwanzig, twenty.
<i>one, the multiplication table.</i>	einundzwanzig, twenty one.
das Mal, <i>the time, as in "not</i>	dreißig, thirty.
<i>this time."</i>	einunddreißig, thirty-one.
machen, <i>make, do, constitute,</i>	vierzig, forty.
<i>amount to.</i>	fünfzig, fifty.
wieviel macht das? <i>how much</i>	sechzig, sixty.
<i>makes that? how much is</i>	sieb(en)zig, seventy.
<i>that.</i>	achtzig, eighty.
<hr/>	neunzig, ninety.
elf, <i>eleven.</i>	hundert, hundred.
zwölf, <i>twelve.</i>	hundertundeins, hundred and
dreizehn, <i>thirteen.</i>	one.
vierzehn, <i>fourteen.</i>	tausend, <i>a thousand.</i>
fünfzehn, <i>fifteen.</i>	eine Million ¹ , <i>a million.</i>
	neunzehn hundert und vier.
	nineteen hundred and four.

CONVERSATION 4.—Zählen.

1. Wie heißt "count" auf Deutsch?
2. "Count" heißt auf Deutsch „zählten.“
1. Wollen Sie von eins bis fünf zählen.
2. Eins, zwei, drei, vier, fünf.
1. Wollen Sie von zwanzig bis fünfundzwanzig zählen?
2. Zwanzig, einundzwanzig, zweiundzwanzig, &c.

Etc., etc.

1. Wieviel ist dreimal fünf?

2. Dreimal fünf ist fünfzehn.

Etc., etc.

1. Wieviel macht fünf und acht?

2. Fünf und acht macht dreizehn.

Etc., etc.

READING 5.

Sprichwort.

Gleich und gleich gesellt sich gern.

Like and like associate themselves gladly.

“Birds of a feather flock together.”

Was sind das für Sachen!

Bögel, die nicht singen,

Birds that not sing,

Glocken, die nicht klingen,

Bells that not ring,

Pferde, die nicht springen,

Horses that not jump,

Pistolen, die nicht krachen,

Pistols that not crack,

Kinder, die nicht lachen,

Children that not laugh,

Was sind das für Sachen!

What are that for things!

Der Esel¹ in der Löwenhaut.²

Ein entlaufener³ Esel fand im Walde⁴ zufällig⁵ die Haut eines Löwen. Er steckte sich in dieselbe, und setzte Menschen und Tiere in Schrecken.⁶ Sein Herr

suchte ⁷ ihn überall.⁸ Der Esel, seinen Herrn erblickend,⁹ fing ¹⁰ an ¹⁰ furchterlich zu brüllen; ¹¹ er wollte auch diesen täuschen.¹² Aber sein Herr packte ¹³ ihn an den Ohren und sprach: „Andere magst du täuschen, bei mir wird es dir nicht gelingen,¹⁴ ich kenne dich an deinen langen Ohren.“ Er gab ihm mit diesen Worten eine tüchtige¹⁵ Tracht¹⁶ Schläge,¹⁷ und trieb¹⁸ ihn wieder nach Hause.

¹ donkey. ⁵ by chance. ⁹ perceiving. ¹³ seized.

² lion's skin. ⁶ fright. ¹⁰ began. ¹⁴ be successful.

³ runaway. ⁷ sought. ¹¹ bray. ¹⁵ heavy.

⁴ forest. ⁸ everywhere. ¹² deceive. ¹⁶ volley.

¹⁷ blows. ¹⁸ drove.

LESSON VI.

VERBS.—OLD CONJUGATION.—PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE CASE.

1. If a strong verb-stem is found in both languages, the principal parts have the same vowel changes, as a rule.

2. Der Briefträger gab mir den Brief und ging
The letter-carrier gave me the letter and went
wieder nach der Stadt.
again to the city.

3. Notice the case of the direct and of the indirect object, also the case after the preposition.

4. In the Old Conjugation, the Preterit tense is formed by changing the vowel of the stem; as, ich gab, “I gave,” from geben, “to give.”

5. The past participle is formed by prefixing *ge-*, and adding *-(e)n*, with a change in the vowel of the stem.

6. The present participle is formed in the same manner as in the New Conjugation.

7. The endings of the present tense are the same as in the New Conjugation.

8. The Preterit of the Old Conjugation has no ending in the first and third persons singular; elsewhere it takes the same endings as the present.

9. The changes of vowel in the preterit and past participle are given in the list of all the verbs of the Old Conjugation (see Appendix). These verbs are to be thoroughly mastered on account of their constant use and prominence in the language.

10. SIMPLE TENSES (INDICATIVE MOOD) OF A VERB OF THE OLD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

geben, gab, gegeben.

Present.

ich gebe, I give.

wir geben, we give.

du gibst, thou givest.

ihr gebt, ye give.

Sie geben, you give.

Sie geben, you give.

er gibt, he gives.

sie geben, they give.

Preterit.

ich gab, I gave.

wir gaben, we gave.

du gabst, thou gavest.

ihr gabbt, ye gave.

Sie gaben, you gave.

Sie gaben, you gave.

er gab, he gave.

sie gaben, they gave.

Imperative.

SINGULAR.

geben Sie, gib (du),
give, give thou.

PLURAL.

geben Sie, gebt (ihr),
give, give ye.

Infinitive.

geben, to give.

Participles.

PRESENT.

gebend, giving.

PAST.

gegeben, given

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

- der Briefträger, the letter-carrier.
der Brief, the letter.
der Vogel, the bird.
dem Tisch(e), the table (dative).
die Männer, the men.
dem Freunde, the friend (dat.).

FEMININE.

- die Tür, the door.
die Zeitung, the newspaper.

NEUTER.

- das Lied, the song.
dem Liede, the song (dative).
nicht mehr, no longer.
früher, formerly.
wieder, again.
wollen, will, be willing (see p. 159).
lauter, louder.
 danken, thank (new).
eben, just.

PRET.

- | | | |
|------------|--------|----------|
| sprechen, | speak, | sprach, |
| lesen, | read, | las, |
| geben, | give, | gab, |
| liegen, | lie, | lag, |
| gehen, | go, | ging, |
| stehen, | stand, | stand, |
| tun, | do, | tat, |
| singen, | sing, | sang, |
| finden, | find, | fand, |
| schreiben, | write, | schrieb, |
| sehen, | see, | sah, |

PAST. PART.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--|--|-----------|
| gesprochen, | | | 3D SING. |
| gelesen, | | | spricht. |
| gegeben, | | | liest. |
| gelegen, | | | gibt. |
| gegangen, | | | liegt. |
| gestanden, | | | geht. |
| getan, | | | steht. |
| gesungen, | | | tut. |
| gefunden, | | | singt. |
| geschrieben, | | | findet. |
| gesehen, | | | schreibt. |
| | | | sieht. |

NOTE II. Prepositions with the Dative.—The following are some of the common prepositions that govern the Dative

Case only: *aus*, *out of*, *from*; *bei*, *at the house of*; *mit*, *with*; *von*, *by* (agency), *from*, *about*, *of*; *zu*, *to*; *nach*, *after* (time and rank), *to, toward*.

EXERCISE VI.

1. Der Briefträger gab mir diesen Brief für Sie.
2. Ich danke schön¹; wo ist denn der Mann? 3. Ich glaube, er ging nach der Stadt.
4. Da liegt der Brief mit der Zeitung auf dem Tische.
5. Wollen Sie nicht die Zeitung lesen?
6. Aber der Vater liest sie eben.
7. Nun, so sprechen Sie von dem Liede, welches wir morgen singen.
8. Die Männer dort sprechen ja² davon.
9. Sagten Sie nicht, der Briefträger ging mit seinem Bruder nach der Stadt?
10. Nein, mein³ Herr, das sagte ich nicht.
11. Ich sah den Bruder nicht.
12. Wann geht der Briefträger wieder vorbei?
13. Ich schreibe jetzt einen Brief aus Ihrem Garten.
14. Wer schrieb den Brief, welchen Sie haben?
15. Das war von meinem Lehrer; er schrieb aus Berlin.
16. Wo findet man eine Zeitung in dieser Stadt?
17. Ich fand sie immer bei meinem Freunde, Braun.
18. Aber kaufen Sie die Zeitung von Ihrem Freunde?
19. Warum nicht? Er gibt sie mir nicht.
20. Was taten die Männer im Garten?
21. Sie sangen und sprachen dort.
22. Wir gehen von hier nach der Stadt.
23. O, so geben Sie meinen Brief dem Briefträger.
24. Ge-
wiß, das tun⁴ wir gerne.

¹ *thank prettily*, the common phrase for English “thank you.” ² *Why*, at beginning. ³ Thus always for *Sir*. ⁴ Note the German order: if an element of the predicate precedes, the verb precedes the subject.

EXERCISE 6.

1. What is-lying ¹ there on the table? 2. I see only a newspaper. 3. I was- not -speaking of the newspaper. 4. Was- (there) not ₂ a ₃ letter -lying ₄ there also? 5. O yes, I believe (so); I find ₂ a ₃ letter now. 6. The letter-carrier gave the letter (to) my friend. ² 7. Who is ₂ your ₃ friend, ₁ then? 8. Is- he just -speaking? 9. He was-speaking of a song which we sing. 10. Does- ₃ the bird in the garden -sing also? 11. Yes, this bird sings and speaks. 12. The men are-learning the song which the teacher sang. 13. And I am-writing the song for my father. 14. Does- he -sing too? 15. No, he sings no longer; he sang formerly very finely. 16. Then ₁, why ₂ are- ₃ you -writing the song? 17. My sister sings it for my father. 18. Do- you -hear the bird sing? 19. We will speak ₅ of-that ₄ again ₁, after ₂ the ₃ song. 20. Do- you -find the newspaper where it was lying? 21. No, my brother was-reading the newspaper. 22. I found nothing on the table. 23. Go with me to the city; we will ₄ buy ₂ a ₃ newspaper ₁, there. 24. There stands the letter-carrier by the door! 25. He is-standing where he ₂ stood ₄ ₁, yesterday.

¹ Remember that German has no progressive form; use the corresponding simple tense; hyphens indicate words which in German are expressed by one. ²Dative. ³Remember that German has no interrogative or emphatic form; use the simple form, "Sings he." ⁴In the subordinate clause the personal verb stands last.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Buchstabe, *the letter.* **buchstabieren**, *spell.*
die Buchstaben, *the letters.* **können**, *can.* See p. 152.

FEMININE.

die Silbe, *the syllable.* **ich kann**, *I can.*
die Silben, *the syllables.* **so**, *so, thus.*

NEUTER.

das Wort, *the word.* **auch**, *also.*
das Alphabet, } *the alphabet.* **her'sagen**, *say, recite.*
das Abc, } **an**, *on, on, onwards.*

CONVERSATION 5.—Buchstabieren.

1. Können Sie buchstabieren?
2. Ja, ich kann buchstabieren.
1. Wollen Sie das Wort „Hand“ buchstabieren?
2. Man buchstabiert das Wort „Hand“ so, ha-a-ēn-ē.
1. Wollen Sie auch das Wort „Dogge“ buchstabieren?
2. Man buchstabiert das Wort „Dogge“ so, dē-ō-gē-ē.

Etc., etc.

READING 6.

Sprichwort.

Wer A sagt, muß¹ auch B sagen.
 Who A says, must B say.

¹ from müssen.

“If you begin, you must go on.”
 “It is the first step that costs.”

Spruch.

Wer ¹ den Pfennig ² nicht ehrt,³

Ist des Talers ⁴ nicht wert.⁵

¹ whoever. ² penny. ³ honors. ⁴ thaler. ⁵ worthy.

“Take care of the pence, and the
pounds will take care of themselves.”

Die wilde Taube ¹ und die Biene.²

Eine wilde Taube, welche auf einer Erle ³ am Bach saß,⁴ erblickte ⁵ eine Biene, die in das Wasser gefallen war und mit den Wellen ⁶ des Baches kämpfte,⁷ welche drohten ⁸ sie fortzureißen.⁹ „Warte,¹⁰ armes Bögelein,” rief ¹¹ die Taube, „ich will dir ein Schiffchen schicken,¹² auf welchem du dich retten¹³ kannst.“ Sie pickte ¹⁴ ein Baumblatt ¹⁵ ab,¹⁴ und warf ¹⁶ es ihr hinunter.¹⁶ Die Biene rettete sich und dankte ihrer Wohltäterin.¹⁷

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| ¹ dove. | ⁵ perceived. | ⁹ carry away. | ¹³ rescue. |
| ² bee. | ⁶ waves. | ¹⁰ wait. | ¹⁴ picked off. |
| ³ alder. | ⁷ struggled. | ¹¹ cried. | ¹⁵ leaf. |
| ⁴ was sitting. | ⁸ threatened. | ¹² send. | ¹⁶ threw down. |
| ¹⁷ benefactress. | | | |

LESSON VII.

VERBS.—OLD CONJUGATION.—CLASSES AND IRREGULARITIES.—PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

I. *The principal parts of the commonest strong verbs should be memorized and reviewed constantly.*

2. Der Schüler nimmt den Hut nicht gut in die Hand und lässt ihn fallen.
The pupil takes his hat not well into his hand and lets it fall.

3. Memorize this sentence after examining it carefully. Note the forms nimmt and lässt; also the use of the definite article instead of a possessive adjective.

4. The Strong Verbs are the backbone of the vocabulary in the German. It is important that they be mastered as soon as possible. Those given in Lessons VI, VII and VIII, being among the most common, should be thoroughly memorized at once.

5. There are but 188 Strong Verbs in modern German, including many which may also be used Weak, or which have but one part Strong.

6. *Marks of Weak Verbs.* A verb ending in -eln, -ern, -ieren, or having more than one syllable in its stem, is weak. Also, with few exceptions, a verb whose stem-vowel is o, u, eu, or any Umlaut. In a word, most Strong Verbs are known by the vowels a, e, i, ei, and ie; but of course not all verbs with these vowels are Strong.

7. *Classes of Strong Verbs.* In historical grammars Strong Verbs are grouped in accordance with their primitive community of *Ablaut*. Some of these groups have remained intact, or fairly so, and the learner may save much time by taking advantage of this fact.

a. Class I, stem-vowel *ei*, comprises 43 verbs, all changing *ei* to *i* or *ie* in both preterit and past participle. Whether the change is *i* or *ie*, depends on whether the vowel is short or long by position, thus *schreiben*, *schrieb*, *geschrieben*, but *reiten*, *ritt*, *geritten*. However, the sound-change is essentially the same, and the learner should acquire the cadence of *ei*, *ie*, *ie*. There is but one exception to this rule, *heißen*, *hieß*, *geheißen*.

b. Class II, stem-vowel *ie*, comprises 25 verbs, all changing *ie* to *o* in both preterit and past participle; thus *fliegen*, *flog*, *geflogen*. *Liegen*, *lag*, *gelegen*, is the one exception to this rule. Three verbs in *ü* also belong here.

c. Class III, group 1, stem vowel in *i + n +* any other consonant, comprises 18 verbs, all changing *i* to *a*, preterit, and *u*, past participle, as *singen*, *sang*, *gesungen*. 6 verbs in *i +* double nasal, change *i* to *a* and *o*, as *beginnen*, *begann*, *begonnen*, and 2 change *i* to *o* and *o*. Aside from these the only Strong Verbs in *i* are *sißen*, *saß*, *gesessen*, and *bitten*, *bat*, *gebeten*.

d. Class III, group 2, stem vowel in *e + l* or *r +* any other consonant, comprises 10 verbs changing *e* to *a* and *o*, as *sterben*, *starb*, *gestorben*. Similarly change most Strong Verbs in *e + t̄j*, *t̄*, or *h*, as *brechen*, *brach*, *gebrochen*. The learner should

hunt out the verbs of these classes and recite them one after another. It will be seen that they comprise in all about 100 of the total of 188.

8. Small Irregularities. Most Strong Verbs in e, except gehen and stehen, change this vowel to ie or (if short) i, in the 2d and 3d persons of the singular indicative and imperative. Strong Verbs in a, except schaffen and schallen, umlaut the a in the same forms.

In the above cases, if the verb stem ends in -t, the 3d person singular does not add the regular ending. If the stem ends in an e sound the 2d person singular may add either -est, or simply -t, as liefest or liest, from lesen.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

- der **Bult**, the desk.
- der **Stuhl**, the chair.
- der **Bleistift** the lead-pencil.

FEMININE.

- die **Feder**, the feather.
- die (**Schreib-**)feder, the pen.
- die **Stahlfeder**, the steel pen.
- die **Lektion**, the lesson (division of a text-book).
- die **Tasche**, the pocket.

NEUTER.

- das **Feuer**, the fire.
- das **Feuerzeug**, the match-box.
- das **Feuerzeug**, the pocket-handkerchief.
- das **Notizbuch**, the notebook.
- eben, just now.
- stark, strong.
- schon, already.
- doch, indeed, nevertheless, still, why! (the last always in expectation or objection or hente, to-day. [surprise].)
- vorgestern, day before yesterday.
- legen, lay, put (weak).

STRONG VERBS.

- siegen**, fly, flog, geslogen.
- ziehen**, draw, pull, zog, gezogen.
- sitzen**, sit, take a seat, saß, gesessen.
- lassen**, let, make (to do), ließ, gelassen, läßt.

*fallen, fall, fiel, gefallen, fällt.
brechen, break, brach, gebrochen, bricht.
nehmen, take, nahm, genommen, nimmt.
schneiden, cut, schnitt, geschnitten.*

IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

*bringen, bring, brachte, gebracht.
wissen, know (a fact), wußte, gewußt, weiß.*

NOTE 12.—**Prepositions with Dative or Accusative:**—The following common prepositions govern the dative case when indicating position, the accusative when indicating motion toward: *in, in, into; an, by, at, to, on* (with dates), *up to; auf, on, upon, for* (anticipated date); *vor, before; über, above, over, about; unter, below, under.*

EXERCISE VII.

1. Der Vogel flog durch das Zimmer und saß¹ auf meinen Stuhl.
2. Ich sah den Vogel auch, aber es war des Lehrers Stuhl, auf welchen er saß.
3. Der Vogel ließ eine Feder fallen.
4. Der Lehrer schnitt aus dieser Feder eine Schreibfeder.
5. Er schneidet mit einem Federmesser.
6. Schrieb die Feder gut?
7. Mein, die Feder war nicht stark genug; sie brach.
8. Der Lehrer aber² zog eine Stahlfeder aus der³ Tasche.
9. Schreiben Sie das in Ihr Notizbuch?
10. Was steht nicht alles⁴ in meinem Notizbuch?
11. Weiß der Lehrer, was Sie schreiben?
12. Nicht immer; ich schrieb doch⁵ vorgestern über den Lehrer selbst.
13. Bringen Sie Ihr Notizbuch an den Pult.
14. Tun Sie das Papier in die Tasche.
15. Ich wußte nicht, was Sie sagten.
16. Der Schüler ließ das Buch auf dem Tische

des Lehrers. 17. Ich legte das Papier auf den Stuhl.
 18. Was ist die Lektion auf⁶ heute? 19. Das weiß ich nicht; Sie wissen doch! 20. Wir standen an dem Tische, auf welchem die Bücher lagen.

¹ Sitzen with auf + accusative = sich setzen, which would be more common; tr. 'perched.' ² Aber may take any place where 'however' may stand. ³ See par. 3, this Lesson. ⁴ Tr. with Was. ⁵ Tr. 'why,' at beginning. ⁶ auf = 'for' with future time fixing duties.

EXERCISE 7.

1. Who is sitting there in the chair by the door?
2. Why,¹ I do not know; I ,did ,not ,see ,the ,chair.
3. The brother of the pupil was sitting by the table.
4. This man cut a pen for the teacher. 5. He drew a penknife out-of his pocket. 6. But² the teacher writes with a steel-pen. 7. His pen is lying ,on ,the ,table ,already. 8. His lead-pencil broke day before yesterday. 9. The pencil fell upon the chair before the table. 10. Those chairs stood before the window. 11. Bring your chair to³ the window. 12. We laid our notebooks upon the table.
13. ,We ,are ,already ,learning the lesson for to-morrow. 14. Does the teacher let you sing? 15. Yes, indeed, he lets us do what we please.⁴ 16. That is indeed⁵ a teacher! 17. Well, I don't know; do you learn much? 18. He did not know that I sing. 19. The bird sings too, but it is not-a⁶ pupil. 20. The bird ,just ,flew through the room. 21. Your pen is lying under my note-book. 22. Thank you; we

leave you here in the room with the teacher. 23. He will find (finds)⁷ his hat on the chair before the door. 24. He takes his hat and goes. 25. We are going after the teacher.

¹ doch after verb. ² Place somewhere else than at beginning.
³ an with acc. or zu with dat.; use contraction with article.
⁴ Tr. wollen 'will.' ⁵ aber doch. ⁶ Trans. 'no,' kein. ⁷ The present is often used for the future.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Satz, *the sentence.*
 des Satzes (genitive).
 der Anfang, *the beginning.*
 der Laut, *the sound.*
 der Punkt, *the period.*

FEMININE.

die Betonung, *the accent.*
 die Mitte, *the middle.*
 die Vorsilbe, *the prefix.*

NEUTER.

das Ende, *the end.*
 das Fragezeichen, *the interrogative-point.*
 aussprechen, *pronounce.*
 nennen, *name.*
 eigentlich, *really.*
 gewöhnlich, *usually.*

CONVERSATION 6.—Wort und Laut.

1. Was ist das Wort am Anfang des Satzes?
 2. Das Wort am Anfang dieses Satzes ist „was“.
1. Wie buchstabieren Sie das Wort „Satz“?
 2. Ich buchstabiere es so: es, ah, te, tset.
1. Richtig; aber was ist der Laut am Anfang?
 2. Ich glaube der Laut am Anfang ist mehr wie das z auf Englisch.
1. Wo fällt die Betonung auf dem Wort „Anfang“?
 2. Die Betonung fällt auf die Vorsilbe.

1. Wie heißt der Buchstabe in der Mitte des Wortes?
2. Das ist eigentlich zwei Buchstaben.
1. Können Sie diese Buchstaben aussprechen?
2. Ich kann sie nennen; sie heißen te-tset.
1. Was für ein Punkt steht gewöhnlich am Ende des Satzes?
2. Das nennt man nur einen Punkt.
Etc., etc.

READING 7.

Sprichwort.

Der Mensch denkt's, Gott lenkt's.
thinks it guides it

“Man proposes, God disposes.”

Der gute Kamerad.

Ich hatt' einen Kameraden,
Einen bessern findst du nit¹;
Die Trommel schlug zum Streite,
drum beat for battle
Er ging an meiner Seite,
 side

In gleichem Schritt und Tritt. (Repeat).
equal pace step

Eine Kugel kam geflogen;
bullet flying

Gilt 's mir oder gilt es dir?
Is it for me

¹ dialect form of nicht.

Ihn hat es weggerissen,
snatched away
 Er liegt mir vor den Füßen,
at my
 Als wär' 's ein Stück von mir. (Repeat.)
As were it
 Will mir die Hand noch reichen,
 (He) wants give
 Dieweil ich eben lad'.
While I am just loading
 „Kann dir die Hand nicht geben;
 Bleib' du im ew'gen Leben,
eternal life
 Mein guter Kamerad.“ (Repeat).
Ludwig Uhland.

LESSON VIII.

VERBS.—COMPOUND TENSES.—**Haben** AND **sein**.

1. Memorize the commonest verbs that take **sein** as auxiliary, and learn the principle that determines this; the great majority take **haben**.

2. Der Vater ist gekommen und hat uns ein Buch
Father has come and has us a book
gebracht.
brought.

3. Learn this sentence; notice the auxiliary which represents 'has' in each case, and the kind of verb with which each is used, also the position of the past participle.

4. The compound tenses are formed by uniting

one of the auxiliaries of tense (*haben*, *sein*, *werden*) with participle or infinitive of the verb in question.

5. The auxiliary *haben* (or *sein*) with the past participle of the verb forms the perfect and pluperfect tenses and perfect infinitive: as *ich habe geliebt*, 'I have loved'; *ich hatte geliebt*, 'I had loved'; *geliebt haben*, 'to have loved.'

6. The auxiliary *werden* with the infinitives of the principal verb forms the future tenses: as *ich werde lieben*, 'I shall love'; *ich werde geliebt haben*, 'I shall have loved.'

7. Thus *werden* as an auxiliary must be distinguished from *werden* as an independent verb. As an auxiliary the word means 'shall' in the first person, but 'wilt,' 'will,' in the second and third. In the future of the independent verb *werden* the two occur together, *ich werde werden*, 'I shall become.'

8. *sein* is used instead of *haben* as tense auxiliary in the case of a small number of verbs, mostly of frequent occurrence. The following general rule will aid the memory:

Transitive verbs always take *haben*; but some *intransitives* (those denoting change of *place* or *condition*) take *sein*, or either *sein* or *haben*, the latter when the mode or the duration of motion is emphasized, for example: *Er ist nach der Stadt geritten*, *he has ridden to the city*; but *Er hat zwei Stunden geritten*, *he rode two miles (or hours)*.

9. The following are the most common of those that usually take *sein*:

sein only:

sein, be.
werden, become.
gehen, go.
kommen, come.
sterben, die.
geschehen, happen.
bleiben, remain.

sein or haben:

<i>fahren, go, fare.</i>	<i>fliegen, fly.</i>
<i>reiten, ride.</i>	<i>fließen, flow.</i>
<i>laufen, run.</i>	<i>steigen, rise.</i>
<i>folgen, follow.</i>	<i>ziehen, move.</i>
<i>fallen, fall.</i>	<i>begegnen, meet.</i>
<i>springen, jump.</i>	

10. INFLECTION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES, INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

ich habe geliebt, I have loved (I have been loving).

du hast geliebt, thou hast loved (thou hast been loving).

Sie haben geliebt, you have loved (you have been loving).

er hat geliebt, he has loved (he has been loving).

wir haben geliebt, we have loved.

ihr habt geliebt, ye have loved.

Sie haben geliebt, you have loved.

sie haben geliebt, they have loved.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte geliebt, I had loved.

du hattest geliebt, thou hadst loved.

Sie hatten geliebt, you had loved.

er hatte geliebt, he had loved.

wir hatten geliebt, we had loved.

ihr hattet geliebt, ye had loved.

Sie hatten geliebt, you had loved.

sie hatten geliebt, they had loved.

Future.

ich werde lieben, *I shall love.*
 du wirst lieben, *thou wilt love.*
 Sie werden lieben, *you will love.*
 er wird lieben, *he will love.*

wir werden lieben, *we shall love.*
 ihr werdet lieben, *ye will love.*
 Sie werden lieben, *you will love.*
 sie werden lieben, *they will love.*

Future Perfect.

ich werde geliebt haben, *I shall have loved.*
 du wirst geliebt haben, *thou wilt have loved.*
 Sie werden geliebt haben, *you will have loved.*
 er wird geliebt haben, *he will have loved.*

wir werden geliebt haben, *we shall have loved.*
 ihr werdet geliebt haben, *ye will have loved.*
 Sie werden geliebt haben, *you will have loved.*
 sie werden geliebt haben, *they will have loved.*

Infinitive.

geliebt haben, *to have loved.*

VOCABULARY.**MASCULINE.**

der Bahnhof, *the station.*
 der Zug, *the train.*
 der Tee, *the tea.*
 der Knabe, *the boy.*
 der Nachmittag, *the afternoon.*
 die Knaben, *the boys.*

FEMININE.

die Tasse, *the cup.*
 die Tante, *the aunt.*
 die Meile (-n), *the mile, miles.*

NEUTER.

das Glas, *the glass.*
 das Abendbrot (*evening bread*),
 the supper, tea.
 das Thea'ter, *the theatre.*
 die Billete, *the tickets.*
 heute nachmittag, *this after-
 noon.*
 heute abend, *this evening.*
 bald, *soon.* [ously.
 fleißig, *industrious, industri-*

<i>mehr, more.</i>	<i>vorher, previously, first.</i>
<i>noch nicht, not yet.</i>	<i>wann, when?</i>
<i>Abendbrot essen (or nehmen), take tea.</i>	<i>soeben, just now.</i>
	<i>sogleich, immediately.</i>

STRONG VERBS WITH *sein*:

kommen, come, I am, gekommen.
reiten, ride (horseback), ritt, geritten.
bleiben, remain, blieb, geblieben.
steigen, mount (or descend'), stieg, gestiegen.
laufen, run (the gait), lief, gelaufen, läuft.
fahren, ride (in vehicle), fuhr, gefahren, fährt.
sterben, die, starb, gestorben, stirbt.
geschehen, happen, geschah, geschehen, geschieht.

WITH *haben*:

trinken, drink, trank, getrunken.
bitten, ask (request), bat, gebeten (for, um).

DECLENSION OF *ich*, I.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>ich, I.</i>	<i>wir, we.</i>
Gen. <i>meiner (mein), of me.</i>	<i>unser, of us.</i>
Dat. <i>mir, to me.</i>	<i>uns, to us.</i>
Acc. <i> mich, me.</i>	<i> uns, us.</i>

NOTE 13.—The English order in “I have bought a house,” “I will buy a house,” becomes in German, “I have a house bought,” “I will a house buy”; that is, in compound forms of the verb, the *part. or inf.* comes at the end of the clause. For particular statement of the order of the German sentence, see Lessons XXV and XXVI.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Was haben die Knaben heute nachmittag getan (or gemacht)? 2. Sie haben fleißig gespielt und gelacht; sie werden aber heute abend mehr lachen. 3. Was

werden wir denn heute abend machen? 4. Wir werden alle ins Theater gehen. 5. Aber werden wir nicht vorher Abendbrot nehmen? 6. Ich habe schon eine Tasse¹ Tee getrunken. 7. Ich bitte Sie: bleiben Sie zum Abendbrot. 8. Ich bedaure,² ich gehe sogleich zum Bahnhof. 9. Aber der Zug ist noch nicht gekommen. 10. Die Knaben wollen auch zum Bahnhof gehen. 11. Ihre Tante wird mit diesem Zuge kommen. 12. Sie sind schon von dem Zuge gekommen. 13. Ich glaube, es ist etwas geschehen. 14. Ja, sie haben es mir gesagt. 15. Haben Sie es schon gehört? 16. Ihre Tante wird nicht kommen; sie ist vorgestern gestorben. 17. Wir hatten diese Tante sehr geliebt. 18. Wir werden also heute abend nicht ins Theater gehen. 19. Und wir bleiben doch bei Ihnen³. 20. Ich bitte Sie um ein Glas Wasser. 21. Sie haben ein Stück Musik gelernt und werden es für uns singen. 22. Ich glaube, wir haben es schon gehört. 23. Aber wir wollen es wieder hören.

¹ See German Exercise V, note 2. ² Thus, without object expressed, implied ‘that I cannot.’ ³ you (dat. of Sie).

EXERCISE 8.

1. My aunt has ,always ,loved ,me. 2. But have you not heard? She has just died. 3. No, I had not yet heard it. 4. Is (stands) it in the newspaper? 5. I do not know ; the newspaper has not come this afternoon. 6. Yes, here ,it ,stands : “ She had just

drunk a cup (of) tea." 7. Will you not stay , to , tea , with ¹ , us ? 8. Have you not already eaten supper? 9. , We , have , driven , twenty , miles , this , after- noon. 10. We have , drunk , nothing , this , after- noon. 11. , Then ² , we , will stay with you. 12. Have you brought the friends from the station ? 13. Our friends have just come from the train. 14. They had just descended from the train. 15. Have they already supped (taken supper)? 16. They have only drunk a cup (of) tea. 17. That is nothing, they will surely take supper with us. 18. What has happened ? What have you done ? 19. The cup has fallen ; I have broken it. 20. We shall soon find my brother's cup. 21. I have already found it. ³ 22. Our friends wish to go to the theater. 23. They have asked me for three tickets. 24. Will you give us your tickets ?

¹ bet. ² Also. ³ See Exercise 4, note 1.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Satz, *the sentence.*

auf deutsch, *in German.*

der Redeteil, *the part of speech.*

wovon, *of or about what?*

die Redeteile, *the parts of
speech.*

handeln (*handle*), *treat.*

was für (*what for*), *what kind
of?*

FEMININE.

die Gramma'tik, *the grammar.*

enthal'ten, *contain.*

enthält, *contains.*

NEUTER.

das Zeitwort (*Verbum*), *the verb.*

das Hauptwort (*Substantiv'*), *the noun.*

das Fürwort (*Prono'men*), *the pronoun.*

- das Eigenschaftswort (*Adjektiv'*), *the adjective.*
 das Geschlechtswort (*der Arti'kel*), *the article.*
 das Zahlwort (*Numerale'*), *the numeral.*
 das Nebenwort (*Adver'bium*), *the adverb.*
 das Vorwort (*die Preposition'*), *the preposition.*
 das Bindewort, (*die Konjunktion'*),
 das Ausrufungswort (*die Interjektion'*), *the interjection.*
 die Zeitwörter, *the verbs.*

CONVERSATION 7.— Die Redeteile.

- i. Wie heißt "verb" auf deutsch?
 2. "Verb" heißt auf deutsch „das Zeitwort.“
Etc., etc.
 - i. Wie viele Zeitwörter hat dieser Satz?
 2. Dieser Satz hat nur ein Zeitwort.
Etc., etc.
 - i. Wovon handelt die Grammatik?
 2. Die Grammatik handelt von den Redeteilen.
 - i. Was für ein Redeteil ist „Haus“?
 2. „Haus“ ist ein Hauptwort.
Etc., etc.
 - i. Wie heißt das Sprichwort in dieser Aufgabe?
 2. Das Sprichwort in dieser Aufgabe heißt, „Glück und Glas,“ sc.
Etc., etc.
 - i. Wie viele Hauptwörter enthält es?
 2. Es enthält zwei Hauptwörter.
Etc., etc.

READING 8.

Epridwort.

Glück und Glas, wie bald bricht's das.
Happiness how soon breaks that.
¹ from broken.

"Fortune hath wings."

Epruß.

Was du nicht willst, daß man dir tu'¹,
 What wilt, that to-thee do,
 Das füg'² auch keinem andern zu.
 That do also no other to.
¹for tue. ²for füge.

Das Wasser.

Vom Himmel kommt es,
 Zum Himmel steigt ¹ es,
 Und wieder ² nieder ³
 Zur Erde muß es,
 Ewig ⁴ wechselnd.⁵

Goethe.

¹rises. ²again. ³down. ⁴eternally. ⁵changing.

LESSON IX.**COMPOUND TENSES.—CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES.**

1. Do not translate tenses literally, but seek and use the corresponding tense in the other language.
2. Der Großvater ist gestern in der Schule gewesen
Grandfather was yesterday in (the) school [been]
und kommt morgen wieder.
and (will) come to-morrow again.
3. Learn this sentence. Notice the use of the article before Großvater; notice especially the perfect tense (ist gewesen) for the English past, and the present for the future.
4. German like English uses the present tense for the future, but still more freely, as Ich gehe mor-

gen nach der Stadt, *I go (am going, shall go) to the city to-morrow*; Ich sage es nicht, *I shall not say it (as well as, I do not say it)*.

5. German uses the present tense for the English perfect, where the latter represents a past condition continuing in the present, as Wir wohnen schon zwei Jahre hier, *We have been living here two years*.

6. The German preterit corresponds to the English past progressive and to the simple past in consecutive narrative (the historical tense), as, Er schrieb in dem Garten, *He was writing in the garden*; Ich kam, ich sah, ich siegte, *I came, I saw, I conquered*.

7. But the German uses the perfect for the English past in colloquial and disconnected sentences, as Ich habe ihren Bruder gestern gesehen, *I saw your brother yesterday*; Columbus hat Amerika entdeckt, *Columbus discovered America*.

8. The idioms in 5, 6, 7, above are among the most characteristic in German and should be carefully observed and practiced. In the exercises hitherto they have been avoided, but this and the following lessons will use them freely.

9. The verbs haben, sein, werden, being so common, should be thoroughly memorized, hence a synopsis of them is given herewith. The form with the pronoun Sie, being the only one used in polite conversation, should be given regularly in reciting paradigms.

IO. COMPOUND TENSES OF **haben**, IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.**haben, hatte, gehabt.****Perfect.**

- ich habe gehabt, I have had.
du hast gehabt, thou hast had.
Sie haben gehabt, you have had.
er hat gehabt, he has had.**

Etc., etc.**Pluperfect.**

- ich hatte gehabt, I had had.
du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had.
Sie hatten gehabt, you had had.
er hatte gehabt, he had had.**

Etc., etc.**Future.**

- ich werde haben, I shall have.
Etc., etc.**

Future Perfect.

- ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.
Etc., etc.**

Compound Infinitive.

- gehabt haben, to have had.**

II. COMPOUND TENSES OF **sein**, IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.**PRINCIPAL PARTS.****sein, war, gewesen.****Perfect.**

- ich bin gewesen, I have been.
du bist gewesen, thou hast been.
Sie sind gewesen, you have been.
er ist gewesen, he has been.**

Etc., etc.

Pluperfect.

ich war gewesen, *I had been.*
 du warst gewesen, *thou hadst been.*
 Sie waren gewesen, *you had been.*
 er war gewesen, *he had been.*

Etc., etc.

Future.

ich werde sein, *I shall be.*
 du wirst sein, *thou wilt be.*
 Sie werden sein, *you will be.*
 er wird sein, *he will be.*

Etc., etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde gewesen sein, *I shall have been.*
 du wirst gewesen sein, *thou wilt have been.*
 Sie werden gewesen sein, *you will have been.*
 er wird gewesen sein, *he will have been.*

Etc., etc.

Compound Infinitive.

gewesen sein, *to have been.*

12. COMPOUND TENSES OF *werden*, IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

werden, wurde or ward, geworden.

Perfect.

ich bin geworden, *I have become.*
 Etc., etc.

Pluperfect.

ich war geworden, *I had become.*
 Etc., etc.

Future.

ich werde werden, *I shall become.*
 Etc., etc.

Future Perfect.

*ich werde geworden sein, I shall have become.
Etc., etc.*

Compound Infinitive.

geworden sein, to have become.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

- der Großvater, the grandfather.
der Forst, the forest.
der Regen, the rain.
der Himmel, the heaven, sky.
(der) Eduard, Edward.
(der) Heinrich, Henry.
die Äpfel, the apples.

FEMININE.

- die Mütze, the cap.
die Wilhelmstraße, William Street.
die Schule, the school.

NEUTER.

- das Reitpferd, the saddle-horse.
das Handwerk, the trade.
das Wetter, the weather.
weg, away.
hoffen, hope.

- rufen, call, summon.
schicken, send.
spazieren gehen, go walking.
verlieren, lose.
verderben, spoil.
darum, on that account.
gestern, yesterday.
zu, too (excessively), to (with inf.)
bei, at the house of.
bis jetzt, till now.
ganz, quite.
klar, clear, bright.
lange, long.
schlecht, bad.
kalt, cold.
ihr, (dat.), her.
seit, (dat.), for (time).
einige, some.
auch, either (after negative).
schon recht, all right.

DECLINATION OF *du*, thou.

Singular.

- Nom. *du*, thou.
Gen. *deiner* (*dein*), of thee.
Dat. *dir*, to thee.
Acc. *dich*, thee.

Plural.

- ihr, ye, you.* *Sie.*
euer, of you. *Ihrer.*
euch, to you. *Ihnen.*
euch, you. *Sie.*

NOTE. 14.—Do not use *du* unless relationship or intimacy is indicated, for instance, to one who is addressed by his Christian name.

NOTE. 15.—When the sentence begins with *a part of the predicate* the verb must precede the subject. The verb precedes the subject in *questions* as in a *command* or a *wish*. If the verb begins a sentence which is not a question, a command or a wish, it probably expresses a *condition*, *wenn* being understood. But see Lessons XXV and XXVI.

EXERCISE IX.

1. Das Wetter ist gestern sehr schlecht gewesen.¹
2. Eduard ist darum nicht zur Schule gegangen.
3. Heinrich ist aber gegangen. 4. Der Regen hat seine Mütze verdorben. 5. Aber das Wetter ist heute bis jetzt schön. 6. Wollen² wir doch³ spazieren gehen!
7. Ja, wollen wir zu unsern Freunden in der Wilhelmstraße gehen! 8. Ich habe meine Mütze verloren.
9. Ich kaufe mir darum einen Hut. 10. Gehen die Knaben heute nicht zur⁴ Schule? 11. Heinrich wird nicht gehen, aber Eduard geht. 12. Wie lange gehen die Knaben schon in die Schule? 13. O, sie gehen schon vier Jahre. 14. Eduard wird bald ein Handwerk lernen.
15. Heinrich ist nicht stark, er ist sehr frank gewesen.
16. Sind Sie auch frank gewesen? 17. Nein, und ich hoffe, ich werde nicht frank werden. 18. Man sagt, der Lehrer ist auch frank geworden. 19. Ich weiß, er ist gestern nicht in der Schule gewesen. 20. Wer hat denn gelehrt? 21. Sind die Schüler in der Schule geblieben? 22. Sawohl, man hat den Bruder unsers

Lehrers gerufen. 23. Eduard, hat er dir gesagt, wo die Lektion ist? 24. Ja, und ich habe meine Aufgabe schon gelernt.

¹ See the remark at the head of this lesson. ² *Let us*, a mild sort of imperative used in the first person plural. ³ *Tr. come or O* at beginning. ⁴ *Zur Schule gehen*, *to go to school* (on any occasion); *in die Schule gehen*, *to go to school* (to attend school).

EXERCISE 9.

1. Henry, your grandfather has been here.
2. So? what did he say? 3. Why has he stayed away so long? 4. Has he then been sick? 5. He has, only had, very much, to do. 6. I have just come from [the] school. 7. Did you learn your lesson well? 8. I had learned it well, but I forgot. 9. Ah, I have heard that so often! 10. I, have, grown, very, tired (of), it. 11. I shall not forget it again. 12. When did Edward lose his cap? 13. He has had this cap (for) a year. 14. Who told you so? 15. I heard it at school. 16. What has become of Henry? 17. Henry, I have been calling you (for) five minutes. 18. Shall we see you to-morrow at our house? 19. I hope the weather will not be bad. 20. We shall ride to the forest. 21. How long have you had this horse? 22. Not very long; but we had one horse ten years. 23. We do not ride, we shall go walking. 24. We shall not ride either; it will be too cold. 25. We shall send some apples

to our aunt. 26. Edward saw her yesterday; he says she has been sick. 27. Then , we , shall , go , to , her , ourselves. 28. Call the boys; they will go with you. 29. Edward will be here immediately, but Henry had already gone. 30. That will be all right.

¹ müde may govern a direct accusative. ² Add lang after Jahr, though not required. ³ Also or dann.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Werktag, <i>the workday.</i>	der Feiertag, <i>the holiday.</i>
der Sonntag, <i>Sunday.</i>	der erste Tag, <i>the first day.</i>
der Montag, <i>Monday.</i>	der vorletzte Tag, <i>the last day but one.</i>
der Dienstag, <i>Tuesday.</i>	die Woche, <i>the week.</i>
der Mittwoch, <i>Wednesday.</i>	der Woche, <i>of the week.</i>
der Donnerstag, <i>Thursday.</i>	die Tage, <i>the days.</i>
der Freitag, <i>Friday.</i>	nennen, <i>name.</i>
der Sonnabend (<i>Samstag</i>), <i>Saturday.</i>	

CONVERSATION 8.—Die Woche.

1. Wieviele Tage hat die Woche?
2. Die Woche hat sieben Tage.
1. Wie heißt der erste Tag der Woche?
2. Der erste Tag der Woche heißt Sonntag.
1. Wie heißt der vorletzte Tag der Woche?
2. Der vorletzte Tag der Woche heißt Freitag.
Etc., etc.
1. Wollen Sie die Tage der Woche nennen?
2. Sonntag, Montag, etc.
1. Wie heißt der Tag zwischen Mittwoch und Freitag?

2. Der Tag zwischen Mittwoch und Freitag heißt Donnerstag.
1. Wie heißt der Tag nach Sonntag?
2. Der Tag nach Sonntag heißt Montag.
Etc., etc.

READING 9.

Sprichwort.

Müßiggang ist aller Laster Anfang.
“Idleness is the mother of all vices.”

Die Wacht am Rhein.

Es braust ein Stuf wie Donnerhall,
There roars cry like thunder-call
Wie Schwertgeklirr und Wogenprall,
sword-clash wave-dash
Zum Rhein, zum Rhein, zum deutschen Rhein,
Wer will des Stromes Hüter sein?
the stream's guard

Chor. |: Lieb Vaterland, magst ruhig sein, :|
(thou) mayst calm
|: Fest steht und treu |: die Wacht:| am Rhein !:|
Fast true

Durch Hunderttausend zückt es schnell
hundred thousand darts swiftly
Und aller Augen blitzen hell:
(of) all flash brightly
Der Deutsche, bieder, fromm und starf,
upright pious strong
Beschützt die heil'ge Landesmarf. *Chor.*
(Will) guard holy land-borders.

Der Schwur erschallt, die Woge rinnt,
 vowel resounds wave runs
 Die Fahnen flattern hoch im Wind:
 flags flutter
 Am Rhein, am Rhein, am deutschen Rhein
 Wir alle wollen Hütter sein! *Chor.*
 Max Schneckenburger.

LESSON X.

NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION. CLASS I.

1. *It pays to learn thoroughly the classes of declension; these are based on gender, endings and number of syllables. Note carefully the things common to all.*
2. Der Vater des Schülers hat ja¹ zwei Brüder in dem Dörfchen gehabt.
 pupil [has] village had.
¹Why, at beginning.
3. Learn this sentence. Note the common characteristics of the first three nouns, and their forms.
4. German nouns are commonly divided into two declensions:
5. To the FIRST or *strong* Declension belong all of the neuter and most of the masculine nouns, with quite a number of feminines.

6. To the SECOND or *weak* Declension belong most feminine nouns with some masculines, but no neuters.

7. In the FIRST Declension the genitive singular adds (e)s; in the SECOND Declension (e)n to masculine nouns.

8. In the FIRST Declension the plural nominative is formed in three different ways; in the SECOND Declension the plural ends throughout in -n (-en).

9. FEMININE nouns, whether belonging to the FIRST or SECOND Declension, do not vary in the singular.

10. In order to decline a noun, it is necessary to know the *genitive singular* and the *nominative plural*, which, together with the gender and the nominative singular, are to be found in the dictionary.

11. Compound nouns receive gender and classification from the last element of the compound. The classification in this and the following lessons is based on simple nouns.

FIRST DECLENSION.

12. The First Declension may be divided into three classes, according to the form of the nominative plural: In Class I, to form the nominative plural, nothing is added to the nominative singular; in Class II, -e is added; in Class III, -er.

13. TABLES OF CASE-ENDINGS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
Nom.	—	—	—	—	“e	“er
Gen.	—s	(e)s	(e)s	—	“e	“er
Dat.	—	(e)	(e)	—n	“en	“ern
Acc.	—	—	—	—	“e	“er

14. The e in parenthesis is purely euphonic. It is a good general rule to retain it with monosyllables, and in the dative of polysyllables which have es in the genitive.

15. NOTE. *a.* Most monosyllables modify the stem-vowel in the plural.

b. The dative plural *always* ends in -n.

c. The change to the *Umlaut* in the plural takes place in Class I sometimes, in Class II generally, in Class III always.

There are many exceptions to any scheme of declension, and these must be learned from the dictionary little by little. But for some common cases see the Appendix.

A tabular view of the declensions is given on p. 98.

CLASS I.

16. This class comprises masculine and neuter polysyllables ending in -el, -er, -en, and the diminutives in -chen and -lein.

The feminines *Mutter* and *Tochter* follow the model of this class in the plural. Latin derivatives in -or follow this class in the singular, but are weak in the plural.

17. DECLENSION OF *der Schüler*, *the scholar*.

Singular.

- Nom. *der Schüler*, *the scholar*.
 Gen. *des Schülers*, *of the scholar*.
 Dat. *dem Schüler*, *to the scholar*.
 Acc. *den Schüler*, *the scholar*.

Plural.

- Nom. *die Schüler*, *the scholars*.
 Gen. *der Schüler*, *of the scholars*.
 Dat. *den Schülern*, *to the scholars*.
 Acc. *die Schüler*, *the scholars*.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

- der Lehrer*, *the teacher*.
der Schlüssel, *the key*.
der Ofen, *the stove*.
der Teller, *the plate*.
der Stiefel, *the boot*.
der Gärtner, *the gardener*.
der Onkel, *the uncle*.
der Fußboden, *the floor*.
der Schemel, *the footstool*.

FEMININE.

- die Töchter*, *the daughters*.
die Mütter, *the mothers*.

NEUTER.

- das Fenster*, *the window*.
das Bäumchen, *the little tree*.
das Fräulein, *the young lady*,
Miss.
das Töchterchen, *the little
daughter*.
das Mädchen, *the girl*.

(*das*) *Lindchen*, diminutive of
Karoline.

neben, *beside, by* (with dative).
vielleicht, *perhaps, possibly*.
vor einer Stunde (before an
hour), *an hour ago*.

rauchen, *to smoke*.
doch, *though, nevertheless*; *O*
yes, surely.
natürlich, *of course*.

zu Hause, *at home*.
nicht wahr, *is it not true? is
it not so?*
wohl, *to be sure; probably;
certainly*.

ja, *indeed, you know, why*.
schon, *already, surely, doubt-
less, even, betimes*.
denn, *then, in that case, now,
indeed*.
noch, *besides, as yet, still (tem-
poral)*.
etwa!, *once, only*.

REMARK.—The adverb *doch* means commonly “though”; but a variety of expressions are necessary to give its precise force or particular shade of meaning in different connections. Usually the sentence with *doch* expresses surprise, remonstrance, or objection, and the equivalent of *doch* is *Why!* or *O!* or *Come!* at the beginning of the English sentence, as, *Gib mir doch den Hut*, Come, give me my hat; *Er hat doch nichts getan!* Why, he has done nothing! Only long practice and observation will enable one to appreciate its exact signification. Much the same may be said of *ja*, *wohl*, *auch* and *schön*.

DECLENSION OF *er*, *he*, *sie*, *she*, *es*, *it*.

M.	F.	N.		M.F.N.
Nom. <i>er</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>he, she, it.</i>	<i>sie</i> <i>they.</i>
Gen. <i>sein(er)</i>	<i>ihrer</i>	<i>sein(er)</i>	<i>of him, her, it.</i>	<i>ihrer</i> <i>of them</i>
Dat. <i>ihm</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihm</i>	<i>to him, her, it.</i>	<i>ihnen</i> <i>to them.</i>
Acc. <i>ihn</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>him, her, it.</i>	<i>sie</i> <i>them.</i>

es is also the expletive “there.”

NOTE 16.—In sentences introduced by *dass*, “that,” *damit*, “in order that,” etc., and by relatives, the verb is *transposed* to the end. For a detailed statement of the order of the German sentence, see Lesson XXV.

NOTE 17.—The endings *-chen* and *-lein* are extensively used to form diminutives, or words expressing endearment, which are then always neuter, and have the *Umlaut* on the stem-vowel.

EXERCISE X.

- Der Lehrer unserer Tochter ist hier gewesen.
- Hat er etwas über sie gesagt?
- Er sagt, sie hat gestern Abend sehr schön gesungen.
- Das werden wir doch ihrem Onkel sagen.
- Ja wohl, ihr Onkel wird es gern hören.
- Sie singt auch heute wieder bei dem Lehrer.
- Wollen wir denn mit ihr zum Lehrer fahren?
- Wir haben dem

- Lehrer ein Buch gegeben. 9. Es war wohl ein Musikbuch?
 10. Werden die Mütter der Mädchen auch bei dem Lehrer sein? 11. Ich glaube wohl; meine Mutter nimmt ihr Töchterchen mit. 12. Die Mädchen sind schon gegangen.
 13. Der Vater dieses Mädchens reitet gern. 14. Er wird wohl reiten. 15. Fräulein Braun ist noch nicht hier.
 16. Ist vielleicht etwas geschehen? 17. Nein, sie ist bei ihrer Mutter geblieben. 18. Ihre Mutter ist krank geworden.
 19. Der Vater hat den Mädchen den Schlüssel des Zimmers gelassen. 20. Die Mädchen haben im Zimmer gespielt.
 21. Hat das Zimmer einen Fußboden zum Tanzen? 22. Die Öfen in dem Zimmer haben alle geraucht.
 23. Linchen hat darum nicht gesungen.

EXERCISE 10.

1. Our uncle has lived in this house ten years.
2. The uncle's gardener lives in the house with him.
3. We have often been in uncle's room. 4. How many windows has the room? 5. ,That ,I do ,not ,know, but the windows of the room are all large.
6. I believe the room has no stove. 7. O yes, it has a stove. 8. They are just coming out of the room. 9. Did you see my uncle? 10. I think I saw him. 11. He was sitting by the stove. 12. His boots were lying on the footstool beside him.
13. He was eating from a plate. 14. I think ,I just ,heard ,a ,plate ,fall. 15. ,Why, ,the ,plate ,fell upon the stove. 16. ,Of-course ,it ,broke.

17. What broke, the plate or the stove? 18. I hope it did not fall upon the floor. 19. Uncle's floors are always very clean. 20. Uncle has given each of us a plate. 21. I think we will give him one. 22. We shall send the plate by¹ the gardener. 23. The gardener's little daughter is just going to uncle's.² 24. Will she not stay in the house? 25. Her father stays³ there, you-know. 26. The gardener has lost the key of the room. 27. Why,³ the key was lying on the floor beside the stove. 28. I thank you very (much); we have found it. 29. From this window², we¹, see the windows of the theater. 30. Yes, the gardener², often¹, goes with uncle to the theater.

¹ durch. ² Dative case. ³ doch after verb.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Mo'nat,	<i>the month.</i>	einige, <i>some.</i>
der Jannar',		zuweilen, <i>sometimes.</i>
der Febrnar',		wie nennt man, <i>(how names one?) how do they call?</i>
der März,		der erste Monat (Nom.),
der April',		den ersten Monat (Acc.),
der Mai,		the first month.
der Ju'ni,		wie würden Sie, <i>how would you?</i>
der Ju'li,		datie'ren, <i>date.</i>
der Augnß',		ich würde, <i>I would.</i>
der September,		neunzehn hundert vier, <i>nine- teen hundred and four.</i>
der Oktober,		
der November,		
der Dezember,		
der Winter, <i>winter.</i>		
der Sommer, <i>summer.</i>		

NEUTER.

das Datum, *the date.*

CONVERSATION 9.—Der Mo'nat.

1. Wie viele Tage hat der Monat April?
2. Der Monat April hat dreißig Tage.
Etc., etc.
1. Hat jeder Monat dreißig Tage?
2. Einige Monate haben einunddreißig Tage.
1. Wie viele Tage hat der Februar zuweilen?
2. Der Februar hat zuweilen neunundzwanzig Tage.
1. Wollen Sie die Monate auf Deutsch her'sagen?
2. Sie lauten so: Januar, Februar, &c.
1. Wie nennt man den ersten Monat des Jahres?
2. Den ersten Monat des Jahres nennt man Januar.
Etc., etc.
1. Wollen Sie das Wort März buchstabieren?
2. März buchstabiert man so: „em-ä (giving the sound of the Umlaut) —er-tsēt.“
Etc., etc.
1. Was für ein Tag ist heute?
2. Heute ist der zwanzigste.
1. Wie würden Sie einen Brief heute datie'ren?
2. Ich würde einen Brief heute so datieren: „Berlin,
den (am) 20^{ten} März, 1904.“
1. Wollen Sie die Wintermonate nennen?
Etc., etc.

READING 10.

Sprichwort.

An den Federn erkennt man den Vogel.

By feathers recognizes bird.

“By their dress we know them.”

Der Tannenbaum.

Volkslied.

O Tannenbaum, o Tannenbaum,
 fir-tree
 Wie treu sind deine Blätter!
 leaves

Du grünst nicht nur zur Sommerzeit,
 greenest
 Nein, auch im Winter, wenn es schneit.
 snows

O Tannenbaum, o Tannenbaum,
 Wie treu sind deine Blätter!

O Mägdelein, o Mägdelein,
 maiden
 Wie falsch ist dein Gemüte!
 spirit

Du schwurst mir Treu' in meinem Glück,
 vowedst
 Nun arm ich bin, gehst du zurück!
 poor goest back success

O Mägdelein, o Mägdelein,
 Wie falsch ist dein Gemüte!

Der Bach im Tal, der Bach im Tal,
 brook vale
 Ist deiner Falschheit Spiegel!
 of thy falseness mirror

Er strömt allein wenn Regen fließt,
 streams rain flows
 Bei Dürre er bald den Quell verschließt;
 drouth spring closes

Der Bach im Tal, der Bach im Tal,
 Ist deiner Falschheit Spiegel!

LESSON XI.

NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION. CLASS II.

1. Declension in the singular is simple, feminines having no change at all and most masculines and neuters adding only (e)s in the genitive.
2. Die Söhne des Generals haben ihre Schuhe um ^{for} zehn Pfennige verkauft und haben damit Äpfel gekauft. ^{therewith}
3. Learn the sentence. Observe the declensional forms, the place of the past participle, and the peculiar *damit* instead of *mit ihm* (*dem Gelde*).
4. Nouns in other classes are easily designated by gender, ending and number of syllables; to Class II belong most of those not thus clearly assigned to one of the other classes.

CLASS II.

5. To Class II belong : of masculines, most monosyllables, all polysyllables in -ig, -ith and -ing, foreign derivations in -al, -an, -ast, -ar and -ier ; of feminines, one-third of all monosyllables ; of neuters a few monosyllables in -r and a few polysyllables in -nis and -sal.

DECLENSION OF *der Sohn*.

Singular. Plural.

Nom. <i>der Sohn</i>	<i>die Söhne</i>
Gen. <i>des Sohnes</i>	<i>der Söhne</i>
Dat. <i>dem Sohne</i>	<i>den Söhnen</i>
Acc. <i>den Sohn</i>	<i>die Söhne</i>

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. die Hand, <i>the hand.</i>	die Hände <i>the hands.</i>
Gen. der Hand, <i>of the hand.</i>	der Hände <i>of the hands.</i>
Dat. der Hand, <i>to the hand.</i>	den Händen <i>to the hands.</i>
Acc. die Hand, <i>the hand.</i>	die Hände <i>the hands.</i>

VOCABULARY.

(Nouns starred have not Umlaut in the Plural.)

MASCULINE.

* der Schuh, <i>the shoe.</i>	billig, <i>cheap.</i>
* der Arm, <i>the arm.</i>	verkaufen, <i>sell.</i>
der Kopf, <i>the head.</i>	fragen, <i>ask.</i>
der Fuß, <i>the foot.</i>	dürfen, <i>be permitted</i> (See Lesson XXI).
der Rock, <i>the coat.</i>	passen, <i>fit.</i>
(der) The'odor, <i>Theodore.</i>	hoffentlich, <i>I hope, it is to be hoped.</i>
(der) Paul, <i>Paul.</i>	es gab, <i>there was, there were.</i>

NEUTER.

das Bein, <i>the leg.</i>	recht haben, <i>to be right.</i>
* das Paar, <i>the pair.</i>	unrecht haben, <i>to be wrong.</i>
das Tier, <i>the animal.</i>	bei Müller, <i>at Müller's.</i>
da, <i>there.</i> dort, <i>yonder.</i>	man sagt, <i>one says, they say,</i> <i>people say.</i>
bei Roth, <i>at the store or house</i> of Roth, <i>at Roth's.</i>	was für ein, <i>what sort of a</i> ("what for a")?

NOTE 18.—Instead of a preposition with an interrogative or demonstrative pronoun, a pronominal adverb is often employed in German: as, womit, "with what," "wherewith"; worin, "in what," "wherein"; darin, "in that," "therein"; darauf, "upon that," "thereupon."

EXERCISE XI.

1. Wo ist der Theodor gewesen? 2. Er ist mit dem Sohne des Generals in der Stadt gewesen. 3. Wir hörten sie von Stiefeln und Schuhen sprechen. 4. Ich werde den

Theodor fragen. 5. Sie haben bei Roth ein Paar Schuhe gekauft. 6. Wir kaufen auch unsere Stiefel und Schuhe bei Roth. 7. Man sagt, der Roth verkauft sie sehr billig. 8. Diese Schuhe passen nicht gut an meine Füße. 9. Der General hat für seinen Sohn Stiefel gekauft. 10. Der Rock des Generals passt (or sitzt) sehr gut. 11. Seine Arme sind nicht zu lang. 12. Der Paul hat den Rock auf dem Arme gehabt. 13. War der Rock für ihn oder für seinen Vater? 14. Theodor sagt, er hat ihn dem Vater gegeben. 15. Paul hat damit zwei Meilen gelaufen. 16. Er ist wohl ¹ ziemlich müde. 17. Jawohl, er sitzt dort auf dem Stuhle; der Kopf liegt ihm auf den Armen, und die Arme auf dem Tische. 18. Ihm ² sind Kopf und Beine müde. 19. Er hat doch nur ein Paar Beine. 20. Manche Tiere haben ihrer ³ zwei.

¹ ‘probably.’ ² Note and learn to use this Dative of possession.

³ ‘two of them,’ thus when the relation is not partitive in that case *zwei von ihnen* is permissible.

EXERCISE II.

1. [The] chairs and [the] animals have four legs.
2. But some animals have only two legs. 3. And some chairs have only [of them] three. 4. The child goes on (its) hands and feet. 5. That child has no shoes on its ¹ feet. 6. Who is that boy yonder without (a) coat? 7. I believe it is Theodore, the general’s son. 8. Cannot the general buy a coat for his son? 9. Why certainly, but the boy has three coats already.

10. Did you see him yesterday? 11. What did he have on his¹ head? 12. I believe he had a cap. Why, you are right! 13. His uncle will buy him a pair of shoes. 14. *I-hope*, the² *shoes*, will³ fit him. 15. Do you think we can sell them to [the] Paul? 16. Did you find the shoes at Müller's. 17. No, we buy our shoes and boots at Roth's. 18. Why,² his hands are very small. 19. They say he has his hands from his mother. 20. Are then his mother's hands so small? 21. Of that I cannot say any thing; I have never seen her. 22. The legs of that animal were very short. 23. But the animal ran very fast. 24. What sort of an animal was it? 25. Do not ask me; I do not know [the] animals.

¹ Definite article. ² ja, after verb. ³ See Note 18.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Frühling, *spring*.
der Sommer, *summer*.
der Herbst, *autumn*.
der Winter, *winter*.

NEUTER.

das Jahrhundert, *the century*.

jedes Jahr, *every year*.

das laufende Jahr, *the current, present year*.

die Jahreszeit, *the season of the year*.

das kommende Jahr, *the coming year, next year*.

die Jahreszeiten, *the seasons of the year*.

das vergangene Jahr, *the past year*.

NOTE 19.—Expressions of time answering to the questions, “when?” “how long?” are put in the Accusative; er kommt jeden Morgen, “he comes every morning”; er arbeitete den ganzen Tag, “he worked the whole day.” See Appendix, Uses of Cases.

CONVERSATION 10.—Das Jahr.

1. Wie viele Mo'ne te hat das Jahr?
2. Das Jahr hat zwölf Monate.
1. Wie viele Jahreszeiten hat das Jahr?
2. Das Jahr hat vier Jahreszeiten.
1. Hat jedes Jahr einen Frühling?
2. Ja, jedes Jahr hat einen Frühling.
1. Wollen Sie die drei Monate des Sommers nennen?
2. Die drei Monate des Sommers sind Ju'ni, Ju'li, August'.

Etc., etc.

1. Welches Jahr haben wir nun?
2. Nun haben wir das Jahr neunzehn hundert vier (fünf, 2c).
1. Wie heißt dieses Jahrhundert?
2. Dieses Jahrhundert heißt das zwanzigste.
1. Wollen Sie das Wort „Jahr“ deklinieren?
2. Das Wort „Jahr“ dekliniert man so: Nom., das Jahr, 2c.

Etc., etc.

READING II.

Sprichwort.

Eine Schwalbe macht noch keinen Sommer.

One swallow makes as yet no summer.

“One swallow does not make a summer.”

Was man nicht in dem Kopf hat, muß man in den Beinen haben.

What one hasn't in his head he must have in his legs.

Die Jahreszeiten.

Frühling, Sommer, Herbst und Winter,
 Sind des lieben Gottes Kinder,
 Geben uns des Guten viel,
 Give to us of the good much,
 Blumen, Früchte, frohes Spiel.
 Flowers, fruits, happy play.

Deutschland.

Von Hoffmann von Fallersleben.

1. Deutschland, Deutschland über alles,
 Über alles in der Welt,
 Wenn es stets zu Schutz und Truße¹
 Brüderlich zusammenhält,²
 Von der Maas³ bis an die Memel,⁴
 Von der Etsch⁵ bis an den Belt!⁶
 Deutschland, Deutschland über alles,
 Über alles in der Welt!

2. Deutsche Frauen, deutsche Treue,
 Deutscher Wein und deutscher Sang
 Sollen in der Welt behalten⁷
 Ihren alten, schönen Klang,⁸
 Uns zu ed'ler Tat begeistern⁹
 Unser ganzes Leben lang!
 Deutsche Frauen, deutsche Treue,
 Deutscher Wein und deutscher Sang!

¹ ‘For defence and offence’. ² ‘holds together.’ ³ ‘German rivers.’ ⁴ ‘Adige, an Italian river on which is Venice.’ ⁵ ‘the Baltic.’ ⁶ ‘retain.’ ⁸ ‘sound,’ reputation. ⁹ ‘inspire.’

LESSON XII.

NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION. CLASS III.—INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Learn the definite article with every noun as it is introduced, and always learn forms and read vocabularies aloud.
2. Wer hat die Blätter des Buches zerrissen, aus torn from welchem (or woraus) wir singen?
3. Learn this sentence; observe the forms of the nouns and give of each the nominative and genitive singular and the nominative plural.

CLASS III.

4. Most neuter monosyllables, neuter derivatives in -tum, and a few very common masculine monosyllables are in this class (See Appendix for list.)

5. DECLENSION OF *das Buch*, *the book*.

Singular.

Nom. *das Buch*, *the book*.Gen. *des Buches*, *of the book*.Dat. *dem Buche*, *to the book*.Acc. *das Buch*, *the book*.

Plural.

die Bücher, *the books*.*der Bücher*, *of the books*.*den Büchern*, *to the books*.*die Bücher*, *the books*.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular only, as in English.

Wer, *who*.*wessen*, *whose*.*wem*, *to whom*.*wen*, *whom*.*Was*, *what*.*(wes)*,*(was)*,*was*, *what*.

6. These words serve also as compound relative pronouns, *wer* = *whoever*, *was* = *what*, *whatever*. The genitive and dative of *was* rarely occur, the former only in compounds, *weshalb*, etc., the latter colloquially, *zu was?* *for what?* etc.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

7. German has two relative pronouns, *welcher*, *who* or *which* (declension Lesson III), and *der*, *who* or *which*, the same forms as the definite article except in the genitive cases and the dative plural.

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>who, which.</i>
<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>desseñ</i>	<i>beren</i>	<i>of whom, of which.</i>
<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>deneu</i>	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>whom, which.</i>

8. No principle but euphony or brevity controls the choice between *der* and *welcher*, though the latter only is used as a relative *adjective*, as *Frau Braun, welcher Dame, u. s. w., Mrs. Brown, to which lady*, etc.

9. For the genitive case of the relative pronoun, whether *welcher* or *der*, the forms *desseñ*, etc., alone are used.

10. Note that there is no distinction in the relatives between persons and things.

11. Note that, unlike English, German never omits the relative; *the man I love*, *der Mann, den ich liebe*.

12. Note that the verb after a relative is at the end of its clause (see Lesson XXV).

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Landsmann, *the fellow-countryman.*
der Landmann, *the farmer.*

NEUTER.

das Blatt, *the leaf.*
das Land, *the land.*
das Kleid, *the dress, (pl.) garments.*
das Bild, *the picture.*
das Wörterbuch, *the dictionary.*
das Vaterland, *the fatherland, native country.*
das Vaterlandslied, *patriotic song.*

das Dorf, *the village.*

das Gesangbuch, *the hymn-book.*

das Ei, *the egg.*

Griechenland, *Greece.*

anherordentlich, *extraordinarily, extremely.*

jeden Abend, *every evening.*

wunderschön, *wonderfully beautiful.*

mehrere, *several.*

verlassen, *leave.*

wahrscheinlich, *probably.*

auf dem Lande, *in the country.*

gestern morgen, *yesterday morning.*

wünschen, *wish.*

NOTE 20.—In compound nouns the declension of the last member suffices for the whole, the first member not being declined. The gender is also that of the last member.

NOTE 21.—When a dative and accusative depend upon the same verb, the dative generally follows the accusative; but personal pronouns precede nouns irrespective of case. For details see Lesson XXV.

EXERCISE XII.

1. Wer hat mir doch das Buch gebracht? 2. Sprechen Sie denn von diesem Bilderbuche? 3. Jawohl, was für andere Bücher finden Sie in diesem Zimmer? 4. Ich

habe gedacht, Sie sprechen vom Wörterbuche. 5. Ach, gehen Sie!¹ Sie lachen über mich! 6. Aber wem habe ich für das Buch zu danken? 7. Das kann ich nicht sagen; das Buch lag schon da auf dem Tische. 8. Die Bilder darin sind doch² wunderschön! 9. Es sind ja³ Bilder von Griechenland. 10. Nein doch, das Buch hat Bilder von allen Ländern. 11. Auf einem Blatte steht ein Bild von unserem Dorfe. 12. Die Dörfer unseres Vaterlandes sind aber⁴ auch schön. 13. Das finde⁵ ich auch; ich habe sie immer geliebt. 14. Das ist ein Buch, das ich immer gewünscht habe.⁶ 15. Wer hat es geschrieben? 16. Ach, ich sehe Bilder von Vögeln und Eiern. 17. Es sind die Vögel dieses Landes und die Eier, welche sie legen. 18. Ein Landmann hat gestern früh das Buch gebracht. 19. Es wird⁷ wohl von meiner Tante auf dem Lande kommen.

¹ ‘Go off.’ ² ‘Why’ or ‘Really’ at beginning; do not translate ‘yet’ or ‘though.’ ³ ‘Why’ at beginning. ⁴ ‘Ah but,’ or ‘Well, but’ at beginning. ⁵ ‘think.’ ⁶ Note position of personal verb; thus always in subordinate clause. ⁷ The future here is called future of conjecture, and may be rendered ‘I suppose.’

EXERCISE 12.

1. The children are singing patriotic-songs. 2. The songs which they sing are (stand) in this hymn-book.
3. Those songs are indeed extraordinarily good for the children. 4. The children wish very-(much) a book with pictures of birds.
5. Well,¹ there are several pictures of birds and eggs in this book.
6. Who gave you , the , book , anyway²? 7. Oh,³

one buys such books in Germany. 8. A countryman of ours brought this book from Greece. 9. Was that the man [whom] we saw yesterday morning? 10. Whom do you mean anyway? 11. For⁴ there were two men with me yesterday. 12. He was with you in the country. 13. Well, that was a farmer who sells eggs. 14. Let-us⁵ come back to the book. 15. Two leaves of this book are already lost. 16. The book of-which we were speaking is a dictionary. 17. One cannot⁶ buy dictionaries in this village. 18. You are right, but I wish no dictionary in the country. 19. We shall probably leave the village to-morrow. 20. Then⁷ you do not live in the village.

¹Nun, or ja after verb, or both. ²denn. ³Ja, after verb.
⁴Ja, after verb. ⁵Wollen wir. ⁶Tr. ‘can buy no.’ ⁷Also, at beginning with inversion of verb, or just after verb.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Zimmermann, the carpenter.

u. s. w. (und so weiter), etc.

der Teppich, the carpet.

bellinieren, decline.

leider, unfortunately, I am sorry to say.

FEMININE.

die Wand, the wall.

ich danke (Ihnen,) means, no,

die Decke, the ceiling.

thank you, I thank you for your offer, etc., but must decline.

die Flügeltür, the folding-door.

viel (vielen) Dank, many thanks.

die Wände, the walls.

Klopfen, knock.

die Türen, the doors.

herein, come in!

NEUTER.

das Schloß, the lock.

NOTE 22.—Some verbs which take the direct object in English take a dative in German. The most common are: *begegnen*, “meet”; *danken*, “thank”; *folgen*, “follow”; *gefallen*, “please”; *gehörchen*, “obey”; *helfen*, “help”; *schaden*, “harm”; for fuller list see Appendix.

CONVERSATION II.—Das Zimmer.

1. Wie heißt “room” auf deutsch?
2. “Room” heißt auf deutsch „das Zimmer.“
Etc., etc.

1. Wie viele Wände hat dieses Zimmer?
2. Dieses Zimmer hat vier Wände.

1. Hat ein Zimmer immer vier Wände?
2. Ja, ein Zimmer hat gewöhnlich vier Wände.
Etc., etc.

1. Hat das Zimmer denn keinen Teppich?
2. Nein, leider hat das Zimmer, u. s. w.

1. Wollen Sie das Wort „Zimmer“ deklinieren?
2. Das Wort „Zimmer“ dekliniert man so: „Nom., das Zimmer,“ sc.
Etc., etc.

READING 12.

Sprichwort.

Wer gläserne Beine hat, muß nicht aufs Eis gehen.
Whoever glass legs has, must not on to the ice go.

“People in glass houses must not throw stones.”

Befriedenheit.
Contentment.

Johann Martin Miller.

Was frag' ich viel nach Geld und Gut,
why care property
Wenn ich zufrieden bin!
Gibt Gott mir nur gesundes Blut,
sound blood (good health)
So hab' ich frohen Sinn,
merry mind
Und sing' mit dankbarem Gemüt'
grateful spirit
Mein Morgen- und mein Abendlied.
So mancher schwimmt im Überfluß,
abundance
Hat Haus und Hof und Geld,
farm
Und ist doch immer voll Verdrüß,
(of) vexation
Und freut sich nicht der Welt:
enjoys
Je mehr er hat, je mehr er will,
The the
Nie schweigen seine Klagen still.
stop complaints
Doch preif' ich laut und lobe Gott,
praise
Und schweb' in hohem Mut,
swim high spirit
Und denk': es ist ein lieber Gott,
means it well
Und meint's mit Menschen gut!
Drum will ich immer dankbar sein,
Und mich der Güte Gottes freun!
goodness

LESSON XIII.

NOUNS — SECOND DECLENSION. — DEMONSTRATIVE AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Cultivate the use of ja, doch and wohl, introducing them at every opportunity.*

2. *Diese Herren sind Studenten ; derjenige (or der),
the one
welcher spricht, studiert die Sprachen mit meinem
who is studying [the] languages
Neffen.*

3. Learn this sentence ; note the forms of the nouns and learn the principal forms of each ; put in ja, doch and wohl, being sure to understand the effect.

4. The Second Declension comprises most feminine polysyllables, about half of all feminine monosyllables, masculines ending in -e, denoting living beings, masculine nouns from foreign languages accented on the last syllable, but not ending in -al, -an, -ast and -r, and a few very common masculine monosyllables (see Appendix for list).

5. TABLE OF CASE-ENDINGS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

	Singular.		Plural.
	M.	F.	
Nom.	—	—	(e)n
Gen.	(e)n	—	(e)n
Dat.	(e)n	—	(e)n
Acc.	(e)n	—	(e)n

**6. DECLENSION OF A MASCULINE NOUN OF THE SECOND
DECLENSION.**

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>der Student'</i> , <i>the student.</i>	<i>die Studen'ten</i> , <i>the students.</i>
Gen. <i>des Studen'ten</i> , <i>of " "</i>	<i>der Studen'ten</i> , <i>of " "</i>
Dat. <i>dem Studen'ten</i> , <i>to " "</i>	<i>den Studen'ten</i> , <i>to " "</i>
Acc. <i>den Studen'ten</i> , <i>" "</i>	<i>die Studen'ten</i> , <i>" "</i>

**7. DECLENSION OF A FEMININE NOUN OF THE SECOND
DECLENSION.**

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>die Sprache</i> , <i>the language.</i>	<i>die Sprachen</i> , <i>the languages.</i>
Gen. <i>der Sprache</i> , <i>of " "</i>	<i>der Sprachen</i> , <i>of " "</i>
Dat. <i>der Sprache</i> , <i>to " "</i>	<i>den Sprachen</i> , <i>to " "</i>
Acc. <i>die Sprache</i> , <i>" "</i>	<i>die Sprachen</i> , <i>" "</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

8. *Dieser* is either *this* or *that*, unless two objects are contrasted; then *dieser* is *this*, *jener* *that*; *dieser* is also *the latter*, *jener* *the former*. *Der* (same declension as the relative *der* except gen. pl. *derer* or *deren*) is also *this* or *that*, or an emphatic *he*. In the correlative, *he* or *the one* is *derjenige*, or *der*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

9. It is necessary to discriminate between the possessive adjectives and the possessive pronouns (Lesson IV, 3). For the latter German has three forms: *meiner*, *der meine*, *der meinige*, in the latter two the second word declined as a weak adjective (Lesson XV). Thus one may say: *Ihr Hut und meiner*, or *der meine*, or *der meinige*, for *your hat and mine*.

SINGULAR.

CASES.	ALL NEUTERS, AND MASCULINES (EX. E).	ALL FEMININES.	E. MASCULINES.
Nom.			
Gen.	(e)ß		(e)n
Dat.	(e)		(e)n
Accu.			(e)n

PLURAL.

CASES.	MONOSYLLABLES.	ENDING IN er, et, en, er, eten.	OTHER POLY- SYLLABLES.	MOST MONOSYLLABLES.	POLYSYLLABLES.
Nom.	n-er	n-	e	n-	(e)n
Gen.	n-er	n-	e	n-	(e)n
Dat.	n-er	n-	en	n-	(e)n
Accu.	n-er	n-	e	n-	(e)n

NOTES.—1. The classes in the plural in the above table fall graphically under the headings under which they stand; for instance, feminine and masculine monosyllables fall together. 2. The Dative plural always ends in n. 3. The e in parentheses is purely euphonic. 4. Compound nouns receive gender and declension from the last element of the compound. The above classification applies only to simple nouns. 5. Most monosyllables modify the vowel in the plural.

10. While the stem of the possessive differs in the third person with the gender of the word from which it is derived, in declension it must agree with the word for which it stands; thus *sein* is *his*, possessive from *he*, but it is feminine in *meine Mutter und seine*, *my mother and his*.

NOTE 23.—*Mensch* is “human being” in distinction from animals; also “man,” “fellow,” in a disparaging sense. *Mann* is “man,” the usual word in distinction from “woman.”

NOTE 24.—Most nouns primitively masculine add -in and modify the stem-vowel to form the corresponding feminine: as, *Lehrer*, teacher, *Lehrerin*, woman teacher; *Graf*, count, *Gräfin* countess; *Koch*, cook, *Köchin*, woman cook; *Sänger*, singer, *Sängerin*, woman singer; *die Frau Doktorin*, the doctor’s wife. Such feminines double the final n before the -en of the plural.

NOTE 25.—After words of measure (“a cup of,” “glass of,” “pair of,” “pound of”), the noun is not put in the genitive, but treated as indeclinable; as, *ein Glas Wein*. If, however, the noun expressing the substance measured be limited by an adjective, it is generally in the genitive; as, *ein Glas guten Weines*.

VOCABULARY.

(Words not starred are in the Second Declension.)

MASCULINE.

**der Kellner*, the waiter.
der Graf, the count.
der Herr, the gentleman, sir (in address, always in the form *mein Herr*).
der Neffe, the nephew.
der Soldat, the soldier.
der Mensch, (the) man, human being.

FEMININE.

die Ecke, the corner.
die Stunde, the hour, the recitation.

die Uhr, the watch, clock.
die Zeit, the time.

NEUTER.

**das Briefchen* (little letter), the note.

wirklich, really.
leider, unfortunately.
studieren, study.
jetzt, now.
beschäftigt, occupied, busy.
besuchen, visit.
schlafen, sleep, be asleep.

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Die Soldaten und die Studenten sind nicht immer Freunde.
2. Das ist leider wahr, aber sie sollten es sein.
3. Sie sind doch alle Menschen und Kinder des Vaterlands.
4. Dieser Student hat nicht Zeit genug zu studieren.
5. Wie kommt denn das? Ist er sehr beschäftigt?
6. Ach nein, er ist nur ein Knabe; er spielt mit den andern Knaben.
7. Ist er nicht der Neffe des Herrn, der dort steht?
8. Wer ist denn der Mensch?
9. Er sitzt schon mehr als eine Stunde dort.
10. Ich weiß wirklich nicht; aber ist es nicht der Bruder jenes Soldaten, welcher so gern singt?
11. Ich sehe ihn oft mit jenem Soldaten.
12. Fragen Sie einmal Ihren Neffen.
13. Mein Neffe kennt ihn nun¹ gar nicht; kennt ihn der Thridge?
14. Können Sie Ihre Uhr sehen? Ist es nicht schon Zeit zu gehen?
15. Was machen die Studenten zu dieser Stunde?
16. Sie besuchen gewöhnlich ihre Freundinnen in der Stadt.

¹intensive; tr. *simply* after *nephew*.

EXERCISE 13.

1. What is the name of that boy whom we see yonder?
2. The one studying¹ is Henry; he is my nephew.
3. I² am³ not⁴, speaking⁵ of⁶ your⁷, nephew⁸, now.
4. Well, you⁹, surely¹⁰, are¹¹, not¹², speaking¹³ of¹⁴, yours?
5. I was speaking of that student in the corner of the room.
6. O, that person! He is only a boy¹⁵, who¹⁶, writes¹⁷, notes¹⁸, for¹⁹, the²⁰, wait-

ers. 7. Then ² he is not-a ³ student after-all ⁴? 8. Yes⁵, he is the son of a soldier and studies the languages. 9. Is that his book from which he is reading? 10. , Why ⁵, no, I believe it is mine. 11. Where did you find that book, sir? 12. I have it from that gentleman who is writing the note. 13. , Are ³ all ² those ⁶ students? 14. These here are students, but that man is a soldier, the son of a count. 15. I believe the soldier is-sleeping.

¹Tr. who is studying. ²Also after verb. ³lein. ⁴doch after also. ⁵doch. ⁶das.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Tischler (table-maker), the cabinet-maker.

woraus, out of what?
bestehen aus, consist of (with dative).

FEMININE.

die Lehne, the back (of a chair).

beleuchten, light up, illuminate.
enthalten, contain.

CONVERSATION 12.—Das Zimmer.

1. Wie viele Fenster hat ein Zimmer?
2. Ein Zimmer hat zuweilen ein Fenster und zuweilen mehr.
1. Was kommt durch das Fenster?
2. Das Licht kommt durch das Fenster.
1. Enthält ein Zimmer immer Stühle?
2. Ja, ein Zimmer enthält gewöhnlich Stühle.
1. Woraus besteht ein Stuhl?
2. Ein Stuhl besteht aus der Lehne, dem Sitz, und den Beinen.

1. Wie beleuchtet man ein Zimmer in der Nacht?
2. Man beleuchtet ein Zimmer in der Nacht mit Gaslicht.
1. Wie heißt der Mann, welcher die Stühle und Tische macht?
2. Der Mann, welcher die Stühle und Tische macht, heißt ein Tischler. Etc., etc.

READING 13.

Reiters Morgenlied.

Dragoon's morning-song.

Bon Wilhelm Hauff.

Morgenrot, Morgenrot!

morning-red

Deuchtest mir zum frühen Tod?

Shinest for me early

Bald wird die Trompete blasen,

trumpet blow

Bald werd' ich mein Leben lassen,

Ich und mancher Kamerad. (Repeat).

Raum gedacht, kaum gedacht,

Hardly

Ward der Lust ein End' gemacht.

to the joy

Gestern noch auf stolzen Rossen,

proud steeds

Heute durch die Brust geschossen

breast shot

Morgen in das kühle Grab. (Repeat).

Darum still, darum still
 Füg' ich mich wie Gott es will;
 yield as
 Und so will ich wacker streiten,
 valiantly
 Und sollt' ich den Tod erleiden,
 suffer
 Stirbt ein braver Reitersmann. (Repeat).

LESSON XIV.

ADJECTIVES.—FIRST DECLENSION.

1. Frisches Brot und gelbe Butter mit gntem Kaffee machen ein Frühstück für hungrige Reisende.

2. Learn this sentence ; compare the endings of the adjectives with those of dieser in the same places.

3. Attributive Adjective.—When a descriptive adjective is placed before a noun, agreeing with it in gender and case, it is said to be used attributively ; as, ein guter Mann, “a good man.”

4. Predicate Adjective.—When an adjective is used in connection with a verb to assert something of an object, and stands without any case-ending after the verb, it is said to be used predicatively ; as, sein Hause war schön, “his house was handsome.”

5. Adjective as Noun.—An adjective is sometimes used independently, the noun with which it agrees being understood. In this case it has the value of a noun, and is written with a capital. It

is declined with or without an article, as if the noun with which it agrees were expressed: *der Gute räumt den Platz dem Bösen*, “the good (man) gives place to the wicked (one).”

6. Adjective as Adverb.—Any adjective in the stem form (*i. e.*, without any ending of declension) may be used as an adverb: *as*, *er hat fleißig studiert*, “he has studied diligently.” This is true only of the positive and comparative: for the superlative a phrase formed with *an*, *auf* or *zu* is substituted; *as*, *was am meisten in die Augen fiel*, “what most struck the eye”; *man muß sie aufs beste erziehen*, “they must be brought up in the best manner”; *da traf er zum ersten Thrym*, “then he smote Thrym first.” (See Lesson XVI.)

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

7. An attributive adjective is regularly declined, one used *predicatively* in the positive and comparative degrees is not declined. Participles when used as adjectives are declined like other adjectives.

8. There are two declensions of adjectives, which may be called the FIRST and SECOND Declensions. The latter has two varieties, which we will call CLASS I and CLASS II.

FIRST DECLENSION.

9. The FIRST or *strong* Declension is the form used for the attributive adjective when it is pre-

ceded by no limiting word (as an article, possessive, etc.) having itself the endings of the strong declension; as, *guter Mann*, "good man." The adjective is in this case declined like *dieser*.

10. ADJECTIVES DECLINED ACCORDING TO THE FIRST DECLENSION.

DECLENSION OF *guter Wein*, *good wine*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>guter Wein</i>	<i>gute Weine</i>
Gen.	<i>gutes Weines</i>	<i>guter Weine</i>
Dat.	<i>gutem Weine</i>	<i>guten Weinen</i>
Acc.	<i>guten Wein</i>	<i>gute Weine</i>

II. DECLENSION OF *gute Suppe*, *good soup*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>gute Suppe</i>	<i>gute Suppen</i>
Gen.	<i>guter</i> "	<i>guter</i> "
Dat.	<i>guter</i> "	<i>guten</i> "
Acc.	<i>gute</i> "	<i>gute</i> "

12. DECLENSION OF *gutes Tuch*, *good cloth*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>gutes Tuch</i>	<i>gute Tücher</i>
Gen.	<i>gutes Tuches</i>	<i>guter Tücher</i>
Dat.	<i>gutem Tuche</i>	<i>guten Tüchern</i>
Acc.	<i>gutes Tuch</i>	<i>gute Tücher</i>

REMARK.—Except in the nominative of address, as *guter Mann!* the singular of this form of declension is practically limited to use with abstract and mass nouns and names of materials.

The strong forms are used when the adjective and its noun are preceded by a limiting genitive or a cardinal number, as *des*

Bater's neuer Hut, *father's new hat*; drei neue Bücher; also after etwas and nichts, as etwas Gutes, *something good*; nichts Böses, *nothing bad*.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

- der Kaffee, *the coffee.*
 der Kreis, *the set, band.*
 der Buchhändler, *the bookseller.*
 der Handschuh, *the glove.*
 der Verstand, *understanding, sense.*

FEMININE.

- die Sorte, *the sort, kind.*
 die Speisekarte, *the bill of fare.*
 die Freude, *joy.*
 die Ruhe, *repose, rest.*
 die Milch, *the milk.*

NEUTER.

- das Brötchen, *the roll.*
 das Tischtuch, *the table-cloth.*
 das Handtuch, *the towel.*
 das Essen, *eating.*

- hier zu Lande (*here to land*),
in this country.
 kurz, *short.*
 angenehm, *pleasant.*
 guten Morgen, *good morning!*
 wie geht es Ihnen (*how goes it to you*), *how are you? how do you do?*

- dazu, *in addition.*
 während, *while.*
 lustig, *gay, merry.*
 bestellen, *order.*
 belegen, *spread.*
 bereit, *ready.*
 kleiu (kleines) Geld (*small money*), *change.*
 mir ist lieber, *I prefer.*

EXERCISE XIV.

1. Ich wünsche Ihnen guten Morgen; wie geht es Ihnen?
2. Ich danke schön; es geht mir gut.
3. An welchem Tische sitzen Sie beim Frühstück?
4. Haben Sie die Speisekarte gehabt?
5. Jawohl, da liegt sie unter Ihrem Teller.
6. Ich finde eine Tasse guten Kaffees genug zum Frühstück.
7. Ich wünsche auch nicht viel, aber mir ist eine Tasse frischer Milch lieber.
8. Was sprechen Sie da von gutem Kaffee?
9. Man

kann guten Kaffee nicht immer haben. 10. Meine Herren, das ist mir zu wenig; ich wünsche frisches Brot und gelbe Butter, und dazu eine Flasche guten Weins. 11. Die Studenten an jenem Tische singen doch sehr schön. 12. Ja, das sind lustige Lieder, welche sie singen. 13. Sie singen von süßer Ruhe und voller Freude. 14. Das ist aber ein Mann von gutem Verstande. 15. Warum sagen Sie das mit so lauter Stimme? 16. Er wünscht schöne Tischtücher und auch reine Handtücher. 17. Wer bezahlt den Kellner? 18. Leider habe ich kein klein Geld (or Kleingeld). 19. Haben Sie nichts Gutes von den Studenten zu sagen? 20. Ich meine, ihr Singen ist doch etwas Gutes.

EXERCISE 14.

1. Gay students are singing beautiful songs.
2. A band of gay students , always , sings of “sweet repose.” 3. , But , they , do , not , always , bring , sweet , repose (to) , weary , men. 4. Yes, but the boys must all be gay. 5. I think the bookseller has good sense. 6. He says he drinks strong coffee when the students sing. 7. What has that , to , do , with , good , sense ? 8. Let-us-eat ! while they are singing. 9. I spread my rolls with yellow butter. 10. The Germans have very good bread, but [they] eat little butter. 11. I found ² good butter in Germany. 12. But the breakfast consists ³ usually of fresh rolls and good coffee. 13. Can one not also

have good milk? 14. O yes, the milk is usually very good. 15. I ate my rolls with sour wine. 16. It is easy to order sour wine. 17. Here is the breakfast which you ordered. 18. Ah, here we have something good. 19. You have spoken of nothing else but⁴ of [the] eating. 20. And you have drunk the bottle of sour wine.

¹ Essen wir, or Laßt uns essen. ² perfect tense. ³ consists of, besteht aus. ⁴ als.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Saal, the parlor.

der Gast, the guest.

FEMININE.

die Wohnung, the apartment.

die Stube, the sitting-room.

die Holzlohlen (wood coals),
the charcoal.

die Steinlohlen (stone coals),
the hard coal.

die Mehrzahl, the plural.

die Einzahl, the singular.

NEUTER.

das Gebäude, the building.

das Wohnhaus, the dwelling-
house.

das Besuch'zimmer, the recep-
tion-room.

das Bibliothek'zimmer, the
library.

das Badezimmer, the bath-room.

das Kinderzimmer, the nursery.

das Spielzimmer, the play-
room.

verschieden, different, various.

warum', why?

weil, because.

empfangen, receive.

heizen, heat.

mittelst, by means of (with geni-
tive).

baden, bathe.

CONVERSATION 13.—Die Wohnung.

1. Wie nennt man das Gebäude, worin man wohnt?
2. Man nennt das Gebäude, in welchem man wohnt,
ein Wohnhaus.

1. Was sind die Namen der verschiedenen Zimmer einer Wohnung?
2. Sie heißen der Saal, die Stube, das Schlafzimmer, das Esszimmer, die Küche, u. s. w.
1. Warum nennt man ein Zimmer das Empfangszimmer?
2. Weil es das Zimmer ist, wo man die Gäste empfängt.
Etc., etc.
1. Wie heißt man die Stube?
2. Man heißt die Stube mittelst des Ofens.
1. Was brennt man in dem Ofen?
2. Man brennt in dem Ofen Holz, auch Holzkohlen oder Steinkohlen.
1. Was tut man in dem Schlafzimmer?
2. Man schläft in dem Schlafzimmer.
Etc., etc.
1. Wie heißt die Mehrzahl von Wohnhaus?
2. Die Mehrzahl von Wohnhaus heißt Wohnhäuser.
Etc., etc.

READING 14.

Sprichwort.

Hunger ist der beste Koch.
cook

“ Hunger is the best sauce.”

Wenn die Schwalben heimwärts ziehn.
swallows homeward go.

Bon Karl Herloßsohn.

Wenn die Schwalben heimwärts ziehn,
Wenn die Rosen nicht mehr blühn,
bloom

Wenn der Nachtigall Gesang
nightingale's song

Mit der Nachtigall verlang,
has past

|: Fragt das Herz in bangem Schmerz,:|
anxious grief

|: Ob ich dich auch wieder seh'?:|
whether

Scheiden, ach Scheiden, Scheiden tut weh.
parting makes woe

Wenn die Schwäne südlich ziehn,
swans southward

Dorthin, wo Zitronen blühn,
Thither lemons

Wenn das Abendrot versinkt,
dies

Durch die grünen Wälder blinkt,
gleams

Fragt das Herz, u. s. w.

Armes Herz, was klagest du!

O auch du gehst einst zur Ruh'!

Was auf Erden muß vergehn,
pass away

Gibt es wohl ein Wiedersehn?
indeed meeting again

|: Fragt das Herz in bangem Schmerz,:|
Glaub' daß ich dich wieder seh',

|: Tut auch heut' Scheiden, Scheiden so weh! :|
even

LESSON XV.

ADJECTIVES.—SECOND DECLENSION.

CLASS I.

5. The „*der*“ words include, in addition to those given in Lesson III, p. 21 (*der*, *dies-*, *jen-*, *welch-*, *jed-*, *manch-*, *solch-*), the following indefinite numeral adjectives used only in the plural: *alle*, *andere*, *einige*, *etliche*, *jegliche*, *mehrere*, *viele*, *wenige*.

6. After these words the ending of the adjective is *en*, excepting in the nominative singular throughout, and in the feminine and neuter accusa-

tive singular, where it is *e*. It will be observed that these are the forms learned for masculine nouns as the Weak Declension. The present paradigms merely extend these forms to feminines and neuters also.

7. The adjective may be used substantively merely by capitalizing it, so that *der Gute* means *the good man*, *die Gute*, *the good woman*, and *das Gute*, *the good* (whatever is good).

8. DECLENSION OF *der gute Mann*, *the good man*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>der gute Mann</i>	<i>die guten Männer</i>
Gen. <i>des guten Mannes</i>	<i>der guten Männer</i>
Dat. <i>dem guten Manne</i>	<i>den guten Männern</i>
Acc. <i>den guten Manu</i>	<i>die guten Männer</i>

9. DECLENSION OF *die gute Frau*, *the good woman*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>die gute Frau</i>	<i>die guten Frauen</i>
Gen. <i>der guten Frau</i>	<i>der guten Frauen</i>
Dat. <i>der guten Frau</i>	<i>den guten Frauen</i>
Acc. <i>die gute Frau</i>	<i>die guten Frauen</i>

10. DECLENSION OF *das gute Buch*, *the good book*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>das gute Buch</i>	<i>die guten Bücher</i>
Gen. <i>des guten Buches</i>	<i>der guten Bücher</i>
Dat. <i>dem guten Buche</i>	<i>den guten Büchern</i>
Acc. <i>das gute Buch</i>	<i>die guten Bücher</i>

CLASS II.

11. The „*ein*“ words in the three places underscored in the scheme below (*i. e.* nominative masculine and nominative and accusative neuter in the singular) do not have the endings, so that the adjective in these cases returns again to the form of the FIRST Declension.

12. AN ADJECTIVE DECLINED ACCORDING TO CLASS II.

Singular.

Nom.	<i>mein guter</i>	<i>meine gute</i>	<i>mein gutes</i>
Gen.	<i>meines guten</i>	<i>meiner guten</i>	<i>meines guten</i>
Dat.	<i>meinem guten</i>	<i>meiner guten</i>	<i>meinem guten</i>
Acc.	<i>meinen guten</i>	<i>meine gute</i>	<i>mein gutes</i>

Plural.

Nom.	<i>meine guten</i>
Gen.	<i>meiner guten</i>
Dat.	<i>meinen guten</i>
Acc.	<i>meine guten</i>

13. Thus “the good man” and “my good man” differ in declension only in the nominative singular, *der gute Mann*, but *mein guter Mann*. One may say: the strong ending must appear at least once; where the limiting word lacks such ending the descriptive adjective takes it up.

14. The student should decline the complete paradigms in paragraphs 8, 9 and 10, substituting *mein* or *sein* for *der* throughout.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Bürger, *the citizen.*der Strohhut, *the straw hat.*der Arzt, *the physician.*der Geschmack, *taste.*gern haben, *like.*gefallen, *please (with dative).*augenehm, *pleasant, agreeable.*gefälligst (adverb), *if you please.*tragen, *wear, carry.*sollen, *shall.*ander, *other, different.*sonderbar, *peculiar.*besonder, *especial.*hell, *bright, clear.*wenigstens, *at least.*wollen, *woolen.*

FEMININE.

die Geschmaßsache, *the matter of taste.*

NEUTER.

das Band, *the ribbon.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dieser junge Arzt trägt einen neuen Hut. 2. Was ist das aber für ein Hut? 3. Haben Sie denn seinen neuen Hut noch nicht gesehen? 4. Der neue Hut des jungen Arztes ist ein Strohhut. 5. Sein neuer Hut gefällt mir nicht sehr. 6. Er hat doch ein hell blaues Band. 7. Haben Sie denn die blauen Bänder nicht gern? 8. Ach nein, ich habe nichts Besonderes gegen die blauen Bänder. 9. Aber ein blaues Band an dem neuen Hute eines Arztes gefällt mir ja^r nicht.¹ 10. Aber der Arzt trägt den neuen Hut schon eine ganze Woche. 11. Er gefällt doch wenigstens den guten Freunden des Arztes. 12. Aber sagen Sie einmal: warum soll ein junger Arzt kein blaues Band tragen? 13. Ich habe ja nur von dem blauen Band an einem Strohhut ge-

sprochen. 14. Also ist das bei einem ^{wohlenen} Hute anders? 15. Ach ja, die ^{wollenen} Hüte sind etwas ganz Anderes. 16. Ich habe nie daran gedacht. 17. Nun, es ist ja nur eine Geschmacksache. 18. Sie haben gewiß einen sonderbaren Geschmack. 19. Die blauen Bänder gefallen Ihnen also wohl?

¹not at all.

EXERCISE 15.

1. The old citizens here wear straw hats.
2. Yes, I know¹ one old citizen who wears a straw hat in the cold winter.
3. Well, the cold winter is something different.
4. I have never seen such a citizen.
5. In the warm summer, at least, ²that, ³is, ⁴nothing ⁵new.
6. I have given my young son a new hat.
7. Was it a woolen hat or a straw hat?
8. O, it was of-course a straw hat.
9. We wear what the other citizens wear.
10. But is not your son a small child?
11. To-be-sure,² but even ³small children are good citizens.
12. So-then,⁴ your small child is a good citizen?
13. I hope he will become a good citizen.
14. Which do you call the good citizen, the new hat or the small child?
15. My dear friend, that is a matter of taste.
16. ³If-you-please, ¹let ²us ³speak ⁴of ⁵something ⁶different.
17. We have heard enough of new hats and good citizens.
18. Yes, but ¹we ²never ³have too many good citizens.

¹Kenne. ²Zawohl, or Freilich. ³auch. ⁴Also.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Keller, *the cellar.**der Hof*, *the court, yard.**der Portier'* (pr. *Port-jeh'*),
the porter.

FEMININE.

die Harfe, *the harp.**die Geige*, *the violin.*

NEUTER.

das Stockwerk, *the story.**das Erdgeschoß*, *the first story.**eine Treppe hoch* (one stair-way high), *the second story.**zwei Treppen hoch* (two flights up), *the third story.**der Boden*, *the garret.**oberst*, *uppermost, highest.**gesegnet*, *blessed.*

CONVERSATION 14.—Das Haus.

1. Wie heißt das Stockwerk (or Geschöß) über dem Keller?
2. Das Stockwerk über dem Keller heißt das Erdgeschoß, da es gleich über der Erde ist.
1. Wie heißt der zweite Stock?
2. Der zweite Stock heißt „eine Treppe hoch.“
Etc., etc.
1. Wovon sind die Häuser gebaut?
2. Sie sind von Backsteinen oder von Holz gebaut.
1. Wo wohnt der Schuhmacher?
2. Der Schuhmacher wohnt im obersten Stockwerke, oder im Hofe.
1. Wo wohnt der Portier?
2. Der Portier' wohnt neben der Haustür.
1. Haben Sie einen Hausschlüssel?
2. Nein, aber der Portier wird mir aufmachen.

1. Gefällt Ihnen Ihre Wohnung?
 2. Ja, sie hat acht Zimmer, und ist nur eine Treppe hoch.
 1. Wer spielt im Hofe?
 2. Es sind zwei Italiener mit Harfe und Geige.
 1. Wie heißt "good-bye" auf Deutsch?
 2. "Good-bye" heißt auf Deutsch, „Leben Sie wohl, „Fahr' wohl,“ „Adieu.“
 1. Was sagt man nach Tische?
 2. Nach Tische sagt man, „Gesegnete Mahlzeit," oder „Ich wünsche Ihnen eine gesegnete Mahlzeit."

Etc., etc.

READING 15.

Schriftsteller.

Eigene Beine sind die besten.
(One's) own legs are the best.

“ Help yourself.”

Zwischen Löffel und Mund geht viel Suppe zu Grund.
Between spoon and mouth goes much soup to ground.

"There's many a slip 'twixt cup and lip."

Wie eine Blume.

Du bist wie eine Blume
So hold und schön und rein;
Ich schau' dich an, und Wehmuth
gaze pure sadness

Schleicht mir ins Herz hinein.
steals

Mir ist, als ob ich die Hände
Aufs Haupt dir legen sollt',
Betend, daß Gott dich erhalte
 preserve

So rein und schön und hold. *Seine.*

Gebete vor Tische.

Komm', Herr Jesu, sei unser Guest,
 guest

Segne alles, was du uns bescheret hast. Amen!
Bless granted

Herr Gott, himmlischer Vater, segne uns und diese
 heavenly
deine Gaben, welche wir von deiner milden Güte zu
 gifts gracious kindness
uns nehmen. Amen.

Ein Gebet nach Tische.

A prayer after table.

Wir loben dich und sagen¹ Dank,²
 praise

Du gabst² uns wieder Speis'³ und Trank.
 to us again food and drink.

Ach, lieber Gott, du wollst⁴ auch geben
O!

Nach dieser Welt das ewige Leben! Amen.
After the eternal life!

¹ give thanks.

² hast given.

³ for Speise.

⁴ mayst thou be willing, pleased.

LESSON XVI.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

1. Der *weiseste Mensch* ist nicht immer der *beste*,
 the wisest
 aber er ist am besten wenn er am weisesten
 [at the] best [at the] wisest (most wisely)
 handelt.
 acts.

2. Learn this sentence; note the precise rendering of the various superlatives, also which are adjectives and which adverbs.

3. Adjectives and adverbs, regardless of the number of syllables, form their comparative by adding *-er* to the stem; monosyllables in *a, o, u*, usually ‘*umlaut*’ the vowel in addition; *fürz*, *fürzer*; *hell*, *heller*. The comparative when used attributively adds to the new stem the endings of declension like any other adjective, though in some places the *-e-* of the comparative ending is elided, as *heller*, genitive plural strong, for *hellerer*.

4. The superlative is formed by adding to the positive stem *-(e)st*. But as the superlative stem never occurs undeclined, it is usually given preceded by the article: *fürz*, *fürzer*, *der (die das)* *fürzeste*; *der (die, das) hellste*. Of course, if strong, the forms are *hellster*, *hellste*, *hellstes*.

5. In the predicate, where the positive and comparative forms occur undeclined, the superlative

appears either as *der* (*die, das*) *fürzeste*, or as *am fürzesten*, the latter a dative neuter phrase meaning literally ‘at the shortest.’

a.) The latter form is used when an object is compared with itself, and, usually, when compared with things of different kind and gender: *Im Winter sind die Tage am fürzesten*, “In winter the days are shortest”; *Das Bein ist kurz, der Arm ist fürzer, aber die Hand ist am fürzesten*, “The leg is short, the arm is shorter, but the hand is shortest.”

b.) The form with *der* (*die, das*) is used usually when an object is compared with others of its own kind and gender, and always when the noun is clearly understood: *Welcher von diesen Fingern ist der fürzeste?* “Which of these fingers is the shortest?”

6. The superlative of the adverb uses only the *am —sten* form, and this for true comparison: *welcher Vogel fliegt am schnellsten*, “which bird flies fastest?” For the absolute superlative another phrase is used, *aufs —e*, as *Er singt aufs schönste*, “He sings most (very) beautifully.” Certain adverbs appear also in the form *—stens*, as *meistens*, ‘mostly,’ *wenigstens*, ‘at least,’ etc.

7. After comparisons of equality the conjunction ‘as’ is usually *wie*; *Er ist so groß wie ich*, “He is as tall as I.” A comparison of inequality in the positive degree may be followed by either *wie* or *als*: *er ist nicht so groß wie (or als) ich*.

After the comparative, 'than' is als: *Er ist größer als ich*, "He is taller than I."

8. Diminishing comparison is expressed by weniger or minder, 'less,' and am wenigsten, 'least': *Er ist am wenigsten schuldig*, "He is least guilty."

VOCABULARY.

<i>der Schirm, the shade (shield)</i>	<i>das Öl, the oil.</i>
<i>der Mond, the moon.</i>	<i>hell, bright, clear.</i>
<i>der Tag, the day, daylight.</i>	<i>mild, mild, soft.</i>
<i>der Abend, the evening.</i>	<i>dunkel, dark, obscure.</i>
<i>die Meinung, the opinion.</i>	<i>finster, dark (without light).</i>
<i>die Lampe, the lamp.</i>	<i>lang, long.</i>
<i>die Sonne, the sun.</i>	<i>nicht wahr? Isn't it? Doesn't it? etc.</i>
<i>die Beleuchtung, the lighting, illumination.</i>	<i>dennoch, still, nevertheless.</i>
<i>das Licht, the light (Gas-, Monden-, Sonnen-licht).</i>	<i>wenigstens, at least.</i>
<i>das Auge (pl. -n), the eye.</i>	<i>grün, green.</i>
<i>das Brenngas, illuminating gas.</i>	<i>meinen, think, have an opinion.</i>

NOTE 26.—The following adjectives are compared irregularly
gut, besser, der beste; viel, mehr, das meiste; hoch, höher, der höchste; nahe, näher, der nächste; groß, sup. der größte (i. e. only -te added to stem); wenig, minder, der mindeste (also regular forms).

EXERCISE XVI.

- Das Licht der Sonne ist viel heller als das des Mondes.
- Es ist aber gar zu hell für die Augen.
- Das beste Licht für die Augen ist aber doch das einer guten Lampe.
- Das finde ich auch; das Öl gibt ein milderes Licht als das Brenngas.
- Die meisten Studenten tragen aber einen Schirm.
- Das

Licht ist am mildesten, wenn die Lampe einen dunkeln Schirm hat. 7. Es wird hier immer finsterer; lesen Sie ja nicht mehr. 8. Ich meine, es ist am besten beim Tage zu studieren. 9. Die Beleuchtung dieses Zimmers ist schlechter als ich meinte. 10. Das ist die schlechteste Lampe, die ich jemals gesehen habe. 11. Nein, ich glaube, ich habe eine noch schlechtere. 12. Das hellste Licht ist nicht immer das beste. 13. Es ist am besten, wir kaufen eine neue Lampe. 14. Der Mond gibt das mildeste, freundlichste Licht. 15. Aber man kann nicht bei seinem Lichte lesen. 16. Am Tage, wenn die Sonne nicht scheint, ist das Licht am besten.

EXERCISE 16.

1. The days are-growing ¹ shorter, are they not?
2. I believe (so), but they are not yet shortest.
3. The shortest days are to me the pleasantest.
4. We read more in the longer evenings of the winter.
5. What sort-of ² lighting do you have in your house?
6. I find the lamp a better light than gas.
7. [The] gaslight is too bright for the eyes.
8. [The] oil makes the softest light.
9. The moon is indeed ³ softer, but one cannot read by moonlight.
10. One reads best by a lamp with (a) dark shade.
11. I have found that the green shades are the best.
12. We-had-better ⁴ buy a green shade then.⁵
13. I will surely do that the next day [that]⁶ I go to town.
14. I have brought you the best shade [that] they had.
15. [The] oil is not always as good

- as [the] gas. 16. But still it is always pleasantest to read by lamplight. 17. That is at least my opinion. 18. But is the pleasantest light always the best? 19. The light is mildest when the sun is not shining. 20. The light of the moon is not so bright as that of the sun.

¹werden. ²für. ³ja, zwar, freilich. ⁴Tr. 'It is best we buy.'
⁵also after 'buy.' ⁶acc. case.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

Die Nacht, <i>night.</i>	reinlich, <i>neat.</i>
die Elektrizität', <i>electricity.</i>	teuer, <i>dear, costly.</i>
billig, <i>cheap.</i>	sollen, <i>is (are) said.</i>

CONVERSATION 15.—Die Beleuchtung.

1. Wann sind die Tage am längsten?
2. Die Tage sind im Sommer am längsten.
1. Und wann sind die Nächte am längsten?
2. Im Winter sind die Nächte am längsten.
1. Welcher Monat ist der kürzeste?
2. Der Februar ist der kürzeste Monat.
Etc., etc.
1. Was für Beleuchtung ist für die Augen am besten?
2. Ich finde, das Öl ist besser als das Gas.
1. Ist das Öl nicht billiger als das Gas?
2. Ich glaube wohl; aber das Gas ist reinlicher.
1. Welches ist teurer, das Gas oder die Elektrizität?
2. Die Elektrizität ist gewiß teurer.
1. Und wie ist die Elektrizität für die Augen?
2. Sie soll auch nicht so gut für die Augen sein.
Etc., etc.

READING 16.

Bon E. von Feuchtterfelten.

Es ist bestimmt in Gottes Rat,
Dß man vom Liebsten was man hat,
Muß scheiden.

part
Wiewol doch nichts im Lauf der Welt
Although course
Dem Herzen, ach, so sauer fällt,
hard falls (comes)
Als Scheiden, ja Scheiden.
parting

Nun mußt du mich auch recht verstehn,
Ja recht verstehn:
Wenn Menschen auseinandergehn,
part
So sagen sie: Auf Wiedersehn!
to meet again
Auf Wiedersehn! Auf Wiedersehn!

LESSON XVII.

VERBS.—INSEPARABLE.

1. *The inseparable prefixes are few ; learn them ; all others are separable.*
2. *Die schlechten Männer versuchten ihrem Bruder das Seine zu enthalten, aber er hat es erhalten und wird es wohl behalten.*
3. Learn this sentence ; observe the effect of the prefixes with halten, also the use and place of the signs of infinitive and past participle.
4. Verbs are sometimes compounded with prefixes, which are (1) always inseparable, or (2) always separable, or (3) sometimes separable and sometimes inseparable.
5. These cause no change in the inflection of the verb itself, and the only difficulty presented is in the treatment of the prefix.
6. *The Inseparable Prefix forms one word with the main verb and is never separated from it. The Separable Prefix is separated from the verb in the present and preterit tenses, but only in principal clauses, and is placed at the end of the clause. (See page 135 : 5.)*
7. This difference with regard to the separation of the prefixes from the verb corresponds to a difference in their *signification*. The separable prefixes

retain their sense and use as individual words, and manifest this individuality in their independent position with reference to the verb. The inseparable prefixes, on the other hand, have lost their separate use as individual words, only exerting a certain *force* upon the verb with which they are compounded, and failing to assert any independence in their position.

8. This assertion of independence in signification, by the separable prefixes, is shown not only by their position, but by the *accent*, which they receive in those forms also where they retain their place in composition with the verb. On the other hand, the inseparable prefixes receive no accent, but it falls on the verb-stem. This is indicated by the written accent in the following paradigms.

Inseparable Verbs.

9. The following are the inseparable prefixes :—
be, ent(emph), er, ge, ver, zer, miß.

10. The *force* which the inseparable prefix gives to the signification of the verb varies considerably in different cases. This will best be learned by practice, but a few hints are here given. See also the German-English vocabulary.

(a) **Be-** makes intransitive verbs transitive, and forms verbs from adjectives; look up *frei* and *befreien*, *führen* and *befühlen*.

(b) **Gut-** (*emp-*) adds the sense, "out of," "away," "off," "in," and with adjectives "un-" or "dis-"; look up *empfinden*, *entfliehen*, *entehren* (dishonor).

(c) **Gr-** indicates origin of action or condition, or acquisition by the action of the simple verb; look up *erblinden*, *erhalten*, *erwerben*.

(d) **Ge-** occurs with but few verbs and the force is too vague and varied for definition.

(e) **Ver-** adds to the simple verb the idea of completion (Eng. 'en-' with adjectives), of reversal, of rejection or wrong purpose; look up *verwerfen*, *verfaulen*, *veredeln* (ennoble), *verbessern*.

(f) **Zer-** adds the idea of destruction, expressed by 'dis-' or "to pieces"; look up *zerbrechen*, *zerstören*.

(g) **Miß-** equals English *mis-*. When *miß* has not the accent it is inseparable; thus in the commonest compounds. But even when it is accented the prefix never leaves the stem, but merely admits *ge-* in the past participle, sometimes before the *miß*, sometimes between it and the stem.

11. When the common meanings of these prefixes are learned, the pupil will often find himself able to construct compounds, without referring constantly to the dictionary. But some of the commonest inseparable verbs cannot be brought under these definitions, as *verstehen*, *behalten*.

12. The inseparable prefixes do not take the sign *ge* in the past participle. However, *miß* is sometimes an exception to this rule.

13. INFLECTION OF AN INSEPARABLE VERB.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vergeßen, vergaß, vergessen.

Present.

ich vergesse, I forget.

Etc., etc.

Preterit.

ich vergaß, I forgot.

Etc., etc.

Perfect.

ich habe vergessen, I have forgotten.

Etc., etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte vergessen, I had forgotten.

Etc., etc.

Future.

ich werde vergessen, I shall forget.

Etc., etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde vergessen haben, I shall have forgotten.

Etc., etc.

Imperative.

vergiss (du), forget (thou).

Etc., etc.

Infinitives.

(zu) **vergessen**, *to forget.*
vergessen (zu) **haben**, *to have forgotten.*

Participles.

vergeßend, *forgetting.*
vergessen, *forgotten.*

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Sonnenschirm (*sun-screen*),
the sunshade, sun-umbrella.
der Schirm, *the shade.*
der Koffer, *the trunk.*

FEMININE.

die Frage, *the question.*

NEUTER.

das Frühstück, *the breakfast.*
das Geld, *the money.*
beantworten, *answer (a letter).*
behalten, *retain, keep (possession of).*

empfangen, *receive, welcome.*
erhalten, *receive, come in possession of, keep = maintain.*
erlauben, *permit (w.).*
darüber, *over this.*
verstehen, *understand.*
zerbrechen, *break to pieces.*
Lust haben, *have pleasure, desire, be inclined.*
bedecken, *cover (w.).*
bewundern, *admire (w.).*
ganz, *whole.*
um wieviel Uhr? *at what o'clock.*

INF.

erhalten,
empfangen,

PRET.

erhielt,
empfing,

P.P.

erhalten.
empfangen.

(The other verbs have already appeared, but should be looked up and recited.)

NOTE 27.—Compounds of *Mann* substitute *-leute* for *-männer* in the plural when speaking of the class: as, *Kaufmann*, “merchant,” *Kaufleute*, “merchants;” *Hauptmann*, “captain,” *Hauptleute*, “captains;” but not with reference to a number of individuals; as, *zwei Hauptmänner*, “two captains.”

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Ihre Freundin bewundert meinen neuen Sonnenschirm sehr. 2. Ja, sie wird selbst einen solchen¹ Schirm kaufen. 3. Der Schirm hat ihr also sehr gut gefallen. 4. Wollen Sie ihr denselben nicht verkaufen? 5. Nein, das geht nicht; ich werde ihn behalten. 6. Ich verstehe nicht warum: haben Sie den Schirm als Geschenk erhalten? 7. Das ist es eben²; und ich fürchte, Sie haben ihn da zerbrochen. 8. Nein, nein; er ist gar nicht zerbrochen. 9. Nun, verlieren Sie den teuren Schirm ja³ nicht. 10. Haben wir darüber das Frühstück vergessen? 11. Ach nein, das ist etwas, was ich niemals vergesse. 12. Haben Sie jetzt Lust zum Frühstück zu gehen? 13. Um wieviel Uhr essen wir denn hier zum Frühstück? 14. Um sieben Uhr, wenn ich nicht vergessen habe. 15. Das gefällt mir sehr. 16. Ich habe soeben einen langen Brief empfangen. 17. Und ich werde ihn nach dem Frühstück beantworten. 18. Aber was ist denn mit dem schönen Sonnenschirm geschehen?

¹ einen solchen or solch einen, the former preferred. ² exactly.

³ Please, at beginning.

EXERCISE 17.

1. How does my new sunshade please you? (Or: How do you like my new sunshade?) 2. O, I admire it very (much): it is exceedingly pretty. 3. I believe I admired¹ the same shade at Müller's. 4. Just-so,² Müller sold¹ it (to) me. 5. Permit me a ques-

tion : Where do you keep your sunshade ? 6. I do not understand how you keep it so well. 7. Well, I manage³ thus : I keep the sunshade always in my trunk, ³ covered, with ² paper. 8. That ³, I ², do ⁵, not ², understand ⁴, either.⁴ 9. The heavy books in my trunk broke my sunshade. 10. But that ¹, is just ², it : I keep no books in my trunk. 11. I have just ⁵ received (some) money from my father. 12. The good father does not forget you. 13. He ², probably, ¹, understands that you wish to buy a new shade. 14. He has heard that I have broken my old one. 15. Did ¹ you break ¹ it or lose it ? 16. Why,⁶ you know I broke ¹ it. 17. Well, do not lose the money you have received.

¹ Perfect tense. ²Eben. ³ mache es. ⁴auch, before nicht.
⁵ soeben. ⁶ ja, after wissen.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

MASCULINE.

der Markt, the market.
 der Marktplatz, the market-
 place, square.

der Hecht, the pike (fish).
 der Bürgermeister (citizen
 master), the mayor.
 der Adler, the eagle.

FEMININE.

die Versammlung, the assem-
 bly, meeting.

NEUTER.

das Gemüse, the vegetables.

das Geflügel, the poultry.
 das Rathaus (council-house),
 the city hall.

früh, early.
 allerlei, all sorts of.
 gar kein, none at all.
 kosten, cost.
 das Stück, the piece, apiece.
 öffentlich, public.
 vortrefflich, excellent.

CONVERSATION 16.—Die Stadt.

1. Waren Sie heute morgen auf dem Markte?
2. Ja, ich war sehr früh dort.
1. Was verkauft man auf dem Markte?
2. Man verkauft dort allerlei Gemüse, auch Geflügel, Eier und Obst.
1. Gibt es Bäume auf dem Marktplatz?
2. Nein, gar keine. Aber die Bauernleute haben im Sommer große Sonnenschirme.
1. Wie viel kosteten diese Hechte?
2. Sie kosteten das Stück eine Mark.
1. Welche öffentliche Gebäude sehen Sie auf dem Marktplatz?
2. Ich sehe die Kirche, das Theater, ein Gasthaus und das Rathaus.
1. Was ist im Rathaussturme?
2. Die Stadtuhr ist darin.
1. Was gibt es im Rathauskeller?
2. Es ist eine Restoration darin.
1. Wo hat der Bürgermeister sein Bureau? (pr. bü-roh').
2. Er hat es im Rathause.
1. Wo hält der Stadtrat seine Versammlungen?
2. Er hält sie im Rathause.
1. Wie heißt das Gasthaus?
2. Es heißt „der Adler.“

READING 17.

Lorelei.¹*Von Heinrich Heine.*

Ich weiß² nicht, was soll³ es bedeuten,⁴
 Daß ich so traurig bin;
 Ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten,
 Das⁵ kommt mir nicht aus dem Sinn.⁶

Die Lust ist kühl und es dunkelt,⁷
 Und ruhig⁸ fließt der Rhein;
 Der Gipfel des Berges funkelt
 Im Abendsonnenschein.

Die schönste Jungfrau sitzt
 Dort oben,⁹ wunderbar,
 Ihr gold'nes¹⁰ Geschmeide blitzet,¹¹
 Sie kämmt ihr gold'nes Haar.

Sie kämmt es mit gold'nem Kämme,
 Und singt ein Lied dabei,¹²
 Das hat eine wundersame,¹³
 Gewaltige Melodei.

Den Schiffer¹⁴ im kleinen Schiffe¹⁵
 Ergreift¹⁶ es mit wildem Weh;¹⁷
 Er schaut¹⁸ nicht die Felsenriffe,
 Er schaut¹⁸ nur hinauf in die Höh'.¹⁹

Ich glaube, die Wellen verschlingen
 Um Ende²⁰ Schiffer und Kahn;
 Und das hat mit ihrem Singen
 Die Lorelei getan.

¹ A nixie on the Rhine, who by her singing so charmed the boatmen that they let themselves be carried into the whirlpool, near which she dwelt. ²wissen. ³is, is intended. ⁴signify. ⁵that. ⁶mir aus dem Sinn, to me out of the thought, out of my thoughts. ⁷es dunkelt, it is growing dark. ⁸quietly. ⁹yonder above, up there. ¹⁰goldenes. ¹¹glitters. ¹²at the same time. ¹³marvellous. ¹⁴boatman. ¹⁵boat. ¹⁶seizes, lays hold of. ¹⁷pang. ¹⁸see, look. ¹⁹in die Höhe, into the height, on high. ²⁰am Ende, at the end, at last.

LESSON XVIII.

VERBS. — SEPARABLE.

1. *The separate forms of the separable verbs are among the most characteristic German idioms, and should be practiced thoroughly.*

2. *Der Student ladet alle seine Freunde ein,*
 invites ()
sobald sie ankommen, einen Abend bei ihm zuzun-
 as soon (as) arrive to
bringen.

pass.

3. Learn the sentence; note the tense and form of each verb and the kind of clause in which it occurs, also the place of the infinitive sign.

4. The number of the separable prefixes is so large, that it is not practicable to learn the list as we have done in the case of the inseparable ones. It will suffice to bear in mind that all prefixes except those mentioned in Lesson XVII are separ-

able. The list would include most prepositions and adverbs combined with prepositions, as all combinations with *hin-* and *her-*. See Appendix.

5. In the present and preterit tenses, in principal clauses, the separable prefix comes at the end of the clause. In dependent clauses the prefix precedes the stem as part of one word. In the infinitive and past participle it is separated from the stem by the particle *ge-* or *zu-*.

A separable prefix before an inseparable, as *ausverkaufen*, remains separable.

6. PARADIGM OF A SEPARABLE VERB.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

an'fangen, fing an', an'gefangen.

Present.

ich fange an', I commence.

Preterit.

ich fing an', I commenced.

Perfect.

ich habe an'gefangen, I have commenced.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte an'gefangen, I had commenced.

Future.

ich werde an'fangen, I shall commence.

Future Perfect.

ich werde an'gefangen haben, I shall have commenced.

Imperative.

fange (*du*) **an**, *commence (thou)*.

fanget (*ihr*) **an**, *commence (ye)*.

Infinitive.

an'fangen, **an'zufangen**, *to commence*.

an'gefangen haben, *to have commenced*.

Participles.

an'fangend, *commencing*.

an'gefangen, *commenced*.

7. In reciting the paradigm of the separable verb it is well to require the presence of an object, as "*Ich fange den Brief an*," in order to impress the peculiarity of the order.

NOTE 28.—Certain prefixes normally separable are also inseparable in some combinations: *über*, *unter*, *durch*, *um*, *hinter*, *wider*, *wieder*. When separable these words have their simple literal meaning, and, of course, carry the accent. When inseparable the meaning of the prefix is usually figurative, or is fused with the stem so as to be rendered by one word, usually a Latin derivative, and the prefix, like other inseparables, is unaccented. Thus *übersetzen*, pret. *setzte . . . über* = *set across*; *übersetzen*, pret. *übersetz'te* = *translate*; *um'schreiben*, pret. *schrieb . . . um* = *write over (again)*; *umschrei'ben*, pret. *umschrieb'* = *circumscribe*. Obviously these features are cross-tests. If we know the accent we know whether separable or inseparable and something of the meaning; and *vice versa*.

NOTE 29.—In expressions for the time of day, the Germans often reckon forward to the next hour: as *ein Viertel auf sieben*, (or, *ein Viertel nach sechs*), "a quarter past six"; *halb sieben*, "half-past six"; *drei Viertel auf sieben* (or, *ein Viertel vor sieben*) "quarter before seven"; also, *zwanzig Minuten nach sieben*, or *sieben Uhr zwanzig*; and, *zwanzig Minuten vor acht*, or, *sieben Uhr vierzig*, like our railroad computation.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Verfasser, *the author.*die Eltern, *the parents.*

FEMININE.

die Burg, *the fortress.*die Einladung, *the invitation.*die Anelde'ste, *the anecdote,
story.*

NEUTER.

das Schauspiel, *the spectacle,
play.*das Kirchenlied, *the hymn.*das Gedicht, *the poem.*ab'schreiben, *copy.*an'kommen, *arrive.*vor'stellen, *introduce, present.*zu'machen, *shut, close.*auf'machen, *open.*auswendig lernen, *learn by
heart.*auf'siehen, *get up, rise.*um'schreiben, *remodel, write
over.*vor'lesen, *read aloud.*an'nehmen, *accept.*ein'laden, *invite.*zu'bringen, *spend (time).*auf'hören, *cease, stop.*versprech'en, *promise.*als, *when.*sogleich, *right away.*schon, *indeed, surely; already.*beinahe, *almost.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Der Verfasser des Liedes schreibt es soeben ab.
2. Er fängt wenigstens an, es abzuschreiben. 3. Er hatte schon angefangen, als ich ankam. 4. Wann sind Sie denn angekommen? 5. Ich kam vor einer halben Stunde an. 6. Jetzt hört der Mann schon auf, zu schreiben. 7. Er hat wohl das ganze Lied abgeschrieben. 8. Er ist auch Verfasser von mehreren Anecdotes und einem Schauspiel. 9. Er macht aber jetzt das Buch zu. 10. Bitte, stellen Sie mich dem Verfasser vor. 11. Ich lade Sie ein, heute Abend um halb sieben bei uns Tee zu nehmen. 12. Der Verfasser bringt den ganzen Tag bei uns zu. 13. Er wird heute abend das Schauspiel vorlesen. 14. Ich will ihn bitten, das

Lied für mich abzuschreiben. 15. Wir gehen jetzt nach Hause. 16. Wir haben einen sehr angenehmen Abend zugebracht. 17. Ich höre, er hat das Lied aus dem Englischen übersezt. 18. Ich überzege ja auch englische Gedichte.

EXERCISE 18.

1. They have invited us ₈ to ₉, take ₁₀, tea ₁₁, with ₁₂ them ₁₃, at (a) ₁₄, quarter ₁₅, after ₁₆, six.¹
2. And ₂ shall you accept the invitation? ₃
3. Why, ₃ we accepted it immediately.
4. They say, the author of the new play will be there.
5. So-then,⁴ he has really arrived?
6. Yes indeed, and he has promised to read his play aloud.
7. His daughter is copying it this afternoon.
8. She began ₅ right away after dinner.
9. We shall probably pass a pleasant evening.
10. That ₃, I ₂, can ₅, indeed ₆, promise ₄, you.
11. Let us arise; they will introduce us to the author's parents.
12. The people are ceasing to talk.
13. Somebody just closed a door.
14. He arises and opens his book.
15. So ⁶ his young daughter ₂, has copied the whole play?
16. Now ₃, he ₂, has ceased to read.
17. Will they introduce us to the author, do-you-think?⁷
18. I have almost learned the play by heart.
19. The play has pleased us very much.
20. I have certainly⁸ spent a very pleasant evening.
21. My friend will translate the play into German.
22. But the author will first write it entirely over.

¹ See Note 29. ² denn, after Sie. ³ Ja, after sie. ⁴ also.
⁵ Perfect tense. ⁶ also. ⁷ wohl, after uns, or verb meinen or
glauben. ⁸ doch.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

Um wieviel Uhr,	at what	selten , seldom.
<i>o'clock, when?</i>		bekommen , get, receive.
erst , first, not until.		lassen , let.

CONVERSATION 17.—Die Zeit.

1. Wann geht die Sonne im Monat Juni auf?
 2. Im Monat Juni geht die Sonne um halb fünf Uhr auf.
 1. Wann geht die Sonne im Monat Juni unter?
 2. Im Monat Juni geht die Sonne um halb acht Uhr unter.
 1. Wie lang sind die Tage und die Nächte im Monat Dezember?
 2. Im Monat Dezember sind die Tage neun Stunden lang und die Nächte fünfzehn Stunden.
- Etc., etc.

1. Wann gehen Sie in die Schule?
 2. Ich gehe um acht Uhr in die Schule.
 1. Wann kommen Sie nach Hause?
 2. Wir kommen zu Mittag nach Hause.
 1. Stehen Sie um fünf Uhr auf?
 2. Nein, jetzt stehe ich erst um sieben Uhr auf.
 1. Um wieviel Uhr gehen Sie jetzt zu Bett?
 2. Jetzt gehe ich selten vor zehn Uhr zu Bett.
- Etc., etc.

READING 18.

Sprichwort.

Morgenstunde hat Gold im Munde.

Morning-hour in the mouth.

“The early bird catches the worm.”

Der Storch.

Der Storch ließ¹ auf dem Dach sich¹ nieder,¹

Und sprach: „Da, Kinder, bin ich wieder!

Nun saget mir, was ist² geschehen,²

Seit³ ich das Dörfchen⁴ nicht⁵ gesehen?⁶⁶

¹ sich niederlassen, to let one's self down, to alight. ² has happened. ³ since. ⁴ little village. ⁵ not to be translated. ⁶ gesehen (habe), have seen, saw.

Der Araber¹ in der Wüste.²

Ein Araber hatte sich³ in der Wüste verirrt³ und war in Gefahr,⁴ vor Hunger und Durst zu sterben. Nach langem Umherirren⁵ fand er eine von den Zisternen oder Wassergruben,⁶ aus welchen die Pilger⁷ ihre Kamele tränken,⁸ und einen kleinen, ledernen Sack, der auf dem Sande lag. „Gott sei gelobt!“ sprach er, als er ihn aufhob⁹ und befühlte;¹⁰ „das sind gewiß Datteln¹¹ oder Nüsse; wie will ich mich an ihnen erquicken¹² und laben!¹³“ In dieser süßen Hoffnung öffnete er schnell den Sack, sah was er enthielt,¹⁴ und rief¹⁵ dann ganz traurig¹⁶ aus¹⁵: „Ach, es sind nur Perlen!¹⁷

¹ Arab.

⁵ wandering about.

⁹ lifted up.

¹³ lave, restore.

² desert.

⁶ water-tanks.

¹⁰ felt of.

¹⁴ contained.

³ lost his way.

⁷ pilgrims.

¹¹ dates.

¹⁵ exclaimed.

⁴ danger.

⁸ water.

¹² refresh.

¹⁶ sadly.

¹⁷ pearls.

LESSON XIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—CONJUGATION.

1. The Subjunctive Mood is the subjective mood, implying *doubt*, *uncertainty*, *negation*. It occurs chiefly in subordinate clauses. For the rules of the Subjunctive, see Lesson XXIX.

2. The forms of the Subjunctive Mood do not differ greatly from those of the Indicative, yet in most cases enough to be distinguished.

3. In the Present Tense, the personal endings of the Subjunctive retain the parenthetical e and have no t in the third person singular. The endings are the same in both conjugations. In the Old Conjugation the verbs in e and a do not change the vowel in the second and third persons singular, as in the Indicative.

4. In the Preterit, the Subjunctive and Indicative are alike for the New Conjugation. The Old Conjugation adds -e, -est, -e, to the Preterit stem in the Sing., and umlauts the stem-vowel in both Singular and Plural. The Plural endings are the same as in the Indicative.

5. The compound tenses of the Subjunctive are formed in the same manner in both Old and New Conjugations, by the use of the Subjunctive of the auxiliaries *haben* (or *sein*) and *werden*.

6. The Conditional, which is properly a Subjunc-

tive used in the conclusion after conditions, is formed with *würden*, the Preterit Subjunctive of *werden*, followed by the Infinitive, or the Perfect Infinitive. For the Present Conditional the Preterit Subjunctive is sometimes substituted: *Sch* gäbe ihm das Buch, or *ich* würde ihm das Buch geben, “I would give him the book.” Similarly the Pluperfect Subjunctive is used for the Perfect Conditional, and is even preferred *Sch* hätte ihn geliebt, “I would have loved him,” being shorter, is preferred to *Sch* würde ihn geliebt haben.

7. The Conditional, representing the tentative conclusion from a condition (an if-clause), always occurs in the principal clause.

8. SUBJUNCTIVE OF *sein* AND *haben*. SIMPLE TENSES.

Present.

<i>ich sei, I (may) be.</i>	<i>ich habe, I (may) have.</i>
<i>du seiest, thou (mayest) be.</i>	<i>du habest, thou (mayest) have.</i>
<i>er sei, he (may) be.</i>	<i>er habe, he (may) have.</i>
<i>wir seien, we (may) be.</i>	<i>wir haben, we (may) have.</i>
<i>ihr seiet, ye (may) be.</i>	<i>ihr habet, ye (may) have.</i>
<i>Sie seien, you (may) be.</i>	<i>Sie haben, you (may) have.</i>
<i>sie seien, they (may) be.</i>	<i>sie haben, they (may) have.</i>

Preterit.

<i>ich wäre, I might be (were).</i>	<i>ich hätte, I might have (or had).</i>
<i>du wärest, thou mightest be.</i>	<i>du hättest, thou mightest have.</i>
<i>er wäre, he might be.</i>	<i>er hätte, he might have.</i>
<i>wir wären, we might be.</i>	<i>wir hätten, we might have.</i>
<i>ihr wäret, ye might be.</i>	<i>ihr hättest, ye might have.</i>
<i>Sie wären, you might be.</i>	<i>Sie hätten, you might have.</i>
<i>sie wären, they might be.</i>	<i>sie hätten, they might have.</i>

9. SUBJUNCTIVE OF A VERB OF THE NEW CONJUGATION.

Present.

ich liebe, *I (may) love.*wir lieben, *we (may) love.*du liebest, *thou (mayest) love.*ihr liebet, *ye (may) love.*er liebe, *he (may) love.*sie lieben, *they (may) love.*

Preterit.

ich liebte, *I might love (loved).*du liebtest, *thou mightest love (lovedst).*er liebte, *he might love (loved).*wir liebten, *we might love (loved).*ihr liebtet, *ye might love “*sie liebten, *they might love “*

Perfect.

ich habe geliebt, *I (may) have loved.*du habest geliebt, *thou (mayest) have loved (hast loved).*

Etc., etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hätte geliebt, *I might have loved (had loved).*

Etc., etc.

Future.

ich werde lieben, *I shall love.*du werdest lieben, *thou shalt love.*

Etc., etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde geliebt haben, *I shall have loved.*

Etc., etc.

Conditional.

ich würde lieben or liebte, *I would love.*

Etc., etc.

Conditional Perfect.

ich würde geliebt haben or hätte geliebt, *I would have loved.*

Etc., etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

IO. INFLECTION OF A VERB OF THE OLD CONJUGATION.

Present.

<i>ich gebe, I (may) give.</i>	<i>wir geben, we (may) give.</i>
<i>du gebest, thou (mayest) give.</i>	<i>ihr gebet, ye (may) give.</i>
<i>er gebe, he (may) give.</i>	<i>sie geben, they (may) give.</i>

Preterit.

<i>ich gäbe, I might give (gave).</i>	<i>wir gäben, we might give (gave).</i>
<i>du gäbest, thou mightest give (gavest).</i>	<i>ihr gäbet, ye might give “</i>
<i>er gäbe, he might give (gave).</i>	<i>sie geben, they might give “</i>

Perfect.

<i>ich habe gegeben,</i>	<i>wir haben gegeben.</i>
<i>er " " "</i>	<i>sie " " "</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>ich hätte gegeben,</i>	<i>wir hätten gegeben.</i>
Etc., etc.	

Future.

<i>ich werde geben,</i>	<i>wir werden geben,</i>
<i>er werde " " "</i>	<i>sie " " "</i>

Future Perfect.

<i>ich werde gegeben haben,</i>	<i>wir werden gegeben haben.</i>
<i>er werde " " "</i>	<i>sie " " "</i>

Conditional.

ich würde geben or ich gäbe.

Conditional Perfect.

ich würde gegeben haben or ich hätte gegeben.

NOTE 30. The conjunction 'if,' *wenn*, is usually followed by the subjunctive. As in English, the conjunction is implied by putting the verb at the beginning of the clause: *Wenn er frank wäre* (or *Wäre er frank*), *so würde er schreiben*, "If he were sick (or " Were he sick "), he would write."

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der *Better*, *the cousin*.

FEMININE.

die *Belehrtheit*, *the acquaintance*.

die *Pflege*, *the care, attendance*.

NEUTER.

das *Bergnügen*, *the pleasure*.

das *Bißchen* (*little bit*), *the trifle*.

das *Beispiel*, *the example*.

heim, *home* (*sep. prefix of direction*).

mitreisen, *travel (with) along, go along*.

längst, long since.

überneh'men, undertake.

notwendig, necessary.

wirklich, real; really.

an Ihrer Stelle, in your place.

sicher, certainly.

raten, advise (with dative).

fertig, ready, through (with).

beun'ruhigen, make uneasy.

*derselbe, the same. (Declined like **der gute**, Les. XV.)*

überge'ben, deliver.

zurückgeben, give back.

zurückschicken, send back.

voraus'sehen, foresee.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Der Student würde doch heimgehen, wenn er *frank* wäre ³¹.
2. Ja, und er würde auch an seine Mutter schreiben.
3. Aber das würde seine Mutter *beunruhigen*.
4. Er würde es wohl kaum tun, wenn es nicht *notwendig* wäre.
5. Hätte sein Vater es nur *gewußt*, wie der hier war!
6. *Zawohl*, der junge Mann wäre dann *heimgegangen*.
7. Würden Sie das *getan haben*, wenn Sie an seiner Stelle gewesen wären?
8. Ganz gewiß; ich gäbe meinen kleinen Finger, wenn er *mitgereist* wäre.
9. Würde der Arzt jetzt raten, ihn *heimzuschicken*?
10. Jetzt wohl nicht, aber er hätte es vor einer Woche geraten.
11. Wenn er nicht zu *frank* ist, so kann er seine Aufgabe *abschreiben*.
12. Aber

wenn er heimgegangen wäre, so würde er doch gar nichts zu tun haben. 13. Es würde wohl besser für ihn sein, etwas zu tun. 14. Wie, wenn er diesen kleinen Brief ins Deutsche übersetze? 15. Ich glaube, das würde ihm wirkliches Vergnügen machen. 16. Wenn nur seine Mutter hier wäre! 17. Sie würde die Pflege des Kranken gleich übernehmen.

NOTE 31. After the subordinative conjunction the personal part of the verb must be at the end of the clause.

EXERCISE 19.

1. I would read the letter through if I were in your place.
2. Would you advise me to copy it?
3. Yes, indeed, if the letter were to¹ my brother.
4. (What) if the man were sick, for² example?
5. Yes, , I , would , certainly³ do³ it⁴ in⁵ that⁶ case.
6. Had I only known that my brother would not be here!
7. Your brother would certainly wish that you read it.
8. The man would himself have nothing against-it.³
9. I would deliver the letter (to) my brother's wife if she were in [the] town.
10. But she would know nothing of the matter.
11. I would have given the letter back, had I foreseen this.
12. But who would have thought that the carrier would deliver the letter (to) you?
13. If it makes you so uneasy, I advise you to send the letter back.
14. But what⁴ if my brother came this evening?
15. Why, you would have copied the letter.
16. You would simply⁵ deliver the copied letter to

your brother. 17. Yes, I really believe that would be the best way. 18. I would give something if I only knew who the man is.

¹an with accusative. ²zum Beispiel. ³See Lesson XI, Note 18. ⁴wie. ⁵nur.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Spaziergang,	<i>the walk,</i>	mitbringen,	<i>bring along.</i>
<i>promenade.</i>		rathsam,	<i>advisable.</i>
der Überzieher,	<i>overcoat.</i>	fort,	<i>away, gone.</i>
abholen,	<i>call for.</i>		

CONVERSATION 18.—Der Spaziergang.

1. Würden Sie heute gern einen Spaziergang machen?
2. Jawohl, ich würde sehr gerne einen kleinen Spaziergang machen.
1. Um wieviel Uhr würden Sie lieber gehen?
2. Ich würde lieber um halb vier gehen.
1. Gut, ich hole Sie dann ab; soll ich?
2. Ja, seien Sie so gut, mich abzuholen.
1. Wollen wir auf den Berg hinaufgehen, oder über den Fluß?
2. Ich ginge lieber über den Fluß.
1. Wenn Sie nichts dagegen haben, so bringe ich einen Freund mit.
2. Tun Sie das ja, ich habe gar nichts dagegen.
1. Was nehmen wir mit?
2. Ach, nehmen wir nur nicht viel mit.

1. Wäre es doch nicht ratsam, einen Regenschirm mitzunehmen?
2. Das ist möglich; ja, Regenschirm und Überzieher nehmen wir mit.
1. Wie lange werden wir fort sein?
2. Nicht sehr lange, vielleicht anderthalb Stunden.
1. Wann müssen Sie wieder zu Hause sein?
2. Ich muß schon um vier Uhr wieder da sein.

Etc., etc.

READING 19.

Andreas Hofer.

Bon Julius Rosen.

Zu Mantua in Banden der treue Hofer war,
bonds

In Mantua zum Tode führt' ihn der Feinde Schar;
Es blutete der Brüder Herz,

troop

Ganz Deutschland, ach, in Gram und Schmerz!

Mit ihm das Land Throl, mit ihm das Land Throl.

(Repeat).

Die Hände auf dem Rücken Andreas Hofer ging,
Mit ruhig festen Schritten, ihm schien der Tod gering;
Der Tod, den er so manches Mal slight
Vom Iselberg geschickt ins Tal,
Im heil'gen Land Throl, im heil'gen Land Throl.

(Repeat).

Doch als aus Kerfegittern im festen Mantua
dungeon-bars walled

Die treuen Waffenbrüder die Händ' er strecken sah,
brothers in arms stretch

Da rief er aus: Gott sei mit euch,
Mit dem verrat'nen deutschen Reich,
betrayed
Und mit dem Land Throl, und mit dem Land Throl!
(Repeat).

LESSON XX.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES. *Können* AND *dürfen*.

1. The “modal auxiliaries” *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen* and *wollen*, which are of very frequent occurrence, call for special attention in view of peculiarities in form and usage.
2. Confusion in the use of the auxiliaries is due chiefly to the defective forms of these words in English. Thus, note that *must* has only present forms, while in German the forms of *müssen* are complete, as though we could say: “I musted,” “I shall must,” “I have musted.” Instead we must say in English, “I *had to*,” “I shall *be compelled*,” “I have *been obliged*.”

3. Like *helfen*, *sehen*, and a few other verbs (see Lesson XXVII), the “modal auxiliaries” do not take *zu* before a following infinitive. *Sch. kann das tun*, “I can do that.” In this respect they do not differ from the same words in English.

4. Often the verb depending upon them is understood. *Wollen Sie hinein?* “Will you (go) in?” *Was will er?* “What does he want (to do)?”

5. In the compound tenses the infinitive (originally a participle form of the old conjugation) is used instead of a participle, when the infinitive of another verb depends upon it. *Das habe ich nicht tun können*, "That I have not been able to do." But, *Ich habe es gekonnt, aber nicht gewollt*, "I was able, but did not want to do it." This is also true of a few other verbs, as *lassen*, *heissen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *siehen*, and sometimes *lehren* and *lernen*.

6. Often one and the same English word is to be translated by a different auxiliary in German according to the meaning. "I can not go" is, *Ich kann nicht gehen*, if the meaning is, "I am unable to go"; but *Ich darf nicht gehen*, if the meaning is, "I am not permitted to go"; while, *Ich mag nicht gehen* means "I do not care to go."

7. In German the negative modifies the personal verb. Hence, *Ich muß es nicht tun* means "I do not have to do it." "I must (dare) not do it," is *Ich darf es nicht tun*. But note the peculiar, *Ich will nicht hoffen*, "I hope not."

8. The English may often be expressed otherwise in German than by the "modal auxiliaries." "He was going to speak" is, *Er wollte sprechen*, or, *Er war im Begriffe zu sprechen*. "I do not like him" is, *Ich mag ihn nicht*, or, *Ich habe ihn nicht gern*. "Let him go" is *Er mag gehen*, or *Er gehe*. "I can do it" is *Ich kann es tun*, or *Ich bin im Stande es zu tun*.

9. The "causative auxiliary" lassen, "cause, let, leave," resembles in its use the "modal auxiliaries," and will be treated in connection with them.

10. In the paradigm of the modal auxiliaries that follows it will be noticed that the endings of the Present Indicative are those of the Preterit Indicative of the Old conjugation. Otherwise the verbs go according to the New conjugation.

11.

Dürfen, können.

Dürfen and können may be considered together as related by their English equivalents. They both mean *can*, *may*, but in the one case this expresses permission granted, in the other one's own power. Dürfen means *be permitted* or *be at liberty* (to do a thing), können, *be able*. The English "I can do it" is, ich darf es tun, if the meaning is, "I am at liberty to do it," but, ich kann es tun, if the meaning is, "I am able to do it."

12.

Dürfen.

Dürfen expresses: 1. *to be permitted*; 2. *possibility* (especially in the subjunctive preterit); 3. *need* (with negatives or privatives).

1. Darf ich jetzt nach Hause gehen, "May I go home now?"

2. Es dürfte heute noch regnen, "It may yet rain to-day."

3. Ich darf nur rufen und er kommt gleich, "I need only call and he comes at once."

1. Dürfen is translated by "may," "can," "be at liberty to," "be allowed or permitted to," "is or are to," "must," "need" (the latter two only with negatives).

2. Dürfen instead of müssen is the English "must," when it is connected with a negative, as "you must not speak loud here."

3. Dürfen instead of mögen is the English "may," when it is used to express consent or permission, as "may I borrow your pen?"

4. Dürfen in the sense of "need" is to be distinguished from brauchen, "use, have need of."

5. Dürfen is never exactly the English "dare," "risk," which is wagten.

I3.

Können.

Können expresses: 1. *ability*; 2. *possibility*, physical or logical.

1. Ich kann es tun, "I am able to do it."

2. Es könnte anders kommen, "it might happen otherwise." Es kann leicht dahin kommen, "It may easily come to that." Das kann nicht wahr sein, "that cannot be true."

3. Instead of können, imsta/nde sein often represents the English "can." Ich bin nicht imstande, das heute zu tun, "I can not do that to-day."

14. In general the preterit (subjunctive) of the auxiliary in English followed by the compound infinitive of the principal verb is rendered into German by the pluperfect subjunctive (conditional perfect) of the auxiliary plus the simple infinitive of

the principal verb. Thus "I could have done it" is *Ich hätte es tun können* (lit., I would have been able to do it). It is well to remember as a formula : "might have done," "could have done," "should have done," all begin in German with *hätte*, while the characteristic auxiliary comes at the end as infinitive.

15. PARADIGM OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES, *dürfen* AND *können*.

Infinitives.		Participles.	
dürfen, können.		Present. (dürfend) (könnend).	Preterit. gedurft, gekonnt. (dürfen), (können).
Perfect Infinitives.			
gedurft haben, gekonnt haben			
Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
S. 1. darf	kaun	dürfe	könue
2. darfst	kaunst	dürfest	könuest
3. darf	kaann	dürfe	könue
P. 1. dürfen	können	dürfau	könuen
2. dürft	köunt	dürfet	könuet
3. dürfen	können	dürfau	könuen
Preterit.		Subjunctive.	
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
durfte	könnte	dürfte	könunte
Perfect Indicative.			
ich habe gedurft (dürfen), gekonnt (können).			
Perfect Subjunctive.			
ich habe gedurft (dürfen), ich habe gekonnt (können).			
du habest "	"	du habest "	"
Etc.		Etc.	

Pluperfect Indicative.

ich hatte gedurft (dürfen), gekonnt (können).

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

ich hätte gedurft (dürfen), gekonnt (können).

Future Indicative.

ich werde dürfen, können.

Future Subjunctive.

ich werde dürfen, können.

du werdest dürfen, können.

Future Perfect Indicative.

ich werde gedurft (dürfen) haben, gekonnt (können) haben.

Future Perfect Subjunctive.

ich werde gedurft (dürfen), gekonnt (können) haben.

du werdest " " " " " "

Conditional.

ich würde dürfen, können.

(dürfte, könnte.)

Conditional Perfect.

ich würde gedurft, gekonnt haben,

(hätte . . . dürfen, . . . können).

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Bibliothekar^r, *the librarian.*

der Führer, *the guide.*

hineingehen, *go in, enter.*

rauchen, *smoke.*

verbieten, *forbid.*

erlauben, *permit.*

FEMININE.

die Bibliothek^r, *the library.*

helfen, *help.*

zurückkommen, *come back, re-*

turn.

NEUTER.

das Gebäude, *the building.*

warten auf (acc.), *wait for.*

ich kann nichts dafür, *I cannot help it.*

ich kann nicht umhin (zu), *I cannot help (with pr. part.)*

ärgerlich, *angry.*

EXERCISE XX.

1. Können Sie mir einige von diesen Büchern leihen?
2. Es tut mir leid, aber ich darf das nicht tun. 3. Es ist verboten, die Bücher aus dem Gebäude zu schicken.
4. Aber Sie dürfen sie ja hier lesen. 5. Nun ja, ich kann doch nicht alle¹ Tage kommen.
6. Mein Vater hätte die Bücher schon² kaufen können.
7. Meine Freunde meinen, sie haben schon³ hier die Bücher genug lesen können.
8. Dürfte ich nur die Bücher etwas näher ansehen?
9. Ach ja, das werden Sie schon dürfen.
10. Man wird in einer Stunde so⁴ ein kleines Buch lesen können.
11. Ich würde besser sehen können, wenn ich hineingehen dürfte.
12. Das dürfen Sie ja; Sie hätten es gleich am Anfang tun dürfen.
13. Ich könnte zu Hause aber viel ruhiger lesen.
14. Ich kann ein für allemal nichts dafür.
15. Ich darf kein einziges Buch aus der Bibliothek schicken.
16. Ich konnte den Bibliothekar nicht bewegen.
17. Ich glaube aber, ich hätte es tun können.
18. Das kann wohl sein.

¹alle Tage, or jeden Tag. ²of course, anyway. ³right, even.

⁴so ein kleines Buch, a little book like this. solch ein kleines, such a little.

EXERCISE 20.

1. Can you tell me where the librarian is?
2. ,That³, I², can: you need only go through the door yonder.
3. But you must not smoke in the library.
4. Can it be that smoking is forbidden?

5. „It certainly can, [that]; you might have known that. 6. Could we go in where the books are? 7. You will be permitted to do that with a guide. 8. You can wait for him here. 9. I might have gone into the library if I had not been-smoking. 10. Some friends of ours were permitted (to) yesterday. 11. But yesterday was a free day. 12. Everybody was permitted to go in yesterday. 13. Can you not permit me to take a book? 14. I might have read a whole book in this half hour. 15. You will be able to do that when you come back. 16. Were you able to find the librarian? 17. No, the guide has not been able to find him. 18. Then we shall not be permitted to see the books. 19. I cannot help being angry.

(Introduce the particle ja into the above sentences wherever possible and note the effect. See what changes can be made in the English sentences to express this alteration. This can be done only with the aid of the teacher in the class.)

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

die Mühe, trouble, pains.
verleihen, lend.

spitzen, sharpen.
beschneiden, soil.

CONVERSATION 19.—Messer und Bleistift.

1. Wer kann mir ein Federmesser leihen?
2. Ich kann Ihnen eins leihen.
1. Haben Sie mit diesem Messerchen schneiden können?
2. Jawohl, ich habe recht gut damit schneiden können.

1. Darf ich dieses Messer mit nach Hause nehmen?
2. Es tut mir leid, aber ich darf mein Messerchen nicht verleihen.
1. Könnten Sie selber den Bleistift für mich spicken?
2. Das können Sie mir ganz ruhig überlassen.
1. Dürfte ich Sie wieder bemühen, noch einen Bleistift zu spicken?
2. Es ist gar keine Mühe; darf ich damit an die Türe gehen?
1. Das dürfen Sie gewiß. Sie hätten Ihren Tisch damit beschmutzen können, nicht wahr?
2. Ja, und ich hätte mir auch die Finger beschmutzen können.
1. Wie spät wird es wohl sein?
2. Es kann schon sechs Uhr sein. Etc., etc.

READING 20.

Die sechs Wörtlein.

Sechs Wörtlein nehmen¹ mich in¹ Anspruch¹ jeden Tag:
 Ich soll, ich muß, ich kann, ich will, ich darf, ich mag.
 Ich soll ist das Gesetz, von Gott ins Herz geschrieben,
 Das Ziel,² nach welchem ich bin von mir selbst getrieben.
 Ich muß, das ist die Schrank',³ in welcher mich die Welt
 Von einer, die Natur von and'rer Seite hält.
 Ich kann, das ist das Maß⁴ der mir verlieh'n Kraft,
 Der Tat, der Fertigkeit,⁵ der Kunst⁶ und Wissenschaft.⁷
 Ich will, die höchste Kron' ist dieses, die mich schmückt,⁸
 Das ist der Freiheit Siegel,⁹ dem Geiste¹⁰ aufgedrückt.¹¹

Ich darf, das ist zugleich¹² die Inschrift¹³ bei dem Siegel,
 Bei'm aufgetanen Tor der Freiheit auch ein Riegel.¹⁴
 Ich mag, das endlich ist, was zwischen allen schwimmt,
 Ein Unbestimmtes,¹⁵ das der Augenblick bestimmt.
 Ich soll, ich muß, ich kann, ich will, ich darf, ich mag,
 Die Sehse nehmen mich in Anspruch jeden Tag.
 Nur wenn Du¹⁶ selbst mich lehrst, weiß ich, was jeden Tag
 Ich soll, ich muß, ich kann, ich will, ich darf, ich mag.

Rückert.

¹ claim. ² goal. ³ barrier. ⁴ measure. ⁵ dexterity. ⁶ art.
⁷ science. ⁸ adorns. ⁹ seal. ¹⁰ mind. ¹¹ impressed. ¹² at the
 same time. ¹³ inscription. ¹⁴ bolt. ¹⁵ something indefinite.
¹⁶ Thou (O God).

LESSON XXI.

MODAL AUXILIARIES: Mögen, wollen.

1. Mögen and wollen may be considered together as being related in their fundamental significations. The former means liking, desire, concession by the speaker; the latter, will or inclination. Sometimes it is indifferent whether mögen or wollen be used, as er wollte (or mochte) nicht länger bleiben, He did not wish (or care) to remain longer.

2. Mögen.

Mögen expresses: 1. *liking, taste, desire*; 2. *possibility*; 3. *permission, concession or indifference* on the part of the speaker; 4. substitute for simple subjunctive.

1. Ich mag ihn nicht [leiden], "I do not like him." Er möchte immer großartig erscheinen, "He is always wanting to appear big." Möchten Sie das? "Would you like (to have) that?"

2. Das mag wahr sein, "That may be true."

3. Er mag gehen, "He may go, let him go." Möchte die ganze Welt uns hören, "Would that the whole world might hear us." Du magst das Buch behalten, "You may keep the book."

4. Ich befürchtete, daß er gehen möchte (or ginge), *I feared that he might go.*

3. Wollen.

Wollen expresses: 1. *willingness, wish, choice, determination*; 2. *impending action*; 3. *claim*.

1. Ich will es ja gerne tun, "I will gladly do it." Ich will es so haben, "I am determined to have it so." Ich will kein Brot, "I do not wish any bread."

2. Es will regnen, "It is on the point of raining." Er will gehen, and especially with eben, 'just,' Er will eben gehen, "He starts to go," "is about to go," "is just going."

3. Er will dich gesehen haben, "He claims to have seen you."

As equivalent of meaning 2, the phrase im Begriff sein is often used, Er ist im Begriff zu gehen, "He is on the point of going."

4. PARADIGM OF *wollen* AND *mögen*.

Infinitives.	Present.	Participles.
<i>mögen, wollen.</i>	(<i>mögend, wollend</i>). Perfect Infinitives. <i>gemocht haben, gewollt haben.</i>	<i>gemocht, gewollt,</i> (<i>mögen</i>), (<i>wollen</i>).
	Present.	Past.
<i>gemocht haben, gewollt haben.</i>		

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
S. 1. <i>mag</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>möge</i>	<i>wolle</i>
2. <i>magst</i>	<i>willst</i>	<i>mögest</i>	<i>wolleſt</i>
3. <i>mag</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>möge</i>	<i>wolle</i>
P. 1. <i>mögen</i>		P. 1. <i>wollen</i>	
2. <i>mögt</i>	<i>wollt</i>	<i>möget</i>	<i>wollet</i>
3. <i>mögen</i>	<i>wollen</i>	<i>mögen</i>	<i>wollen</i>

Imperative.
wölle, (be pleased to).

Preterit Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>mochte, wollte.</i>	<i>möchte, wollte.</i>

Perfect Indicative.
ich habe gemocht (— mögen), gewollt (— wollen),
du hast " " "

Etc.

Perfect Subjunctive.
ich habe gemocht (— mögen), gewollt (— wollen),
du habest " " "

Pluperfect Indicative.

ich hätte gemocht (— mögen), gewollt (— wollen).

Future Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>ich werde mögen, wollen,</i>	<i>werde mögen, wollen,</i>
<i>du wirst " " "</i>	<i>werdest " " "</i>

Future Perfect Indicative.
ich werde gemocht, gewollt haben.
du wirst " " "

Etc.

Future Perfect Subjunctive.

ich werde gemocht, gewollt haben,
 du werdest " " "
 Etc.

Conditional.

ich würde mögen, wollen.
 (möchte), (wollte).
 Etc.

Perfect Conditional.

ich würde gemocht, gewollt haben.
 (hätte — mögen, wollen.)
 Etc.

VOCABULARY.

MASCULINE.

der Braten, roast.
 der Bäcker, baker.
 der Feinschmecker, gourmand.
 der Kenner, judge, expert.
 der Kamerad, comrade.
 der Nachttisch, dessert.
 der Bumpernickel, (a kind of
 black bread.)

FEMININE.

die Suppe, soup, broth.

NEUTER.

das Brot, bread.
 das Schwarzbrot, black bread
 usually rye-bread.
 das Gebäck, baker's wares.
 das Backwerk, bread, rolls, cake,
 pies.

auftragen, serve.
 bereiten, prepare.
 gelten für, pass for, be regarded
 as.
 erheben, raise.
 helfen, help.
 lassen, have, cause.
 rauben, deprive (person in
 dative, thing in accusative).
 reichen, pass, hand.
 stimmen, vote.
 tranchieren (pr. transfrieren),
 carve.
 versuchen, try.
 versäumen, neglect, lose (by
 neglect).
 ich möchte gern, I should like.
 ich möchte lieber, I should
 prefer.
 was . . . auch, whatever.
 noch ein, another, one more.

<i>noch von, more of.</i>	<i>endlich, at last.</i>
<i>heiß, hot.</i>	<i>pünktlich, prompt.</i>
<i>echt, genuine.</i>	<i>ziemlich, tolerably, moderately,</i>
<i>gar, well done.</i>	<i>pretty.</i>
<i>dringend, urgent.</i>	<i>nachher, hereafter.</i>

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Wollen Sie so ¹ gut ¹ sein, mir das Brot zu reichen?
2. Möchten Sie lieber Weißbrot oder Schwarzbrot?
3. Ich will das Schwarzbrot noch einmal versuchen.
4. Ich mag die heißen Brötchen nicht. 5. Ich wollte, wir könnten von dem echten deutschen Pumpernickel bekommen.
6. Das habe ich auch oft gewollt.
7. Hätten Sie aber darum nach der Stadt gehen wollen?
8. Mein Kamerad will eben nach der Stadt reisen.
9. Er könnte uns also deutsches Gebäck bringen, wenn er die Güte haben wollte.
10. Ja, und er will in Backwerk ein Kenner sein.
11. Er möchte für einen Feinschmecker gelten, nicht wahr?
12. Wollen Sie noch von dem Braten?
13. Ich möchte noch ein bißchen von dem gar gekochten, wenn ich bitten darf.
14. Wollen wir jetzt den Nachttisch auftragen lassen?
15. Seien Sie so gut, denn ich will gleich nach Tisch auf die Universität.²
16. Was mag es dort so Dringendes geben?
17. Das möchte ³ ich selbst gern wissen.
18. Nun, ich will doch meinen Nachttisch nicht versäumen, was es auch sein mag.

¹ As before the following infinitive is not used in German.² supply gehen, not needed in German. ³ Here wollte would have about the same shade of meaning.

EXERCISE 21.

1. There you are at last ; we were just about to sit down to (the) table.
2. I will be more prompt hereafter.
3. But I wanted to finish my work.
4. Who cares-for¹ more² of the soup ?
5. I would like² a³ little³ more² if you please.
6. I have often wanted to ask how they (man) prepare this soup.
7. Well, I do³ not care-for³ [the] soups, anyway.
8. Let us have the roast served !⁴
9. Who will be willing to carve the roast ?
10. I would have liked to do it, but I would not wish to deprive you of the pleasure.
11. How would you like your roast, pretty well-done ?
12. I would prefer it moderately well-done, if you please.
13. Will (would) you be so kind as to pass me the bread ?
14. Will you have the white bread or the black bread ?
15. I would have liked to try the black bread, but it is all⁵ (gone).
16. This gentleman claims to have seen pumpernickel at the baker's.
17. Who may he⁶ be then ?
18. Whoever he may be, we should like to have the pumpernickel, shouldn't we ?⁷
19. Whoever⁴ wishes (to)³ vote² for-it,⁸ let-him-raise⁹ his hand.

¹ möchte. ² noch. ³ mag. ⁴ infinitive. ⁵ alle. ⁶ der. ⁷ nicht wahr. ⁸ dafür. ⁹ subjunctive.

VOCABULARY.

die Minute, minute.

bitten (um), ask (for).

w... hin ? where, whither

freilich, indeed, to be sure.

(go implied)

unterbrechen, interrupt.

überhaupt, anyway, in general.

CONVERSATION 20.

Bei Tische.

1. Möchten Sie gern ein Glas Wasser ?
2. Ja, ich möchte es sehr gern.
1. Wollen Sie nicht lieber eine Tasse Kaffee ?
2. Ich danke ; ich will lieber Wasser.
1. Mögen Sie denn diesen Kaffee nicht ?
2. Ich mag den Kaffee überhaupt nicht.
1. Was haben Sie vor einer Minute sagen wollen.
2. Ich habe nichts Besonderes sagen wollen.
1. Wollten Sie nicht um mehr Brot bitten ?
2. Freilich ja, aber ich möchte nicht unterbrechen.
1. Wollen wir nicht gleich den Nachttisch auftragen lassen ?
2. Ja, wollen wir das tun !
1. Wer mag denn das sein, dort am Ende des Tisches ?
2. Es mag wohl ein Bekannter von mir sein.
1. Will er mich kennen ?
2. Ja, mein Herr, er will Sie in England gekannt haben.
1. Wo wollen Sie eben hin ?
2. Ich wollte heimgehen.

Etc., etc.

READING 21.

Abschied.
Departure

Nach Ferdinand Raimund.

So leb' denn wohl, du stilles Haus !
Ich zieh' betrübt von dir hinaus :
go in grief

So leb' denn wohl, denn ich muß fort,
Noch nicht bestimmt an welchen Ort.
determined

So lebt denn wohl, ihr Freunde, ihr!
Ich ziehe traurig fort von hier;
sadly
Und find' ich einst ein groß'res Glück,
sometime
So denk' ich gern an euch zurück.

So leb' denn wohl, du Mädchen mein!
Soll ich von dir geschieden sein,
parted
So reiche mir die liebe Hand,
give
Dann schließen wir das Freundschaftsband.
form friendship's-tie

LESSON XXII.

MODAL AUXILIARIES: *Müssen, sollen.*

1. *Müssen* expresses compulsion, necessity from circumstances; *sollen*, moral obligation, constraint from the will of others.

2. *Müssen.*

Müssen expresses: 1. *outward obligation*; 2. *physical necessity*; 3. *logical necessity*.

1. Ich muß daran denken, "I have to think of it," "cannot help thinking of it."

2. Heute muß die Glocke werden, "To-day the bell must come into being"; Alle Menschen müssen sterben, "All men must die." Dieser Mann muß sterben, "This man must die" (it cannot be prevented); while, Dieser Mann soll sterben means "This man is to die" (is condemned to die).

3. Er muß mehr frische Luft schöpfen, wenn er gesund bleiben will, "He must breathe more fresh air if he wants to remain well." Daz̄ muß sein, "That must be."

REMARK. — As the past tenses of "must" are no longer used in English, the past tenses of müssen are to be translated by "had to," "was obliged or compelled to," "could not but" or "help."

3. Sollen.

Sollen expresses: 1. *intention* (by some one else than the subject); 2. *futurity, impending action*; 3. *moral obligation* (in preterit and pluperfect Subjunctive forms only); 4. *report, claim*.

1. Du sollst Gott lieben, "Thou shalt love God"; Was soll ich hier wohl hören? "What am I (intended) to hear here?

2. Sollte er noch kommen, sag' ihm dieses, "If he should still come, tell him this." Es soll bald geschehen, "It is to happen soon."

3. Ich sollte es tun, "I ought to do it;" Es hätte nicht so sein sollen, "It ought not to have been so."

4. Der Kaiser soll hier gewesen sein, "The emperor is said to have been here."

4. PARADIGM OF **müssen** AND **sollen**.

Infinitives.	Participles.	
müssen, sollen.	Present.	Perfect.
	(müssend, sollend).	gemuskt, gesollt, (müssen), (sollen).

Perfect Infinitives.

gemuskt haben, gesollt haben.

Present Indicative.	Present Subjunctive.
----------------------------	-----------------------------

S. 1.	muß	soll	müsse	solle
	müßt	sollst	müsset	sollest
	3.	muß	müsse	solle
P. 1.	müssen	sollen	müssem	sollen
	müßt	sollt	müsset	sollt
	3.	müssen	müssem	sollen

Preterit Indicative. Subjunctive.

mügte, sollte **mügte, sollte**

Perfect Indicative.

ich habe gemuskt (— müssen), gesollt (— sollen)
du hast " " " "

Perfect Subjunctive.

ich habe gemuskt (— müssen), gesollt (— sollen)
du habest " " " "

Pluperfect Indicative.

ich hatte gemuskt (— müssen), gesollt (— sollen)

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

ich hätte gemuskt (— müssen), gesollt (— sollen)

Futuro Indicative.

ich werde müssen, sollen
du wirst " "

Etc., etc.

Subjunctive.

werde müssen, sollen
werdest " "

Future Perfect Indicative.

ich werde gemußt, gefolkt haben
du wirst " " " etc.

Future Perfect Subjunctive.

ich werde gemußt, gefolkt haben
du werdest " " " etc.

Conditional.

ich würde müssen, sollen, etc.
(müßte) (sollte)

Perfect Conditional.

ich würde gemußt, gefolkt haben
(hätte — müssen, — sollen) etc.

VOCABULARY.

der Roman', novel.

hüten, keep, keep to.

der Zweifel, doubt.

warten (auf), wait (for).

die Zukunft, future.

verdienen, earn, deserve.

die Arbeit, work.

beliebt, popular.

das Strafgeld, fine.

gesucht, sought for.

aufhören, cease.

spätestens, at the latest.

bezahlen, pay.

wenigstens, at least.

begreifen, comprehend.

bar bezahlen, pay cash.

zurücktragen, return.

gerade, precisely.

gestehen, confess.

noch dazu, besides.

Wort halten, keep one's word.

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Was sollen wir heute Nachmittag tun? 2. Wollen wir nicht den neuen Roman lesen? 3. Ach ja, denn wir müssen denselben morgen zurücktragen. 4. Wir hätten das schon gestern tun sollen. 5. Ich muß gestehen, ich kann das nicht begreifen. 6. Das Buch soll sehr beliebt und gesucht sein. 7. Ich habe zwei Wochen darauf warten müssen. 8. Muß man nicht ein Strafgeld bezahlen, wenn man ein Buch zu lange behält? 9. Ohne Zweifel, und wir werden auch Wort halten müssen. 10. Nun, wir sollten es spätestens morgen früh zurücktragen. 11. Wer soll heute vorlesen? 12. Die Marie hat es tun sollen, aber sie muß das Zimmer hüten. 13. Sie soll doch recht frank sein. 14. So muß der nächste beste¹ lesen. 15. Der neue Schüler hätte es tun müssen, wenn er hier wäre. 16. Er muß das gewußt haben. 17. Er müßte in die Zukunft sehen können. 18. Er soll wenigstens morgen lesen müssen. 19. Wir werden jetzt schon aufhören müssen.

¹ ‘the most available person,’ ‘some one else.’

EXERCISE 22.

1. You will be obliged to copy your exercise this afternoon. 2. , Not , I ; I would indeed have had to do it, ,if , I ,had ,not ,already ,scopied ,mine ,this ,morning. 3. My comrade must work at-it the whole afternoon. 4. At least, he must if he is to finish his lesson. 5. I know, he is said to be a very diligent pupil. 6. You ought to have heard

him to-day in the class. 7. He must have been very diligent [in order] to earn such praise. 8. Shall I help you with your copying? 9. No, thank you, we are to do all the work ourselves. 10. Many a student has had to work at it three whole hours. 11. You ought to be thankful that you do not have to do it. 12. We are to begin a new book next week. 13. Do you all have to buy the book? 14. I have mine already; ^I, _{had-to}, ^{pay}, _{cash} (for) ^{it}, however. 15. It was to cost precisely \$2, but we are obliged to pay \$2.25. 16. It must have cost more than the merchant expected. 17. He _{is-said} (to) ^{have}, _{lost}, ^{money}, _{on-them}, ^{besides}.

¹ accusative without preposition.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

die Geduld, <i>patience.</i>	dauern, <i>last.</i>
erscheinen, <i>appear.</i>	allerdings, <i>indeed, to be sure.</i>
einstiegen, <i>get aboard.</i>	blos, <i>merely.</i>
vorbeigehen, <i>pass.</i>	zu Füße, <i>on foot.</i>
halten, <i>stop.</i>	der Tramwagen, <i>street-car.</i>

CONVERSATION 21. — Der Tramwagen.

1. Wie lange sollte man hier warten müssen?
2. Man sollte wohl gar nicht warten müssen.
1. Haben Sie gestern lange warten müssen?
2. Ja, ich mußte gestern eine halbe Stunde warten.
1. Man muß also blos Geduld haben?
2. Das muß man allerdings.

1. Wie oft soll der Wagen hier vorbeigehen?
 2. Alle 15 Minuten soll ein Wagen vorbeigehen.
 1. So hätte der Wagen keine halbe Stunde spät sein sollen?
 2. Gewiß nicht; der Wagen hätte schon vor 10 Minuten hier sein sollen.
 1. Es wird wohl etwas geschehen sein, meinen Sie nicht?
 2. Allerdings, es muß etwas geschehen sein.
 1. Was sollen wir denn machen?
 2. Wer es kann, soll nur zu Füße gehen.
 1. Wie weit müßte man zu Füße gehen?
 2. Man müßte wohl anderthalb Meilen laufen.
 1. Und wie, wenn ein Wagen gleich kommen sollte?
 2. Da müßten wir nur den Wagen halten lassen und einsteigen.
 1. Nicht wahr, es sollte nicht mehr lange dauern?
 2. Mein; es sollte ein Wagen sogleich erscheinen.
- Etc., etc.

READING 22.

Die kluge Maus.

Eine Maus kam¹ aus ihrem Loche und sah² eine Falle.
 „Aha,“ sagte sie, „da steht eine Falle! Die klugen Menschen!
 da stellen³ sie mit drei Hölzchen einen schweren Ziegelstein
 aufrecht,³ und an eines⁴ der Hölzchen stecken sie ein Stückchen
 Speck. Das nennen sie dann eine Mäusefalle! Ja, wenn
 wir Mäuschen nicht klüger wären! Wir wissen wohl, wenn
 man den Speck fressen will,⁵ klapps! fällt⁶ der Ziegelstein

herunter⁶ und schlägt⁷ den Näscher tot.⁷ Nein, nein! ich
kenne eure List!"

"Aber," fuhr das Mäuschen fort,⁸ „riechen darf⁹ man
schon¹⁰ daran. Vom bloßen Riechen kann die Falle nicht
zufallen, und ich rieche den Speck doch¹¹ für mein Leben
gern.¹² Ein bißchen riechen muß ich daran."

Es lief¹³ unter die Falle und roch¹⁴ an dem Speck. Die
Falle aber war ganz lose gestellt, und kaum berührte es
mit dem Näschen¹⁵ den Speck, klaps! so fiel¹⁶ sie zusam-
men,¹⁶ und das lästerne Mäuschen war zerquetscht.

Grimm.

¹kommen. ²sehen. ³aufrecht-stellen, set-up. ⁴an eines, on
one. ⁵is about to. ⁶herunter-fallen. ⁷tot/schlagen, kill. ⁸fuhr
fort, continued; from fort/fahren. ⁹dürfen. ¹⁰at least. ¹¹I tell
you, you must know, surely. ¹²für mein Leben gern, as dearly as
I love my life. ¹³laufen. ¹⁴riechen. ¹⁵little nose. ¹⁶zusam'men-
fallen.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

1. In German the passive voice of a transitive verb is formed by the union of the auxiliary werden with its past participle.

2. This is, properly speaking, no new conjugation, and the following paradigm will explain itself. It will be noticed that the participle geworden loses its prefix ge- in the compound tenses.

3. CONJUGATION OF *lieben* IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Present.

ich werde geliebt, I am loved.

Preterit.

ich wurde (ward) geliebt, I was loved.

Perfect.

ich bin geliebt worden, I have been loved.

Pluperfect.

ich war geliebt worden, I had been loved.

Future.

ich werde geliebt werden, I shall be loved.

Future Perfect.

ich werde geliebt worden sein, I shall have been loved.

Imperative.

werde (du) geliebt, be (thou) loved.

werdet (ihr) geliebt, be (ye) loved.

Infinitives.

geliebt werden, to be loved.

geliebt worden sein, to have been loved.

Participle.

geliebt werdend, being loved.

4. In German, the passive of *man baut das Haus* is, *das Haus wird gebaut*, “the house is (in the process of) being built.” *Das Haus ist gebaut*, “the house is built,” i. e. *finished*, is not the true passive, but indicates the condition resulting from the process, the *ist* being a copula, and *gebaut* a participial adjective in the predicate. The form with *werden* always expresses or implies a state of being acted upon by an agent in the tense indicated, but the form with *sein* never does.

5. The absence of a distinctive auxiliary for the passive voice in English causes ambiguity which

cannot arise in German. “The city was destroyed” may mean “They destroyed the city” (*Die Stadt wurde zerstört*) or “The city was already destroyed,” i. e. “had been destroyed some time before” (*Die Stadt war zerstört*). “Where is the book printed?” is true passive (*Wo wird das Buch gedruckt?*) “The book is already printed” expresses merely a state (*Das Buch ist schon gedruckt*).

6. In German, therefore, the true passive is always recognizable, and the only caution needed is, to render it into unambiguous English. But in rendering English into German, the student must learn first to test and recognize the true passive. The following are the tests: 1. If the English is in the progressive form, “The house is being built” (or “is building”); 2. If the agent is expressed, “The city was destroyed by the Romans”; 3. If the sentence under scrutiny when turned into an equivalent sentence in the active voice retains the same tense, “The city was destroyed” = “They destroyed the city,” is true passive, *Die Stadt wurde zerstört*; but “The city was destroyed” = “They had destroyed the city” is quasi-passive, *Die Stadt war zerstört*.

7. The passive voice of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally in German where the English uses an indefinite expression with the verbal noun, *Und heute Nacht wird hoch geschwiegzt zu Rüßnacht*,

“There will be high revelling to-night at Küssnacht”; Hier wird nicht geraucht, “No smoking here.”

8. The passive voice is less frequently used in German than in English. It is replaced, as in the French, by other expressions, especially the two following:—

1. Form with *man*: *Man hat den Schlüssel gefunden*, “They have found the key.”

2. The reflexive form: *Der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden*, “The key has been found.”

9. For the English passive infinitive German uses after *sein*, *sich lassen*, *bleiben*, *stehen* and *scheinen*, the form of the active infinitive, as *Was ist zu tun?* “*What is to be done?*” *Das lässt sich denken*, “That can be imagined” (lit. “lets itself be thought”).

VOCABULARY.

der Ball, *the ball*.

liefern, *deliver*.

der Pastor, *the pastor*.

erwarten, *expect*.

der Geistliche (adj. subst.), *the
clergymen*.

beleidigt, *offended*.

der Tenor', *the tenor*.

vollziehen, *perform*.

der Herr, *the gentleman*.

verheiratet, *married*.

die Hochzeit, *the wedding* (fes-
tivity).

auslassen, *omit*.

die Trauung, *the marriage
(ceremony)*.

ausdrücken, *express*.

die Braut, *the bride* (engaged
lady).

erst, *not . . . till*.

annehmen, *assume*.

kaum, *scarcely*.

sogleich, *right away*.

anders, *differently*.

lustig, *merry*.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Wir sind zu der Hochzeit eingeladen worden. 2. Von wem wurden Sie denn eingeladen? 3. Die Einladung wurde uns von der Braut geschickt. 4. Wird jedermann eingeladen? 5. Das steht¹ zu zweifeln, denn mein Freund der neue Tenor ist nicht eingeladen. 6. Nun ja, meine Einladung wurde erst heute morgen geliefert. 7. Vielleicht wird die seinige heute nachmittag geliefert werden. 8. Ich glaube aber nicht, daß er eingeladen wird. 9. Ist denn etwas darüber gesagt worden? 10. Man hat mir nur gesagt, daß sei² nicht zu erwarten. 11. Wird er nicht beleidigt sein? 12. Das läßt sich denken, aber es ist nichts zu tun. 13. Von wem wird die Trauung vollzogen (werden³)? 14. Die Schwester der Braut wurde von Pastor Braun getraut. 15. Ist sie denn auch verheiratet? 16. Man sagt, die jüngere Schwester möchte gern von demselben Geistlichen getraut werden. 17. Mir wurde das auch gesagt. 18. Es wird also kaum daran zu zweifeln sein.

¹ or ist. ² Subjunctive of indirect discourse. ³ As the present is often used for the future, this sentence has the same meaning with or without the 'werden.'

EXERCISE 23.

1. Who will be invited to the ball? 2. That cannot be¹ told yet. 3. The invitations are not yet all written. 4. They must be written right away. 5. I think they must really be written already. 6. No, they ,are-being ,written ,right-now.² 7. And when will they be delivered? 8. Some of them are

already delivered. 9. But [the] most (-of-them)
 , will ,not ,be ,delivered ,until ,to-morrow. 10. Am
 I to be invited? 11. I (mir) was not told that, but
 it is scarcely to be doubted. 12. Your old friend
 Charles must be invited.³ 13. How is that to be
 understood? 14. I mean (intend)⁴ to say: the
 gentleman cannot be omitted. 15. Might that not
 be expressed differently?⁵ 16. He should have
 been invited. 17. Doubtless he is invited. 18. Will
 (there) be singing at the ball?⁶ 19. I cannot say;
 by whom is the ball given? 20. It is given by
 some merry friends of mine.⁷ 21. Then (there) will
 surely be singing.

¹ active voice with man. ² soeben. ³ transl. with two meanings.
⁴ wollen. ⁵ active with man. ⁶ See ¶7, this lesson. ⁷ transl. of me.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

die Schriftstellerin, the au-	verfassen, compose.
thoress.	heutzutage, nowadays.
das Publikum, the public.	ſchon, enough (with reservation
erklären, explain.	or qualification).

CONVERSATION 22.—Romane.

1. Von wem wurde dieser Roman verfaßt?
2. Er wurde von einer Frau verfaßt.
1. Es werden heutzutage viele Romane von Frauen ge-
schrieben, nicht wahr?
2. Ja, es werden wirklich sehr viele von Frauen ge-
schrieben.
1. Werden die Romane dieser Schriftstellerin viel ge-
lesen?
2. Sie werden nicht so viel gelesen wie vor 10 Jahren.

1. Wie ist das zu erklären?
 2. Man kann es nicht ganz erklären.
 1. Von wem wurde „John Halifax“ geschrieben?
 2. Auch dieses Buch wurde von einer Frau geschrieben.
 1. Werden auf deutsch viele Romane von Frauen geschrieben?
 2. Nein, und ihre Werke werden nicht so viel gelesen.
 1. Sind nicht Wilhelmine v. Hillern und Wilhelmine Heimburg in Deutschland beliebt?
 2. Ach ja, sie sind schon beliebt.
 1. Aber sie werden nicht so hoch geschätzt wie Freytag, Dahn und Spielhagen?
 2. Nein, die größten Schriftsteller werden höher geschätzt.
 1. Wer wird als der größte deutsche Romanschreiber geschätzt?
 2. Seit Goethe, wird wohl Freytag von dem Publikum am höchsten geschätzt.
- Etc., etc.

READING 23.

Die Frau und die Henne.

Eine Frau hatte eine Henne. Diese Henne legte jeden Tag ein Ei. Aber die Frau war nicht damit¹ zufrieden. Sie wollte² jeden Tag zwei Eier haben, denn die Eier waren sehr teuer. Sie mästete³ daher⁴ die Henne, in der Hoffnung mehr Eier zu bekommen.⁵ Aber die Henne wurde⁶ zu⁷ fett, und legte keine⁸ Eier⁸ mehr.⁸

¹ with that.

² wanted.

³ fattened.

⁴ accordingly.

⁵ get.

⁶ became.

⁷ too.

⁸ no more eggs.

Gute Lehre.¹

Sadi, der weise Perser, saß eines Abends vertieft² bei dem Koran. Als er aufblickte,³ waren von seinen drei Söhnen zwei eingeschlafen⁴; der dritte aber sagte sehr selbstzufrieden⁵: „Sieh, Vater, wie die⁶ schlafen; ich aber — ich bete!“ — „Mein Sohn,“ entgegnete⁷ sanft der Vater, „besser ist's doch wohl zu schlafen, als stolz⁸ zu sein auf das, was man tut.“

¹ counsel. ³ looked up. ⁵ self-satisfied. ⁷ rejoined.
² absorbed. ⁴ asleep. ⁶ they. ⁸ proud.

LESSON XXIV.**VERBS.—REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL FORMS.****REFLEXIVE VERBS.**

1. Verbs are said to be used reflexively when they represent the action as exerted upon the subject, the object being a prcnoun which refers back to the subject ; as, *Ich freue mich* (lit. I rejoice myself), “I rejoice.”

2. Any transitive verb may be used reflexively. *Proper reflexives* are those which are used reflexively only, or which, though not always so used, have a different meaning in this use : as, *sich schämen*, “to be ashamed ;” *sich hüten*, “to beware,” from *hüten*, “to guard.”

3. The use of reflexives is much more common in German than in English, and they often occur where the corresponding reflexive construction is

not admissible in English: as, *Der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden*, "The key has been found"; *Es tanzt sich gut hier*, "It is good dancing here."

4. The reflexive pronoun of the first or second persons is the same as the personal. For the third person it is *sich* (dative or accusative), and the same for both numbers and all genders.

5. Although the verb proper presents no new forms in the reflexive use, the combined phrase is so un-English that the student should memorize and recite the paradigm, of which a synopsis follows.

6. CONJUGATION OF *sich freuen*, "TO REJOICE," IN THE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sich freuen, freute sich, sich gefreut.

Present.

<i>ich freue mich</i> , <i>I rejoice.</i>	<i>wir freuen uns</i> , <i>we rejoice.</i>
<i>du freust dich</i> , <i>thou rejoicest.</i>	<i>ihr freut euch</i> , <i>ye rejoice.</i>
<i>Sie freuen sich</i> , <i>you rejoice.</i>	<i>Sie freuen sich</i> , <i>you rejoice.</i>
<i>er freut sich</i> , <i>he rejoices.</i>	<i>sie freuen sich</i> , <i>they rejoice.</i>

Preterit.

ich freute mich, *I rejoiced.*

Perfect.

ich habe mich gefreut, *I have rejoiced.*

Pluperfect.

ich hatte mich gefreut, *I had rejoiced.*

Future.

ich werde mich freuen, I shall rejoice.

Future Perfect.

ich werde mich gefreut haben, I shall have rejoiced.

Imperative.

freue (du) dich, rejoice (thou) **freut (ihr) euch, rejoice (ye).**

Infinitives.**PRESENT.**

sich freuen, to rejoice.

PERFECT.

sich gefreut haben, to have rejoiced.

Participles.**PRESENT.**

sich freuend, rejoicing.

PAST.

sich gefreut (only in compound tenses).

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

7. An Impersonal Verb is one which represents an action as taking place without reference to any definite subject: as, es regnet, it rains.

8. *Proper Impersonals* are chiefly those which represent the operations of nature: as, es regnet, "it rains"; es hagelt, "it hails"; es blitzt, "it lightens."

9. Those verbs are also called impersonals, which are used in a manner resembling the proper impersonals: as, wie geht es, "how goes it?" es dürfstet mich, "I am thirsty"; es gelingt mir, dieses zu tun,

"I am successful in doing this"; es fragt sich, "it is a question."

10. The impersonal, like the reflexive verb, is much more common in German than in English.

11. It is to be noted that, as with the reflexive so with the impersonal verbs, there is no new mode of inflection of the verb proper.

VOCABULARY.

FEMININE.

- die Reise, *the journey.*
- die Zugluft, *the draught of air.*
- die Kleinigkeit, *the trifle.*
- sich fürchten, *be afraid (of) (vor).*
- wie geht es, *(how goes it), how are you?*
- zusammen, *together.*
- vorig, *previous.*
- deutlich, *clear.*
- mitbringen, *bring with, along.*
- es versteht sich (it understands itself), *of course.*
- wahrhaftig, *in fact.*
- stark, *severe(ly).*
- gegenüber, *opposite (after its object).*

besonders, especially.

um meinetwillen, (on account of me) for my sake.

um meinewegen, on my account.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>sich erkälten, take cold.</i> | } |
| <i>sich erinnern, remember.</i> | |
| <i>sich befinden (find one's self), do, be.</i> | |
| <i>sich bemü'hen, (exert one's self), take pains, put one's self out.</i> | |
| <i>sich setzen, take a seat.</i> | |
| <i>sich unterhal'ten, converse.</i> | |
| <i>sich erheben, recover.</i> | |
| <i>sich fühlen, feel.</i> | |
| <i>sich hüten, take care.</i> | |

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

NOTE 32.—Many reflexives are followed by a genitive in German, where the corresponding English construction has the objective case. Er erinnert sich jedes Wortes, "He remembers (is mindful of) every word." Ich erbarme mich seines Elendes, "I pity his misery."

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

<i>es dauert, it lasts.</i>	<i>es schneit, it snows.</i>
<i>es bläst, it blows.</i>	<i>es freut mich, I am glad.</i>
<i>es donnert, it thunders.</i>	<i>es liegt mir nichts daran, I do not care for it.</i>
<i>es blitzt, it lightens.</i>	<i>lieb sein, please (impersonal).</i>
<i>es wundert mich, I wonder.</i>	<i>herrlich, splendid.</i>
<i>es regnet, it rains.</i>	<i>lieb haben, like.</i>
<i>es schadet nicht or nichts (it harms not), it is no matter.</i>	
<i>es gefällt, it pleases.</i>	

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Es regnet nicht immer, wenn es blitzt und donnert.
2. Es blitzt fast niemals, wenn es schneit. 3. Ich kann mich nicht erinnern, Schnee und Blitz zusammen gesehen zu haben. 4. Erinnern Sie sich an den großen Schnee vom vorigen Winter? 5. Ich erinnere mich ganz deutlich daran. 6. Mein Bruder und ich befanden uns auf der ¹ Reise. 7. Mein Bruder besonders befand sich nicht sehr wohl. 8. Da erkältet man sich viel leichter. 9. Er hat sich wahrhaftig stark erkältet. 10. Es dauerte zwei Monate, bis er sich erholt hatte. 11. Es schadet nichts, wenn man sich wohl fühlt. 12. Es wundert mich nicht, daß Sie sich an die Reise erinnern. 13. Wie befinden Sie sich heute? 14. Wollen Sie sich nicht lieber hier aus der Zugluft setzen? 15. Bemühen Sie sich nicht um meinetwegen. 16. Es gefällt mir besser wo ich bin, und ich finde mich ziemlich wohl. 17. Es freut mich, das zu hören.

¹ Tr. 'a.'

EXERCISE 24.

1. It is no longer raining; it is beginning to snow.
2. I am not surprised at all. 3. The wind has¹ been¹ blowing¹ all² day from the north. 4. We must take care not to catch cold. 5. Do you catch cold easily? 6. Not when I am quite well. 7. Well, how are you to-day? 8. I am glad to say, I feel quite well. 9. Then you have recovered from the severe cold? 10. In fact I had taken a severe cold.
11. How does it come that you remember that?
12. I am pleased that you remember such a trifle.
13. You were on the train when you took cold.
14. I took-a-seat opposite you. 15. O yes, I remember you now very well.³ 16. I recovered very rapidly, of course. 17. May I close the window for you? 18. Please do not put yourself out on my account. 19. Then will you not take a seat here on this side? 20. I do not care for it, thank you.

¹ Present tense with *schön*. ² den ganzen ³ gut.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Augenblick, <i>the moment.</i>	leider, <i>unfortunately, I am sorry to say.</i>
die Weile, <i>the while, time.</i>	
schönen Dank, <i>many thanks</i> (lit. 'fair thanks').	herzlich, <i>cordially, greatly.</i> hoffentlich, <i>I hope.</i>

CONVERSATION 23.—Gesundheit und Wetter.

1. Wie befinden Sie sich heute morgen?
2. Schönen Dank, ich finde mich ziemlich wohl.
1. Hat es bei Ihnen in der Nacht geregnet?
2. Es hat nicht geregnet, aber ein bißchen gedonnert.

1. Fürchten Sie sich vor dem Donner?
2. Ach nein, ich fürchte mich gar nicht davor.
1. Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Vater?
2. Der Vater befindet sich leider nicht sehr wohl.
1. Erinnern Sie sich an meine kleine Schwester?
2. Ich erinnere mich ihrer ganz gut.
1. Würde es Ihnen Herrn Vater freuen, sie zu sehen?
2. Jawohl, es würde ihn gewiß herzlich freuen.
1. Wenn es Ihnen gefällt, so will ich sie mitbringen.
2. Das würde mir sehr lieb sein, aber Sie dürfen sich nicht zu sehr bemühen.
1. Ich meinte, er könnte sich eine Weile mit ihr unterhalten.
2. Allerdings, er unterhält sich gern mit Kindern.
1. Wann wird er sich erholen, meinen Sie?
2. Hoffentlich wird er sich bald erholt haben.
1. Wollen Sie sich nicht einen Augenblick setzen?
2. Ich danke, ich darf mich jetzt nicht setzen.
u. f. w.

READING 24.

Freut euch des Lebens.
Enjoy

Von Martin Usteri.

Freut euch des Lebens, weil noch das Lämpchen glüht,
while lamp burns

Pflückt die Rose, eh' sie verblüht.
pluck fades.

Man schafft so gern sich Sorg' und Mühl'.
seeks (for) himself care pains

Sucht Dornen auf und findet sie,
thorns

Und läßt das Veilchen unbemerkt,
violet unnoticed

Das uns am Wege blüht.

(Repeat first two lines as chorus).

Wenn scheu die Schöpfung sich verhüllt
shyly creation hides

Und laut der Donner ob uns brüllt,
above bellows

So lacht am Abend nach dem Sturm
Die Sonne uns so schön.

Freut euch des Lebens, u. s. w.

Wer Redlichkeit und Treue übt,
honesty loyalty practices.

Und gern dem ärmern Bruder gibt,
Bei dem baut sich Zufriedenheit

builds for herself content

So gern ihr Hütten an.
cottage

Freut euch des Lebens, u. s. w.

LESSON XXV.

ORDER OF THE GERMAN SENTENCE.

- The question for the student to ask himself in constructing a German sentence is not: Might I not, or might not a German, possibly say thus and so? but: What is the normal, average German way of saying this?*

2. Das von Ihnen bestellte Buch ist, einige Lese-spuren ausgenommen, gestern in guter Ordnung auf der Bibliothek angelkommen.

3. Learn this sentence ; observe the position of participles relative to words modifying them, also of the various elements of the predicate.

4. Every German sentence follows one of three orders, depending on the position of the *personal verb*, and accordingly designated as *Normal*, *Inverted*, or *Transposed*.

5. The *Normal* order seems to English people the natural one : the subject first, immediately followed by the verb. Er schickt mir das Buch, "He sends me the book."

6. In the *Inverted* order, the personal verb stands before the subject : Schickt er mir das Buch? "Does he send me the book?"

7. In the *Transposed* order, the personal verb is transposed to the end of the clause : Wenn er mir das Buch schickt, "If he sends me the book."

8. German and English do not differ greatly in the first two cases if we regard only the position of the personal verb. Only, in English, the progressive and the emphatic forms, separating a verb into auxiliary and participle or infinitive, make the difference seem greater at first sight.

I. Normal Order.

9. The Normal order is that observed in the principal clause of declarative sentences, the only exceptions being cases 1 and 5 of the Inverted order.

10. The following is the order of the main elements in the Normal sentence : —

1. The subject.
2. Simple predicate, or personal (inflected) verb.
3. Modifying adjuncts of the verb, if any.
4. Non-personal part of the verb, if any; and, if both are present, in this order : participle, infinitive.

Er schickt mir das Buch, "He sends me the book."

Mein Freund wird mir das Buch bald nach Hause zurückgeschickt haben, "My friend will soon have sent the book back home to me."

11. The Normal order is observed after the general connectives: *und*, *aber*, *allein*, *sondern*, *denn*, *oder*, and sometimes *entweder*.

II. Order of Minor Elements.

12. The arrangement of the elements of the German sentence is based upon the feeling that *the extremities of the clause are the important positions, receiving the natural emphasis*, with the balance in favor of the latter end.

1. On this ground the verb-stem in compound tenses takes its place at the end of the clause, while the subject stands at the beginning.

2. On the same principle any modifier of the verb that is to receive especial emphasis is placed at the beginning of the clause (Inverted order, case 1.)

A self-evident corollary of this rule is, that not more than one element should be thus placed.

13. In general, word-modifiers of the subject precede it even when themselves limited by phrases: „Ein von Vorurteilen freier Mann,“ “A man free from prejudices.” Phrases and clauses follow, as in English; „Ein Mann aus dem Volke,“ “A man of the people.” „Ein Mann, der täglich arbeitet,“ “A man who works every day.”

14. No true predicate elements may come between the subject and the personal verb in the normal order. “I always ask,” “He often waits,” are: „Ich frage immer,“ „Er wartet oft.“ However, various adversative adverbial conjunctions may occupy this forbidden position: „Er aber kommt nicht,“ „Sie, jedoch, gehen heim.“

15. The principle of *emphasis toward the end* seems to determine the order of the elements of the predicate.

1. A noun is more important than a personal pronoun and accordingly always follows.

2. An indirect object usually follows a direct object, perhaps because more important (the indirect object is commonly a person) or because it has a

closer relation to the verb. This is especially true if both objects are persons or both things.

It applies also to pronouns, so that: 3. A disyllable follows a monosyllable, and es and sich precede all other forms. But es, if abbreviated to 's, may follow.

4. However, the principle and not the rule determines the position. Whichever of two objects is to be emphasized will come last. Thus, if the question be: To whom did he introduce my brother? the answer will be: „Er hat Ihnen Bruder dem Advokaten vorgestellt.“ But if the question be: Whom did he introduce to the lawyer? the answer is „Er hat dem Advokaten Ihnen Bruder vorgestellt.“

5. An adverb of place or manner seems more important than one of time, hence the latter precedes: Er hat mich gestern dort gesehen. Er hat mich heute freundlich begrüßt. The adverb of time usually precedes a noun object while an adverb of place follows.

6. A phrase follows a single word.

16. Any word when especially modifying another stands next to it, usually before. „Er hat meinen Bruder nicht gesehen“ is a general negative of the proposition; „Er hat nicht meinen Bruder gesehen“ makes the „nicht“ limit especially „meinen Bruder,“ as though anticipating „sondern den Ihrigen,“ —“not my brother but yours.”

17. While the arrangement of the elements of the predicate between personal verb and participle or infinitive is often modified by other considerations, as those of euphony and the personal equation of the speaker, the above rules are sound and safe for the student to follow.

18. At the end, when both are present, the infinitive follows the past participle.

In this case in a subordinate clause the personal verb often stands just before the two, and *always*, if there are two infinitive forms at the end; *Er fragte, ob ich den Mann würde gesehen haben*, or „... gesehen haben würde.“ But „*Er fragte, ob ich nicht hätte gehen sollen*“, never „... gehen sollen hätte.“

19. In independent participial constructions the participle follows its own modifiers; *Von Neid erfüllt*, “Filled with envy,” *dieses zugegeben*, “this being conceded,” *den Arm gehoben*, “lift your arm.”

20. In the matter of the involution of clauses the best German follows the rule: Finish each clause before beginning another. Of course this does not apply to relative clauses. In this rule, an infinitive phrase with „*zu*“ expressed is treated as a clause.

21. Some words have different meanings according to their position, thus *allein mein Bruder*, “but my brother”; *mein Bruder allein*, “my brother alone.” *Selbst, schon, auch*, all mean ‘even’ when they precede another element, but following they mean respectively ‘... self,’ ‘already,’ ‘also’.

VOCABULARY.

<i>der Präsident, president.</i>	<i>entnehmen, take, derive (from, dative case in German).</i>
<i>die Meinung, opinion.</i>	
<i>die Ausgabe, expense.</i>	<i>drucken, print.</i>
<i>die Unkosten, expenses.</i>	<i>umsonst, in vain.</i>
<i>die Lesefur, (reading-trace), mark of wear.</i>	<i>beständig, constantly.</i>
<i>zureckkommen, get along.</i>	<i>sondern, but.</i>
<i>vorschießen, lend, advance.</i>	<i>bisher, hitherto.</i>
<i>versorgen, supply.</i>	<i>alles zusammengerechnet, reckoning all together, taking all in all.</i>

EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ein neuer Student ist gestern hier angekommen.
2. Er hat nicht genug Geld mitgebracht, um ein Jahr zu bleiben. 3. Er aber meint, er habe sehr viel. 4. Aber seine besten Freunde werden ihm gewiß Geld vorschießen.
5. Sein älterer Bruder hat ihn bisher mit Geld versorgt.
6. Allein dieser ältere Bruder wird ihm nicht viel länger helfen können. 7. Sie haben wohl diese Meinung der Zeitung entnommen? 8. Keine mir bekannte Zeitung hat jemals seinen Namen gedruckt. 9. Also,¹ Sie haben heute nichts über ihn² in der Zeitung gelesen? 10. Ich habe die Zeitung umsonst nach seinem Namen gelesen.
11. Um auf unseren Studenten zurückzukommen — er ist nicht nur arm, sondern auch ohne Freunde. 12. Er wird aber recht bald Freunde gewinnen, denn er ist fleißig und freundlich. 13. Ich werde den Studenten morgen früh dem Präsidenten vorstellen. 14. Und ich werde es ihm noch³ heute abend beim Abendbrot sagen.

¹ If also is followed by a pause, a comma, it has no effect on the sentence order, but if the connection is close it causes inver-

sion. ²the phrase *in der Zeitung* might quite as well precede *nichts über ihn*. ³'yet,' or, with *heute*, 'this very'.

EXERCISE 25.

1. These two¹ students have just come back from their brother's house. 2. This brother is not very rich, but he *has* often *advanced* them *money*. 3. He will not be able to do that much longer, for he has bought a newspaper. 4. I hear, [the] one of those boys has gained many friends in the city. 5. Even a man well-supplied-with-money² cannot do everything. 6. You might introduce the younger student to the president. 7. I shall be very glad to introduce him to the president, as-well-as³ to other friends of mine. 8. And you might have lent the elder student some of your books. 9. I have already lent them to him. 10. Reckoning everything together, they will be able to remain here a year more. 11. Yes, they will have enough money to pay all necessary expenses. 12. They both read constantly the books recommended-to-them.⁴ 13. I believe they will get along all right.

¹ *Zwei*, or *beiden*. ²Tr. both as adjective phrase before *Mann*, and as relative clause. ³*sowie*. ⁴cf. note 2.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

die Gelegenheit, opportunity. abholen, come for, go for.

die Bootsfahrt, boat-trip. bestellen, order.

eine Bootsfahrt machen, go boating. rudern, row.

die Partie', trip. weit, far.

eine Partie machen, take a trip. meinetwegen, for all I care.

CONVERSATION.—Die Bootsfahrt.

1. Sie wollen vielleicht einen Spaziergang machen?
2. Ich würde sehr gern einen Spaziergang machen.
1. Der Weg nach dem Flusse ist Ihnen nicht zu weit?
2. Ach nein, der Weg dorthin ist mir gar nicht weit.
1. Wir könnten dann eine kleine Bootsfahrt machen.
2. Eine Bootsfahrt auf dem Flusse wäre mir gerade recht.
1. Zwei Freunde von mir möchten die Partie mit uns machen.
2. Warum nicht? Ihre Freunde können das Boot rudern helfen.
1. Meine Freunde können aber nicht sehr gut rudern.
2. Sie haben hier eine Gelegenheit, rudern zu lernen.
1. Also ich soll sie einladen, mitzugehen?
2. Sie sollen meinetwegen, alle Ihre Freunde einladen.
1. Wir wollen um fünf Uhr bereit sein.
2. Ich werde schon vor fünf Uhr bereit sein können.
1. Das für uns bestellte Boot ist erst um fünf Uhr zu haben.
2. Das ist mir schon recht; also, um fünf Uhr am Flusse.
1. Aber, ich hole Sie hier um halb fünf ab.
2. Gut, und dann holen wir die andern ab.

Etc., etc.

READING 25.

Der Löwe und der Hase.

Ein Löwe würdigte¹ einen drolligsten² Hasen seiner nähern³ Bekanntschaft. „Aber ist es denn wahr,“ fragte ihn einst der Hase, „daß euch Löwen ein elender, krähender

Hahn so leicht verjagen⁴ kann?" „Allerdings⁵ ist es wahr," antwortete der Löwe, „und es ist eine allgemeine Anmerkung, daß wir großen Tiere durchgängig⁶ eine gewisse kleine Schwäche an⁷ uns haben. So wirst du, zum Beispiel,⁸ von dem Elefanten gehört haben,⁹ daß ihm¹⁰ das Grunzen eines Schweines Schauder und Entsetzen erweckt.“ „Wahrhaftig?¹¹ unterbrach¹² ihn der Hase. „Ja, nun begreif'¹³ ich auch, warum wir Hasen uns¹⁴ so entsetzlich vor den Hunden fürchten.“¹⁴

Lessing.

¹ deem worthy of, favor with. ² droll, comical. ³ nearer, intimate. ⁴ chase away, put to flight. ⁵ to be sure, certainly. ⁶ in general. ⁷ in ourselves. ⁸ more commonly, zum Beispiel. ⁹ So wirst du gehört haben, and you have probably heard. ¹⁰ in him. ¹¹ do you mean so? ¹² unterbre'chen. ¹³ begreife, comprehend. ¹⁴ sich fürchten, to be afraid.

LESSON XXVI.

ORDER OF THE GERMAN SENTENCE.

The Inverted Order.

1. *The inverted order differs from English in only one case. A relative pronoun is never omitted in German.*
2. *Das Buch, welches ich in der Hand habe, würde mir besser gefallen, hätte ich den Verfasser nie gesehen.*
3. Learn this sentence; note the position of the verb in each of its three clauses together with the kind and peculiarity of the clause.
4. The arrangement in the Inverted order differs from that in the Normal order only in the inversion

of the subject and personal part of the verb. It is necessary therefore to consider only *when* and *for what purpose* such inversion takes place.

The inverted order belongs to principal clauses, except case 2 below.

5. There are *five* distinct cases where the Inverted order is required:—

1. When any part or adjunct of the predicate, comprising often a subordinate clause, begins the sentence. *Mir hat er das Buch geschickt*, “He has sent the book to me.”

2. Often in conditional clauses, to give the effect of *wenn* when this word is omitted. *Schickt er mir das Buch, so tut er wohl*, “If he sends me the book, he does well.”

3. In Interrogative sentences. *Hat er mir das Buch geschickt?* “Has he sent me the book?”

4. In optative or imperative sentences; that is, when a command or desire is to be expressed. *Schicken Sie mir das Buch*, “Send me the book!”

5. For impressiveness; to express surprise, usually with *doch* or *ja*. *Hat er mir doch das Buch geschickt*, “Why, he has sent me the book!”

6. The co-ordinating connectives do not require inversion. Nor is there always inversion after the adverbial conjunctions, as *auch*, *doch*, *daher*, *also*.

7. It will be noted that only cases 1 and 5 differ from English usage, while even 1 has many parallels, as in "Never did I see the like."

8. In the Inverted order an object pronoun generally precedes a noun subject: *Gestern hat ihn mein Bruder gesehen.*

The Transposed Order.

9. The arrangement in the Transposed order differs from that in the Normal order only in the transposition of the personal verb to the end of the clause. It is necessary, therefore, to consider only *when* such transposition is required.

10. The Transposed order is observed in *dependent clauses*, introduced by the conjunctions *damit, daß, ob*, etc., or by *relatives*.

11. The following examples illustrate the Transposed order:—

1. *Ich weiß, daß er mir das Buch geschickt hat*, "I know that he has sent me the book."

2. *Als er mir das Buch schickte*, "When he sent me the book."

3. *Das Buch, welches er mir zurückgeschickt hat*, "The book which he has sent back to me."

12. The conjunction *daß*, when its representative is purely formal and dispensable in English, may be omitted. In this case the dependent clause has the Normal order; „*Er sagt, daß er genug habe*,“ but „*Er sagt, er habe genug*.“

13. The conjunction *wenn* may be omitted; in this case the dependent clause has the Inverted order, as in English: „*Wäre er stark,*“ “Were he strong.”

14. With these two sole exceptions the dependent clause always has the Transposed order.

VOCABULARY.

<i>der Mitschüler, fellow-pupil.</i>	<i>bedenken, consider.</i>
<i>der Topf, pot.</i>	<i>bessern, improve, better.</i>
<i>die Klasse, class.</i>	<i>vernachlässigen, neglect.</i>
<i>die Vorstellung, introduction.</i>	<i>verständig, sensible.</i>
<i>die Bekanntschaft, acquaintance.</i>	<i>übel nehmen, take amiss.</i>
<i>das Knistern, crackling.</i>	<i>offen, open.</i>
<i>ändern, change, alter.</i>	<i>gerade aus, point blank.</i>
	<i>obwohl', although.</i>

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Können Sie sich jetzt erinnern, wie das Mädchen mit der weißen Mütze heißt? 2. Das kann ich leider nicht, obwohl ich sie oft gesehen habe. 3. Vorgestern saß sie neben mir in der Klasse. 4. Da¹ hätten Sie ihren Namen doch von ihrem Buche lesen sollen. 5. Ließ sie ihr Buch doch² gar nicht offen liegen! 6. Hätte ich einmal eine solche Gelegenheit, so würde ich sie gerade aus um ihren Namen bitten. 7. Setzen Sie sich also heute neben sie. 8. Ich meine, daß Mitschüler und Mitschülerinnen doch keine Vorstellung brauchen. 9. Aber was soll ich machen, wenn sie es übel nimmt? 10. Das wird sie sicher nicht, denn sie scheint recht verständig zu sein. 11. Ihr Vater, welcher vor einigen Tagen hier war, hätte

sie doch den andern Schülern vorstellen sollen. 12. Hat sie ihr Vater denn niemand vorgestellt? 13. Ich glaube, er hat das ganz vernachlässigt. 14. Hätte der Mann es doch nicht vergessen! 15. Geändert fann es doch jetzt nicht werden. 16. Wer³ etwas so lange bedenkt, wird am Ende nichts tun. 17. Ich weiß, daß ich es nicht hätte bessern können.

¹ Then. ² 'Why,' or 'well,' at beginning. ³ 'Whoever,' or 'one who.'

EXERCISE 26.

1. Would you not like to make the acquaintance of that girl?
2. Is she the girl who wears the blue hat and laughs so loud?
3. A blue hat she certainly has, but whether she laughs loud I do not know.
4. Even if she does, you need not be afraid of her.
5. As¹ I came into the room this morning, I heard² a girl laugh.
6. To me³ it sounded like the crackling of thorns under a pot.
7. That was certainly not this girl, although she laughs a-great-deal.²
8. Introduce me to the girl anyway.³
9. Were I only sure of her name!
10. Why,⁴ he has actually forgotten her name!
11. No, that I certainly have not, but pronounce it I cannot.
12. You say you know her name, and yet you cannot speak it?
13. One cannot always pronounce everything that one can read.
14. Then⁵ do not try to introduce me to her.

¹ Als or wie. ² viel, recht viel. ³ doch or ohnehin. ⁴ Express by inversion, with doch. ⁵ Also, after verb,

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Schaden, harm.	<i>raten,</i> advise.
der Zeitverlust, waste of time.	<i>verlangen,</i> desire.
der Band, volume.	<i>ist Ihnen — gefällig,</i> would <i>you like</i> (salesman's phrase)?
die Geschichte, history.	<i>es ist mir recht,</i> it suits me.
die Note, note (in music).	schädlich, harmful.
die Noten, notes, music.	eben nicht, not exactly.
das Gedicht, poem.	etwa, perchance.
anrichten, do, cause.	

CONVERSATION 25.—Der Lesestoff.

1. Was für ein Buch verlangen Sie zu sehen?
2. Was für Bücher haben Sie denn hier?
1. Ist Ihnen vielleicht ein Roman gefällig?
2. Mir wäre ein guter Roman ganz recht.
1. Rät Ihr Herr Vater, daß Sie Romane lesen sollen?
2. Nein, der Vater rät, daß ich gar keine Romane lese.
1. Glaubt Ihr Herr Vater, daß die Romane schädlich seien?
2. Er glaubt eben nicht, daß sie viel Schaden anrichten.
1. Was hat er denn gegen sie, wenn ich fragen darf?
2. Er findet, daß das Lesen der Romane ein Zeitverlust sei.
1. Also wollen Sie etwa Gedichte oder Geschichte?
2. Ich wollte lieber Gedichte, welche man singen kann.
1. Wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle, so würde ich Heine's „Buch der Lieder“ kaufen.
2. Raten Sie wirklich dazu, so kaufe ich den ersten Band.

1. Soll ich nicht auch Schubert's Lieder für Sie bestellen,
damit Sie die Noten dazu haben?
2. Ja, bestellen Sie mir gefälligst Schubert's Lieder.
Etc., etc.

READING 26.

Der Star.

Der alte Jäger Moritz hatte in seiner Stube einen abge-richteten¹ Star, der einige Worte sprechen konnte. Wenn z. B.² der Jäger rief: „Stärlein, wo bist du?“ so schrie der Star allemal: „Da bin ich.“

Des Nachbars kleiner Karl hatte an dem Vogel eine ganz besondere Freude und machte denselben öfters einen Besuch. Als Karl wieder einmal hinkam, war der Jäger eben³ nicht in der Stube. Karl fing geschwind⁴ den Vogel, steckte ihn in die Tasche und wollte damit fortschleichen.⁵

Allein in eben⁶ dem⁶ Augenblide kam der Jäger zur Tür herein. Er dachte dem Knaben eine Freude zu machen und rief wie gewöhnlich: „Stärlein, wo bist du?“ — und der Vogel in der Tasche des Knaben schrie, so laut er konnte: „Da bin ich!“

C. v. Schmid.

¹ trained. ² zum Beispiel, for instance. ³ just then. ⁴ quickly.
⁵ slip away. ⁶ that very.

LESSON XXVII.

THE INFINITIVE.

1. *The verbal infinitive always stands after its modifiers; zu is used or not used almost precisely as to in English.*

2. Mein Freund wünscht, das Buch zu kaufen, um seinem Bruder zuvorzukommen, denn dieser spricht auch davon, es zu kaufen.
anticipate.

3. Learn this sentence ; note the position of the infinitives, the words on which they are dependent, and the use of *zu*.

4. The infinitive is used more in German than in English, since it corresponds to the entire scope of the English infinitive and in part to that of the participle.

Verbal Infinitive. I. With *zu*.

5. The infinitive is used with *zu* in German on the whole where 'to' is used in English, i. e., as *a.* complement of most verbs (of those not specified in the next section); *b.* of nouns; *c.* adjectives; *d.* the adverbs *zu*, *too*, and *genug*; and, *e.* of the prepositions 'ohne,' 'um' and 'anstatt': Er hoffte mich *zu* sehen; die Hoffnung mich *zu* sehen; er war begierig mich *zu* sehen; er kam *zu* spät (um) mich *zu* sehen; er ging, ohne mich *zu* sehen. It will be noticed that the English uses the participle in some of these cases.

6. After other prepositions than the three named the German uses the infinitive phrase, but in apposition with an anticipating pronoun (a *da-* compound), as Er dachte daran, mich einzuladen, "He thought of inviting me" (lit. He thought thereof,

or, of it, to invite me), or, the da- compound may be followed by a clause as *Er hoffte dadurch reich zu werden, daß er ein Buch schrieb*, "He hoped to become rich by writing a book."

7. In all the preceding cases the infinitive may have any variety of objects and adverbial modifiers, but not a subject other than the subject of the governing word, while the English may express such a subject, usually as a genitive. All phrases of the latter sort must in German be turned into clauses, as "The hope of my coming," *Die Hoffnung, daß ich kommen werde*; "He was eager for me to see you," *Er war begierig, daß ich Sie sehe*; "He thought of my inviting you," *Er dachte daran, daß ich Sie einladen werde* (or *könnte*); etc. However, if the verb be one that takes a double accusative, or supplementary objective, the infinitive may in this case have a subject, as *Er bat mich, Sie einzuladen*, "He asked me to invite you."

8. The infinitive with *zu*, and generally preceded by *um*, 'in order,' is used in adverbial phrases to express purpose or result. *Er kam, um zu fragen, ob ich gehe*, "He came to ask whether I was going"; *Er kam, um zu erfahren, daß ich schon fort sei*, "He came, only to learn that I was already gone."

9. The infinitive with *zu* may also be used as subject of a sentence under the same limitations as in 7. *Mich jetzt zu sehen, wäre unmöglich* for the more

common, *Es wäre unmöglich, mich jetzt zu sehen.* But “For him to go now would be absurd,” is to be rendered *dass er jetzt ginge, wäre lächerlich.*

10. After *haben*; *Was hast du zu tun*; after *sein* with passive sense: *Was ist zu tun?* “What is to be done?”

11. In syntax the infinitive phrase with *zu* is treated as a clause and is set off by a comma, no matter how close the connection in sense.

II. Without *zu*.

12. As complement of *werden*, the modal auxiliaries, and *sehen*, *hören*, *fühlen*, *heißen*, *machen*, *helfen*, *lassen*, *lehren* and *lernen*, the infinitive without *zu* is used in German as in English without ‘to.’ The nine verbs named take an accusative object of the person, which is at the same time the subject of the infinitive. *Ich hörte ihn singen*, *er lehrte mich singen*, etc. The use of the present participle of the governed verb in English, “I heard him singing,” does not change the meaning as a rule, and the German represents it by the infinitive.

13. The infinitive without *zu* may be used as subject of a sentence under the same restrictions as with *zu*. The form without *zu* is more suited to poetry and proverbs. Thus, *Sein, oder nicht sein*, “To be, or not to be”; *Leiern ist besser als feiern*, “It is better to fiddle than to be idle.”

14. After *gehen*, with *jagen*, *reiten*, *fahren*, *spazieren*, *schlafen*, etc., "to go hunting, riding," etc., and after *bleiben*, *finden*, and rarely a few other verbs with *stehen*, *sitzen*, etc., to express condition, where English uses the present participle, *Bleiben Sie sitzen*, "Remain sitting," "Keep your seat"; *Sch fand ihn schlafen*, "I found him sleeping."

15. In exclamations, *Sezt zurückgehen!* "Go back now!" and as substitute for the imperative in signs and official orders, *Nicht anrühren*, "Do not touch" ("Hands off"). *Einsteigen! Umsteigen! Aussteigen!* (Get in) "All aboard," (Get over) "Change cars," "Get out" (at end of trip).

16. After *lassen* frequently, and always after *sich lassen*, the governed verb has passive sense, *Er ließ den Knaben rufen*, "He had the boy called," *Das lässt sich denken* (lit. That lets itself be thought), "That can be imagined."

III. The Substantive Infinitive.

17. As substantive the infinitive is used much as the present participle in English is used. It is capitalized, is declined as a neuter noun and is limited by adjectives and genitives of nouns. In this way either a subject or an object may be expressed, but not both. *Das Singen dieser Lieder*, *das schlechte Singen dieses Mannes*; but scarcely *Dieses Mannes Singen dieser Lieder*, though this is

not impossible. Of course this substantive infinitive may occur in any relation: subject, object, or object of a preposition. *Er sprach vom Singen dieser Lieder*, "He spoke of the singing of these songs." This must not be confused with "He spoke of singing these songs," where the 'singing' has true verbal sense, and means *Er sprach davon, diese Lieder zu singen*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>die Weise, manner.</i>	<i>können . . . umhin, help, avoid.</i>
<i>das Verbrechen, crime.</i>	<i>plaudern, converse, chatter.</i>
<i>das Aussehen, looks.</i>	<i>empfehlen, recommend.</i>
<i>das Volkslied, popular song.</i>	<i>lassen, have, cause.</i>
<i>vorteilhaft, advantageous.</i>	<i>aufhören, stop, cease.</i>
<i>reizend, charming.</i>	<i>überhaupt, anyway, in any case.</i>
<i>steif, stiff.</i>	<i>einfach, simply.</i>
<i>gewöhnlich, common.</i>	<i>vermutlich, I suppose, supposedly.</i>
<i>nötig, necessary.</i>	<i>ungefähr, about.</i>
<i>auffallend, noticeable.</i>	<i>erwarten, expect.</i>
<i>verbieten, forbid.</i>	<i>auslachen, laugh at.</i>
<i>vorziehen, prefer.</i>	<i>nachlaufen, run after.</i>
<i>sprengen, burst.</i>	
<i>schweigen, say nothing, be silent.</i>	

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Das Singen solcher Lieder sollte verboten sein.
2. Es ist aber doch kein Verbrechen, solche Lieder (zu) singen.
3. Ich habe sie ja oft singen hören.
4. Hören Sie doch nur¹ einmal¹ das schlechte Singen dieses Mannes!
5. Nach Tische singen soll überhaupt nicht

vorteilhaft sein. 6. Ich würde es vorziehen, nach Tische spazieren zu gehen. 7. Wir würden den Mann gerne andere Lieder singen hören. 8. Ich werde die Lieder später von jemand Anderm singen lassen. 9. Der arme Mann würde selber nicht daran denken, die Lieder wieder zu singen. 10. Was Ihnen also mißfällt, ist seine Weise die Lieder zu singen? 11. Es ist genug, um einem die Ohren zu sprengen, von seinem Aussehen zu schweigen. 12. Ich kann nicht umhin zu lachen, wenn ich ihn anfangen sehe zu singen. 13. Jetzt aber, nicht mehr plaudern!

¹ Just hear once.

EXERCISE 27.

1. The man hopes to sing for us after supper.¹
2. But singing after meals² is not to be recommended.
3. Well, let-us-have³ him sing one song anyway.
4. His singing of⁴ popular-songs is-said to be very charming.
5. I heard⁵ him once sing several songs.
6. He remained standing a whole hour, and sang without stopping.
7. His manner of singing such songs is a little too stiff [in order] to please me.
8. Singing too loud is a common fault of⁶ young singers.
9. It is not necessary to be stiff in order to sing simply.
10. He spoke of singing⁷ after supper.
11. It is about time for him⁸ to begin to sing.
12. He does not expect to sing all the time.
13. He expects us to help him sing certain songs.
14. My father went walking when he

saw him coming. 15. I suppose he does not like singing. 16. He tried to sing, only to be laughed at. 17. For him⁸ to go walking now is quite noticeable. 18. Well, what's to be done? 19. Run after him?

¹Nach Tische, or more precisely, nach dem Abendessen. ²nach Tische. ³Lassen wir. ⁴von, or genitive alone. ⁵Perfect tense. ⁶bei, or genitive alone. ⁷i. e. of intending to sing. ⁸See this Lesson I, 9.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Reisende, <i>the traveler.</i>	machen, <i>act, play.</i>
der Beamte, <i>the official.</i>	lösen (of tickets), <i>buy.</i>
der Zugführer, <i>the conductor.</i>	abfahren, <i>depart.</i>
der Schaffner, <i>the brakeman.</i>	säumen, <i>delay, neglect.</i>
der Passagier ¹ , <i>the passenger.</i>	einsperren, <i>shut in.</i>
die Bequemlichkeit, <i>comfort.</i>	erraten, <i>guess.</i>
die Art, <i>manner, fashion.</i>	treffen, <i>hit.</i>
das Coupe, <i>the compartment.</i>	alles, <i>all, everybody.</i>
länger, <i>considerable.</i>	draußen, <i>abroad.</i>

CONVERSATION 26.—Die Reise.

1. Erwarten Sie jemals in Deutschland zu reisen?
2. Ich hoffe es wenigstens zu tun.
1. Sie wissen, der Reisende hat draußen nicht so viel Bequemlichkeiten als hier zu Lande?
2. Ich erinnere mich, das gehört zu haben, aber wie ist das zu verstehen?
1. Sie kennen also die deutsche Art nicht, längere Reisen zu machen?
2. Ich kenne die deutsche Art zu reisen gar nicht.

1. Wie soll ich anfangen, um es Ihnen zu erklären?
2. Machen Sie den Beamten, lassen Sie mich den Reisenden sein.
1. Nun also, es ist Zeit abzufahren. Sie werden Ihr Billet schon gelöst haben?
2. Jawohl, ich weiß genug, um ein Billet zu kaufen.
1. Wenn alles fertig ist, so ruft der Zugführer: Alles einsteigen!
2. Da werde ich nicht säumen einzusteigen.
1. Der Schaffner sperrt die Reisenden in das Coupé ein; bald heißt es: Gießen aussteigen!
2. Wollen Sie die Güte haben, mir das zu erklären?
1. Ist es Ihnen zu viel, das zu erraten?
2. Meint es wohl, die Passagiere nach Gießen sollen aussteigen?
1. Getroffen! Etc., etc.

READING 27.

Lebewohl.**Volkslied.**

Morgen muß ich fort von hier
 Und muß Abschied nehmen;
 leave take
 O du allerschönste Bier!
 charmer
 Scheiden, das bringt Grämen.
 grief

Da ich dich so treu geliebt,

When

Über alle Maßen,

measure

Soll ich dich verlassen,

Soll ich dich verlassen.

Wenn zwei gute Freunde sind,

Die einander kennen,

Sonn' und Mond bewegen sich,

move (from their courses)

Ehe sie sich trennen.

Noch viel größer ist der Schmerz,

Wenn ein treu verliebtes Herz

In die Fremde ziehet,

foreign lands

In die Fremde ziehet.

LESSON XXVIII.

THE PARTICIPLES.

1. *The participle is preceded by its modifiers; the chief concern is how to render English participles by other constructions.*

2. *Indem er meine Stimme hörte, kam der im Hearing my voice () the in-Schatten stehende Jüngling plötzlich hervorgelaufen und the-shade-standing youth came suddenly running forth and griff den Räuber entschlossen an.*
attacked the robber decidedly

3. Read this sentence carefully; note the position and form of the German participles, also where English might use other participles. The participles are much less used in German than in English, as is explained in detail below.

I. Present Participle.

4. The present participle may be used as an attributive adjective, but as predicate adjective only in a few cases, and these where the participle has become more or less independent, such as *reizend*, 'charming,' *rasend*, 'frantic,' etc. As has been noted already, the so-called 'progressive form' of the verb does not occur in German. Thus we may say, *die aufgehende Sonne*, "the rising sun," but not *die Sonne ist aufgehend*. Unlike the English, the German attributive adjective may even be limited by a phrase, as *die hinter dem Berge sinkende Sonne*, lit. "the behind-the-mountain-sinking sun," or by an object, as *der ihn beleidigende Ausdruck*, lit. "the him-offending expression." In official and encyclopedia style this condensation is often carried to great lengths.

5. Of course this participial adjective can be used substantively, a noun being understood, as *der Reisende*, 'the traveler,' *das Beleidigende*, 'the offensive' (act or expression). But otherwise the participle is not used substantively, being replaced as verbal noun by the infinitive. See Lesson XXVII.

6. A few present participles may be used as adverbs, as *auffallend*, 'strikingly,' *ausnehmend*, 'exceptionally.'

7. The great majority of cases in which the present participle in English takes the place of a clause must in German be rendered by a clause. Thus the adjective construction, "A man carrying a heavy load," must in German be turned into a relative clause: *Ein Mann, welcher eine schwere Last trägt* (or *trug*); and the many cases in which the participial phrase is an adverbial element of time, cause or manner, such as "Meeting me this morning, he asked me to dine," "Not knowing what else to do, I accepted," "Holding tight with both hands, he kept from falling," should all be turned into clauses with the proper conjunction introducing the finite verb. In classic poetry these constructions with the participle are not infrequent in German, but modern prose avoids them.

8. Finally the absolute participial construction, as "My friend not liking the letter, I wrote another," must always be rendered as a clause, "Since my friend did not like the letter," etc.

II. Past Participle.

9. The past participle finds its chief use in the formation of the perfect tenses and of the passive voice.

10. But it is also used freely as adjective, both as attribute and as predicate, and, through the adjective, as substantive: *Er ist eingeladen*, *die Eingeladenen*, etc. In the same way it is also used as an adverb, and several past participles serve as conjunctions and prepositions: *gesetzt*, 'granted,' *ausgenommen*, 'excepted' or 'excepting,' etc.

11. Adjective and adverbial phrases with the past participle are much more common than with the present, but for most of these constructions in English German prefers a clause. Thus "A man beloved by everybody," may be rendered *Ein von jedermann geliebter Mann*, but a relative clause is much better. So in "Offended by the expression, I withdrew," while we may say *Durch den Ausdruck beleidigt, zog ich mich zurück*, the clause *Da ich durch den Ausdruck beleidigt war*, etc., is perhaps more common. With the past participle even the absolute construction is permitted, though less common. *Die Arbeit vollendet, begaben wir uns zur Ruhe*, better *als die Arbeit vollendet war*, etc.

12. After *kommen* and *gehen*, the past participle in German represents the mode of motion or the gait, as *Er kam gelaufen*, "He came running."

13. The past participle alone is used as a substitute for the imperative in military and other lordly commands, as *Aufgepaßt*, "Pay attention"; *Nicht lang gesiebert*, "Do not rest long," etc.

III. Future Passive Participle.

14. The present participle with *zu* constitutes a future passive participle, as an attributive adjective only, in such constructions as, *Eine nicht zu verzeihende Dummheit*, "A stupidity not to be pardoned."

VOCABULARY.

<i>der Erfolg</i> , success, result.	<i>täuschen</i> , disappoint.
<i>der Plan</i> , plan.	<i>durchtrieben</i> , thorough.
<i>die Erklärung</i> , explanation.	<i>erwachsen</i> , grown up.
<i>ansatmen</i> , take breath.	<i>verblüfft</i> , dazed, confused.
<i>ausmachen</i> , arrange.	<i>einsilbig</i> , laconically.
<i>einsehen</i> , see, recognize.	<i>ununterbrochen</i> , uninterrupted.
<i>erwähnen</i> , mention, refer to.	<i>edly</i> .
<i>funkeln</i> , sparkle.	<i>gesetzt</i> , supposing, granted.
<i>horchen</i> , listen.	<i>gelassen</i> , calm, cool.
<i>hervorbringen</i> , produce.	<i>nützlich</i> , } useful.
<i>lächeln</i> , smile.	<i>behülflich</i> , } helpful.
<i>schlachten</i> , settle.	

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Vor Freude lächelnd kam ¹ der junge Mann seinem Freunde entgegen.¹
2. Mit funkelndem Auge erzählte er von seinem Erfolge.
3. Der in einfachen Worten Erzählende hatte bald vollendet.
4. Aufatmend horchte er auf die zu erwartende Antwort.
5. Der Freund sah etwas verblüfft aus.
6. Von der Nachricht getäuscht, antwortete er nur kurz und einsilbig.
7. Der Jüngling fing wieder an und plauderte² ununterbrochen fort.²
8. „Gesetzt,“ sagte er, „ich hätte es anders gemacht, was

dann?" 9. Der Erwachsene ging weg, aber bald kam er zurückgelaufen. 10. "Betrogen hast du mich, du durchtriebener Schelm!" 11. "Nicht so laut geschrieen!" bat der Andere. 12. Dann fing der Ältere etwas gelassener wieder an. 13. Bald war die Sache ausgemacht und geschlichtet.

¹came to meet. ²chattered on.

EXERCISE 28.

1. A young man smiling-with-joy¹ came running into the house. 2. Taking-breath², he began to tell of his plan. 3. The (man)-addressed looked calmly at the narrator. 4. Dazed and disappointed the younger-(man) ceased talking. 5. Why had his narrative² not produced, the³, result², to-be-expected? 6. The grown-up friend seemed to feel [himself] cheated. 7. He exclaimed: "Supposing I were a thorough rascal; would I have done that?" 8. The younger man, seeing his error, began excusing himself. 9. He spoke of³ wishing³ to be useful to others. 10. This he had hoped to do by⁴ writing¹, the³, book², referred-to. And thus he went on talking incessantly. 11. The explanation being⁵ finished, the young man ceased talking. 12. "Spoken like a man," exclaimed the other; "take a seat!"

¹Tr. both as adjective phrase before Mann and as relative clause. ²Tr. 'that narrated. ³See Lesson XXVII, I, 6. ⁴See Lesson XXVII, I, 6. ⁵See this lesson I, 8.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Briefträger, <i>postman.</i>	gestehen, <i>confess.</i>
die Briefmarke, <i>postage-stamp.</i>	vorzeigen, <i>show.</i>
die Unze, <i>ounce.</i>	ehrlich, <i>honest.</i>
die Gebühr, <i>fee, charge.</i>	frankiert, <i>postpaid.</i>
das Couvert, <i>envelope.</i>	umgehend, <i>by return mail.</i>
aufheben, <i>suspend.</i>	umstehend, <i>on the reverse side,</i>
aufschieben, <i>postpone.</i>	<i>reverse.</i>
entrichten, <i>pay.</i>	übertrieben, <i>exaggerated.</i>

CONVERSATION 27.—Der Briefträger.

1. Haben Sie den erwarteten Brief empfangen?
2. Nein, den erwarteten Brief habe ich nicht empfangen.
1. Kam der Briefträger geritten oder gefahren?
2. Keins von beiden; er kam gegangen.
1. Ehrlich gestanden, hat er nichts gebracht?
2. Nun ja, ehrlich gestanden, er hat einen Brief gebracht.
1. War der Brief frankiert oder nicht?
2. Der mir überbrachte Brief war frankiert.
1. Vorgezeigt; ich möchte den Brief ansehen.
2. Vorzeigen darf ich ihn nicht.
1. Werden Sie den Brief umgehend beantworten?
2. Nicht umgehend, aber nächstens; aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben.
1. Was ist da umstehend auf dem Couvert geschrieben?
2. Ich habe die umstehende Seite nicht betrachtet.
1. Ist das nicht eine reizende Briefmarke?
2. „Reizend“ kommt mir etwas übertrieben vor.
1. Was ist die zu entrichtende Gebühr für einen gewöhnlichen Brief?
2. Die Gebühr auf einen Brief bis zu einer halben Unze ist zwei Cent. Etc., etc.

READING 28.

Das zerbrochene Ringlein.

Bon Eichendorff.

In einem kühlen Grunde
valleyDa geht ein Mühlenrad.
millwheel|: Mein' Liebste ist verschwunden,
vanished

Die dort gewohnet hat.:|

Sie hat mir Treu' versprochen,
Gab mir ein'n Ring dabei;|: Sie hat die Treu' gebrochen,
Mein Ringlein sprang entzwei. :|
broke in twoIch möcht' als Spielmann reisen
minstrel

Weit in die Welt hinaus,

|: Und singen meine Weisen,
lays
Und gehn von Haus zu Haus.:|

Hör' ich das Mühlenrad gehen,

Ich weiß nicht was ich will;

|: Ich möcht' am liebsten sterben,
Da wär's auf einmal still. :|

LESSON XXIX.

DETAILS OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Since the Subjunctive in German has more distinct forms than in English, it is necessary to employ more care in learning its forms and its uses.

2. Der Präsident meinte, der junge Mann sehe aus, als ob er noch Hoffnung hätte, daß er die Stelle erhalten könne.

3. Learn this sentence; examine the subjunctives, note on what each is dependent and the nature of the uncertainty implied.

4. As indicated in Lesson XIX, the governing factor in the use of the Subjunctive Mood is the intent of the speaker or writer. If he wishes to express uncertainty, doubt or negation, the verb in the subordinate clause is Subjunctive, but if he wishes to treat the proposition in question as a fact, the verb is Indicative.

5. However, a series of practical rules can be given to aid the student in doubtful cases.

6. The Subjunctive Mood is used :

1. After certain verbs, adjectives or nouns with the senses : affirmation, doubt, denial, question, fear, hope, wish, command, belief, feeling, report. After some of these words it is less easy to regard a subordinate clause as implied fact, but it is possible after any of them, hence the final test is the

intent of the speaker. This makes it possible to express in German many fine shades of meaning that are not to be given in English with so few words. *Ich befürchte, daß er frank sei* expresses no more than the fear; *Ich befürchte, daß er frank ist* implies a conviction to this effect. *Ich verlange, daß er heimgeht*, expects the result much more confidently than *Ich verlange, daß er heimgehe*. After words indicating ‘report’ the construction is commonly called “indirect discourse,” but is subject to the same rule as after other governing words. *Man sagt, daß er frank sei* leaves the matter as report; *Man sagt, daß er frank ist* assumes the report to be true.

Note that the governing word may be a noun or an adjective quite as well as a verb. *Die Furcht, daß er frank sei*; *Ich bin begierig, daß er gehe*.

The effect of one governing verb in the indirect discourse may continue throughout a long paragraph, whereas in English it is necessary to repeat the verb of report with almost every new sentence. The governing verb may even be implied from the beginning, as *Er hätte das getan?* i. e. “Do you say that he did that?”

2. After certain conjunctions: *als wenn* and *als ob* invariably; *damit*, *um daß* and *daß*, ‘in order that’, usually; *ob* and *wenn*, ‘whether’, ‘if’ usually in past tenses, less frequently with present tenses. *Wenn* introducing a pure (hypothetical) condition is followed by the indicative.

3. As the Conditional, expressing the hypothetical conclusion after various sorts of conditions, both the forms with *würde* and the shorter subjunctive forms used as substitutes (see Lesson XIX).

4. As the optative Subjunctive, expressing a wish, which may usually be interpreted as dependent on some verb or conjunction understood. *Wäre ich nur reich!* (so *würde ich glücklich sein*); *Ach (ich wollte), daß ich reich wäre!* *O hätte ich das nicht gesagt!* etc.

5. The Subjunctive is used for the Imperative. *Gehen wir*, "Let us go"; *Er gehe*, "Let him go."

VOCABULARY.

<i>der Glaube, belief.</i>	<i>tun, act.</i>
<i>die Aufgabe, lesson, exercise.</i>	<i>übereinstimmen, agree.</i>
<i>die Lektion, lesson.</i>	<i>unweise, unwise.</i>
<i>die Ferien, holiday(s).</i>	<i>strenge, severe.</i>
<i>das Studium (pl. -ien), study.</i>	<i>rash, fast, swift.</i>
<i>brauchen, } need.</i>	<i>vorgerückt, advanced.</i>
<i>dürfen, } need.</i>	<i>souft, otherwise, besides.</i>
<i>fordern, take, require.</i>	

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Schreiben wir schneller, damit wir nicht die letzten seien!
2. Wären wir doch schon mit der Aufgabe fertig!
3. Wenn wir es auch wären, so kommt gleich eine andere darauf.
4. Wir müßten aber bei der nächsten nicht so rasch arbeiten.
5. Der Lehrer hoffte, daß wir eine längere Aufgabe nehmen könnten!
6. Das wäre nur halbe

Arbeit, meinte¹ er. 7. Er hätte gewöhnlich viel vorgerücktere Schüler gehabt. 8. Haben Sie ihn gefragt, ob sie gewöhnlich vier Studien haben? 9. Er weiß schon,² daß diese Aufgabe lang genug ist, wenn der Schüler sonst drei Studien hat. 10. Tut er doch,³ als hätten wir sonst nichts zu schreiben! 11. Ich wollte, wir könnten einmal Ferien haben. 12. Mein Vater wünscht, daß ich der erste in der Klasse sei. 13. Aber wenn du es bist (wärst⁴), so kann (könnte⁴) ich es nicht sein. 14. Dein Vater hat wohl gehört, daß der Lehrer strenge ist (sei)⁴. 15. Es ist doch wohl besser, er bleibe bei diesem Glauben. 16. Ich werde ihn wissen lassen, daß er es nicht ist.

¹ Lit. 'thought,' but implying that the thought was expressed, hence translate 'said.' ² well enough. ³ Why; see Lesson XXVI, 2, 5. ⁴ Translate a second time, using the verbs in parentheses.

EXERCISE 29.

1. The teacher asked whether anyone in the class had written all the sentences. 2. Some of the pupils thought that the exercise was too long. 3. All agreed that it was pretty difficult. 4. The teacher demanded ,that ,they ,give ,two ,hours (to) ,the ,work. 5. If this were not enough, he would¹ make the lesson shorter. 6. The pupils acted as though they were really disappointed. 7. If they had not been so² they would probably have said so². 8. "If any one have not time," said the teacher, "he need but³ say so²." 9. "Even if we were more

advanced," said some, ²"we ¹could ³scarcely ⁶do
⁴that ⁵much." ¹⁰ The teacher feared that he had
 been unwise. ¹¹ The pupils knew that he had been
 so ². ¹² If one lesson takes two hours, [then] ⁵³, four
², will ⁶take ⁴eight ⁵hours. ¹³ I am sure that no one
 can give that much time (to) his studies. ¹⁴ If
 only the day had thirty hours! ¹⁵ He needs at
 least forty-eight hours in order that he finish his
 work.

¹ Future subjunctive (indirect discourse dependent on "he
 said" implied). ² es. ³ nur. ⁴ so. ⁵ so.

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Schirm, shade, sunshade or umbrella.	reden, speak, talk.
der Regenschirm, umbrella.	verderben, spoil, ruin.
der Moskito (pl. -os), mosquito.	stören, disturb.
quito.	befürchtet, anxious.
plaudern, talk, chatter.	darnach, that way. schweigen, keep still.

CONVERSATION 28.—Der Spaziergang.

1. Sagten Sie, daß Sie fertig seien?
2. Nein, ich sagte, daß ich nicht fertig sei.
1. Gehen wir nach dem Flusse spazieren!
2. Gehen wir doch lieber nach dem Walde!
1. Wünschen Sie, daß der Bruder mitgehe?
2. Es ist wohl besser, er bleibe zu Hause.
1. Wird er uns stören, wenn er mitgeht?
2. Er wird uns nicht stören, wenn er ruhig bleibt.

1. Soll ich ihn fragen, ob er ruhig bleiben kann?
2. Ja, fragen Sie ihn nur, ob er schweigen kann.
1. Verlangen Sie denn, daß er gar nicht rede?
2. Ich verlange wenigstens, daß er nicht plaudere.
1. Sieht es nicht aus, als ob es regnen werde?
2. Es sieht freilich darnach aus, aber gehen wir doch!
1. Tragen Sie doch einen Schirm, damit Ihr Hut nicht verdorben werde!
2. Damit Sie nicht besorgt seien, nehme ich einen Regenschirm mit.
1. Haben Sie gehört, daß es im Walde Moskitos gebe?
2. Ich habe es zwar gehört, aber ich glaube nicht, daß es wahr sei.

Etc., etc.

READING 29.

Ein Brief.

Mein lieber Großsohn!

Ich danke Dir für deinen Brief. Dadurch hast Du mir eine Freude gemacht. Noch lieber möcht' ich Dich selbst hier haben. Ich wollte, Du könnest fliegen und kämest zu uns, wie eine Lerche. Wir wollten Dich recht pflegen² und lieb haben. Ich habe mich recht erschreckt,³ daß Du voran sithest in der ersten Bank und bekommst immer Nummer 1. Denn ich bin bange,⁴ Du bist zu fleißig. — Die liebe Großmutter möchte auch gern nach Barmen kommen, und sie hat Dich und alle sehr lieb und möchte Euch gern sehen und küssen, ihr kleinen Spielvögel. Es ist uns sehr leid,⁵ daß

wir Euer Liedchen an Vaters Geburtstag nicht hören konnten. Aber es ist zu weit, und die Töne sind wohl unterwegs erfroren oder vom Winde verweht. Ich wollte, ich könnte einmal mit Euch singen und spielen und kochen.

Dein Großvater,

F. Rummacher.

¹mögen; ich möchte noch lieber, I should like still better.
²recht pflegen, take good care of. ³ich habe mich recht erschreckt, I was greatly startled. ⁴ich bin bange, I am afraid. ⁵Es ist uns sehr leid, we are very sorry.

LESSON XXX.

THE INDECLINABLES.

1. *The indeclinables, especially ja, schon, doch, wohl and auch, constitute much of the distinctive atmosphere of colloquial German. The student should cultivate a feeling for them and use them on every possible occasion.*

2. *Unser Nachbar ist doch wohl schon angelommen;*
why! surely
wir sehen ja dort das Licht aus seinem Fenster herüber-
scheinen.

3. Learn this sentence; note the meaning of each particle and its place, comparing with the English.

Under Indeclinables will be grouped such general instructions as can be given regarding adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions and interjections.

I. Adverbs.

4. The adverb is indeclinable, but has forms of comparison, which have been given, Lesson XVI. There is no general ending, like the English -ly, to form adverbs from adjectives. Every adjective in its uninflected form may serve as adverb if the sense permits.

5. A few adverbs may retain the final -e, which was once the common termination of most adverbs: ferne, lange, frühe, but this -e is not required.

6. For ordinal adverbs the termination of a strong genitive is used: erstens, zweitens, firstly, secondly, etc.

7. Adverbs of direction are formed with the suffix -wärts, -wards, as heimwärts, 'homewards,' rückwärts, 'backwards.'

8. Sehr means 'very' when limiting adjectives and adverbs, but modifying verbs it means 'very much.' "I love him very much" is not to be translated Ich liebe ihn sehr viel, but Ich liebe ihn sehr.

9. Wohl is not the adverb 'well' = 'in a satisfactory manner (this is gut), nor is it the American introductory 'Well,' with its many shades of meaning (this is German nun), but it represents 'to be sure,' 'indeed,' 'I suppose,' and other similar expressions, often implying an objection or a doubt held in reserve. Ich kenne ihn wohl, "I do indeed know him, — but —." Du kennst ihn wohl? "I suppose you know him?"

10. *Schon* has, aside from its precise sense, 'already,' shades like the English 'all right,' 'to be sure,' indicating an unwilling concession. *Er ist schon alt genug*, "Oh yes, he is old enough," "He is old enough, to be sure" (the whole falling inflection on the word *alt*). In such cases *wohl* and *schon* approach each other closely. Only frequent hearing of these particles will give their fine shades, but the student who wishes to talk like a German must learn them.

11. *Ja* is confirmatory with implied surprise at another's ignorance or neglect. *Sie sind ja spät* (stress on *spät*), "Why, you're late"; or (stress on *sind*), "Well, you *are* late (stress on *are* implying "Don't deny it"). But again, *Sie sind aber spät* is expressed by "Well, you *are* late"; implying only surprise. *Ja* may greatly strengthen an admonition, *Tue das ja*, "O *do* that"; *Tue das ja nicht* (stress on *ja*), "Don't do that for anything."

12. *Doch* has, aside from its common sense, 'after all,' many nice shades, adding strength to an appeal, or implying surprise. It may be substituted in the sentences of the preceding paragraph, in the first (stress on *spät*) with scarcely appreciable change of meaning; in the second (stress on *doch*), "You're late after all"; in the third, with either of two meanings, "Do it anyway," or "O come, do it"; in the fourth (stress on *tue*), "Please don't do that."

13. *Auch* means ‘also,’ ‘too,’ in which case it usually follows the word it especially modifies, though it may precede if this does not cause confusion with the second meaning ‘even,’ which it has usually at the beginning of a sentence. *Er hat es auch gesagt*, “He said it too”; but *Auch er hat es gesagt*, “Even he said it.” For ‘even if,’ *auch* may follow the subject of the clause, *Wenn er es auch gesagt hat*, “Even if he said it.”

II. Prepositions.

In Lessons V to VII the common prepositions have been given which govern the accusative, the dative, and the accusative or dative.

14. A few common prepositions govern the Genitive case. They are *wegen*, ‘on account of,’ *während*, ‘during,’ *statt* or *anstatt*, ‘instead of,’ and *um . . . willen*, ‘for the sake of.’ When *wegen* governs a personal pronoun it occurs in combination, following the stem of the pronoun with *-et* added: *meinetwegen*, *seinetwegen*, *ihretwegen*, *unseretwegen*. The same treatment is observed with *um . . . willen*: *um meinewillen*, etc.

15. The prepositions afford innumerable idioms and are among the most difficult features of German to acquire because the difficulties cannot be classified and learned by rule. The pupil should learn to look for many of these idioms in the dictionary.

in connection with the verb with which they are commonly used, if not found under the head of the preposition itself. A few of the more familiar words are discriminated in the Appendix, p. 249 ff. Reference to these is needed in preparing the Exercise of this Lesson.

III. Conjunctions.

16. The co-ordinating conjunctions und, aber, entweder, oder, allein, sondern, denn, have no effect on the construction in German. Pupils have difficulty often in understanding why denn, 'for,' is in this group, as it seems so closely related to 'because,' weil. Observation will show that the sentence is always practically finished before a denn-clause; the denn-clause is supplementary or parenthetical. Aber may stand wherever in English the word 'however' may be introduced. Free and discreet use of aber is quite characteristic of a German style.

17. Subordinating conjunctions are many; the commonest are discriminated in the Appendix, p. 255. They indicate that the verb should be at the end of the clause. They introduce mostly adverbial elements of place, time, cause, manner and degree, but also objective elements.

18. Adverbial conjunctions are very numerous. They cause inversion in the clause to which they belong, being more truly adverbs than conjunctions.

Yet they show a certain relation to the preceding clause or sentence.

1. *dann*; *damals*; *dann* is consecutive = 'next' or 'thereupon.' *Damals* is absolute 'then,' 'at that time.'

2. *Da*: *hier*: *dort*; *hier* is 'here' when contrasted with there. *Dort* is 'there,' 'yonder.' *Da* is used for 'here,' when not contrasted, quite as much as *hier*. *Ich bin da*, "I am here." *Da* has also temporal sense = *darauf*, 'thereupon.' *Er kam nicht, da ging ich heim*, "He did not come, thereupon (or so) I went home."

3. *Nun*: *jetzt*; *nun* is consecutive and logical, 'now,' 'next.' *Jetzt* is absolute 'now,' 'at this time.' Thus we discriminate between *dann* and *damals*. But the phrase 'now and then' = occasionally, is *dann und wann*.

4. *Doch*: *noch*; *doch* is adversative and emphatic. *Noch* is temporal and additive. Confusion is caused here by the double meaning of English 'still' and 'yet,' both of which render either *doch* or *noch*. But the pupil must learn that 'yet' and 'still' at the beginning of the English clause have one meaning, = *doch*, and anywhere else another, = *noch*, whereas the German words are not restricted in position. *Noch ein* means 'another,' i. e., 'one more,' *Ich will noch ein Glas*, "I want another (one more) glass," while *ein anderes* means 'an other,' i. e., 'a different.'

IV. Interjections.

19. Ach corresponds to English ‘Ah !’ and also to ‘O !’ It expresses many shades from joy to grief. Ach ja ! “O yes indeed!” Ach, daß ich fort wäre ! “O that I were away from here !” Ach Gott, “O God !” or “O Lord !” (the latter shade an exclamation of mere surprise or comical dismay).

Germans use the name of God with much more freedom than is permitted in English, and yet without irreverence. Thus the above exclamation, or Du lieber Gott ! or the asseveration bei Gott may be heard without intended offence from ladies and Christians.

20. To make a better call the words Feuer and Mord are prolonged into Feuerjo ! and Mordio !

21. Hui ! (pron. hwee) indicates an instantaneous action. Pfui (pron. pfwee) means ‘for shame !’ ‘shame !’

VOCABULARY.

der Fleiß, <i>industry, care</i> ; mit Fleiß, <i>on purpose</i> .	das Automobil', <i>automobile</i> .
der Nachbar, <i>neighbor</i> .	das Vorhaben, <i>purpose</i> .
der Hauptlehrer, <i>head-master</i> , <i>principal</i> .	das Schulgebäude, <i>school build-</i> <i>ing</i> .
die Angst, <i>anxiety</i> .	das Unglück, <i>misfortune, ac-</i> <i>cident</i> .
die Möglichkeit, <i>possibility</i> .	das Rathaus, <i>courthouse</i> .
die Gefahr, <i>danger</i> .	erreichen, <i>reach, get to</i> .
die Kälte, <i>cold</i> .	angehen, <i>begin, open</i> .
die Weise, <i>way, manner</i> .	beruhigen, <i>calm, compose</i> .

gefährlich, dangerous.

schützen, save, protect.

sorgen für sich, take care of oneself.

telephonieren, telephone.

überfah'ren, run over.

vermeiden, avoid.

werden (aus), become (of).

unvorsichtig, careless.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. Entweder das Mädchen muß zur Schule gegangen sein oder es wird auf seinem Zimmer sein. 2. Sie ist aber vor einer Stunde an dem Fenster vorbeigegangen.
3. Hat sie denn nichts von ihrem Vorhaben gesagt?
4. Sie hat nicht nur nichts davon gesagt, sondern sie hat mich mit Fleiß vermieden.
5. Obwohl sie ohne unser Wissen aus dem Hause ging, so habe ich doch ihretwegen keine Angst.
6. Sie wird mit den andern Schülern um zwölf Uhr von der Schule kommen.
7. Ach, Sie sagen das nur so, damit ich keine Angst habe.
8. Ich vergehe ja vor Angst; liegt denn das Schulgebäude weit von hier?
9. Ich denke an die Möglichkeit, daß sie von einem Automobil überfahren worden wäre.
10. Vor diesem Unglück hat es doch hier keine Gefahr!
11. Das mag schon sein, aber wenn es auch keine Gefahr hat, so will ich doch für mich sehen.
12. Sie wollen aber doch bei dieser Kälte nicht in die Stadt gehen?
13. Und wenn ich nur bei dem Nachbar fragen wollte, wann die Schule angeht?
14. Während Sie sich auf diese Weise beruhigen, will ich nach der Schule telephonieren.
15. An den Hauptlehrer natürlich; wer weiß, ob sie nicht jetzt dort ist?

EXERCISE 30.

1. Oh dear¹, who knows what has become of that girl? 2. Of what girl are you speaking then? 3. As if you did not know! 4. Why, my daughter has either gone down town or to school. 5. To us, however², she said nothing about it. 6. Although she had her old dog with her, yet we have great fear³ of some accident. 7. O pshaw⁴! however dangerous it may be in the city, she will take care of herself all-right.⁵ 8. In order that you may be saved from this anxiety, I will telephone to her teacher. 9. But what if she has not yet gotten to the school-building? 10. When you telephone, do⁶ ask the teacher when the school begins. 11. I will not only telephone, but I will go myself to the school. 12. She may be ever so careless, but she will surely⁷ come safely home. 13. I will telephone from the schoolhouse, whether she has been there or is on the way home. 14. That will relieve me very (much), even though there is no real danger. 15. Well, ³I-suppose ²you ²know where the school is. 16. One must go past the court-house. 17. Even if I did not know, yet I could ask. 18. But a man, even the best of them, likes to avoid questions. 19. How you talk!⁸

¹Ach Gott! ²aber. ³Angst. ⁴Ach was! ⁵schon. ⁶ja, after verb. ⁷doch. ⁸Was Sie sagen!

VOCABULARY FOR THE CONVERSATION.

der Zweck, <i>purpose.</i>	der Hochschullehrer, <i>high-school teacher.</i>
der Schriftsteller, <i>author.</i>	urteilen, <i>judge.</i>
die Muttersprache, <i>native tongue.</i>	tüchtig, <i>thorough.</i>
die Universität, <i>university.</i>	

CONVERSATION 29.—Vom Studium der Sprache.

1. Warum studieren Sie denn überhaupt Deutsch?
2. Ich studiere Deutsch, damit ich es sprechen lerne.
1. Erwarten Sie es jemals wie ein Deutscher zu sprechen?
2. Das nun wohl nicht, allein ich will es sprechen, so gut ich kann.
1. Haben Sie denn gar keinen andern Zweck dabei?
2. Freilich, ich will nicht nur sprechen, sondern auch lesen lernen.
1. Und zu welchem Zwecke wollen Sie lesen können?
2. Ich will ja die großen deutschen Schriftsteller in ihrer Muttersprache lesen.
1. Wollen Sie auf einer deutschen Universität studieren?
2. Ich möchte auf einer deutschen Universität studieren, oder doch wenigstens in Deutschland reisen.
1. Bei wem haben Sie bisher Deutsch studiert?
2. Ich habe es bei einem Hochschullehrer aus Harvard studiert.
1. Er war wohl ein tüchtiger Lehrer?
2. So weit ich urteilen kann, ist er ein sehr guter Lehrer.

1. Und Sie wollen weiter studieren, während Sie hier sind?
2. Jawohl, ich habe die Sprache lieber, je länger ich sie studiere. Etc., etc.

READING 30.

An den Mond.

Volkslied.

Guter Mond, du gehst so stille
 In die Abendwolken hin;
 Bist so ruhig und ich fühle,
 Daß ich ohne Ruhe bin.

Traurig folgen meine Blicke deiner stillen, heitern¹ Bahn:²
 O wie hart ist mein Geschick, daß ich dir nicht folgen kann!

Guter Mond, dir will ich's sagen,
 Was mein banges Herz³ kränkt,³
 Und an wen, mit bittern Klagen,
 Die betrübte⁴ Seele denkt.

Guter Mond, du kannst es wissen, weil du so verschwiegen⁵
 bist,

Warum meine Tränen fließen und mein Herz so traurig ist.

Dort, in jenem kleinen Tale,
 Wo die dunkeln Bäume stehn,
 Nah' bei jenem Wasserfalle,
 Wirst du eine Hütte sehn;

Geh' durch Wälder, Bäch' und Wiesen,⁶ blicke sanft durch's
 Fenster hin,

So erblickest⁷ du Elisen, aller Mädchen Königin.

¹ cheerful. ² path. ³ grieves. ⁴ troubled.
⁵ discreet. ⁶ meadows. ⁷ perceive.

APPENDIX.



A P P E N D I X.

RULES FOR GENDER.

1. Masculine are: Names of male living beings unless ending in -*hen* or -*lein*, including the noun agent in -*er*: *Knabe*, boy, *Lehrer*, teacher; names of seasons, months and days, and most stones: *Sommer*, *Montag*, *Kiesel*, flint, *Ries*, gravel; polysyllables in -*ig*, -*ich*, and -*ing*, *König*, king, *Kranich*, crane, *Hering*, herring.

2. Feminine are: names of female living beings unless ending in -*hen* or -*lein*: *Frau*, woman, *Henne*, hen; most names of trees and flowers, *Ulme*, elm, *Eiche*, oak, *Nelke*, pink; most polysyllables ending in -*e* not names of male living beings and not with the prefix *Ge-*; all polysyllables in -*ei*, -*ie*, -*heit*, -*keit*, -*schaft*, -*uld*, -*ung*, -*in*, -*if*, -*ion*, -*tät* (most of which mark abstract nouns): *Partei*, party, *Kopie*, copy, *Schönheit*, beauty, *Fertigkeit*, skill, *Freundschaft*, friendship, *Geduld*, patience, *Duldung*, toleration, *Sängerin*, singer, *Logik*, logic, *Lektion*, lesson, *Rarität*, rarity.

3. Neuter are: all nouns ending in -*hen* and -*lein*, regardless of the natural gender, names of metals and of most materials, most names of countries and cities, the infinitive when used as a substantive, words and signs not properly nouns when used substantively. Most nouns with the prefix *Ge-* if not names of male

creatures, most nouns in -nis, -tum, and -sal : *Mädchen*, girl, *Knäblein*, boy, *Gold*, gold, *Tuch*, cloth, *Gehen*, going, das „*Wenn*,” the ‘if.’

4. Compound nouns, with very few exceptions, have the gender of the last element: das *Land*, das *Vaterland*.

DOUBLE GENDER, DOUBLE DECLENSION, DOUBLE MEANING.

In many nouns, usually words of less frequent occurrence, the gender is not fully established. The authority of any good dictionary may be accepted.

I. But when meanings are differentiated along with gender or declension, attention must be paid to the latter also.

Die *Alp*, *alp*, der *Alp*, *nightmare*.

Das *Band*, *ribbon*, *bond*, der *Band*, *volume*.

Das *Bauer*, *bird-cage*, der *Bauer*, *peasant*.

Das *Bund*, *bundle*, der *Bund*, *tie*, *knot*, *league*.

Das *Chor*, *choir* (part of a church), der *Chor*, *chorus*.

Das *Erbe*, *inheritance*, der *Erbe*, *heir*.

Das (also der) *Gift*, *poison*, die *Gift*, *dowry*.

Das (also der) *Gehalt*, *salary*, der *Gehalt*, *contents*.

Die *Heide*, *heath*, der *Heide*, *heathen*.

Die *Hut*, *guard*, der *Hut*, *hat*.

Die *Kunde*, *knowledge*, der *Kunde*, *customer*.

Das *Mart*, *marrow*, die *Marf*, *boundary*.

Die *Mast*, *fodder*, der *Mast*, *mast*.

Das *Messer*, *knife*, der *Messer*, *measurer*.

Das Reis, twig, der Reis, rice.

Das Schild, sign, der Schild, shield.

Die See, sea, ocean, der See, lake.

Das Steuer, rudder, die Steuer, tax.

Das Stift, foundation, der Stift, peg.

Das Tau, rope, der Tau, dew.

Das Teil, share, der Teil, fraction, part.

Das Tor, gate, der Tor, fool.

Das Verdienst, pay, der Verdienst, merit.

Das Wehr, dam, die Wehr, defense.

2. The declension of these words differs according as their gender throws them into different classes, as **das Schild, die Schilder, der Schild, die Schilder.**

3. A considerable number of nouns have two plurals, but without difference of meaning. In the following the difference in the plurals coincides with a difference of meaning :

Das Band, tie, pl. Bande; ribbon, pl. Bänder.

Das Ding, pl. Dinge, general sense; pl. Dinger, in pity or contempt.

Das Gesicht, vision, pl. Gesichte, face, pl. Gesichter.

Das Land, estate, pl. Lande; country, pl. Länder.

Das Licht, candle, pl. Lichte; light, pl. Lichter.

Das Wort, connected speech, pl. Worte, vocables, pl. Wörter.

Der Mann, vassal, soldier, pl. Männer; man, pl. Männer.

Der Christ, Christian, pl. Christen; Christ(us), Christ, has no pl., but the singular is generally given with full Latin forms: Christus, Christi, Christo, Christum.

USES OF THE ARTICLE.

1. The definite article is used in German and not in English: With abstract nouns and with names of materials in general assertions: *Die Lüge ist häßlich, Falsehood is odious*; *Die Butter ist teuer, Butter is dear*—but not in proverbs, as *Not bricht Eisen, Need breaks iron* (i. e. necessity knows no law); so also with class nouns in the plural: *Er liebt die Vögel, He loves birds*; with Vater, Mutter, and Christian names used in the family: *Der Vater ist da, Father is here; Wo ist der Karl? Where is Charles?* with proper names when preceded by an adjective, but not in apostrophe: *der kleine Karl, little Charles, der alte Blücher, old Blücher*; with names of seasons, months and days: *der Sommer ist hier, summer is here, der Juli ist heiß, July is hot*—but not when the month is preceded by a date, as *der vierte Juli, the Fourth of July*, and note here also the absence of preposition or genitive; with feminine names of countries: *die Schweiz, Switzerland*; in many idiomatic phrases, as in *der Schule, in school, im Himmel, in heaven*.

2. The definite article serves often instead of a possessive adjective with names of parts of the body, the clothing and the kindred of the subject, because the possession is clearly implied: *Er hat den Hut, das Bein, die Mutter verloren, he has lost his hat, his leg, his mother.* Sometimes the article is accompanied by a dative of possession: *Ihm ist die Mutter gestorben, His mother (lit., the mother to him) has died.*

3. The definite article takes the place of the indefinite article in the distributive expression = per : *Zehn Pfennig das Pfund, ten pence a pound, einmal die Woche, once a week.*

4. The indefinite article is omitted, though used in English, before the names of occupations and ranks when used to characterize in the predicate a person already identified : *Mein Bruder ist Kaufmann, my brother is a merchant.*

EXCEPTIONS TO CLASS I., FIRST DECLENSION.

1. The following nouns have the nominative either -e or -en, but belong now to this class. However, those marked * have also a genitive without -s, which gives them thus a possible weak declension throughout :

*Frieden, peace, *Funken; spark, Gedanke(n), thought, Glauben, belief, Haufen, heap, Name(n), name, Samen, seed, Schaden, injury, Wille(n), will. Wille, Name, Gedanke* very rarely have the nominative n.

2. The following add n throughout the plural :

Bauer, peasant, Gevatter, 'cousin,' Muskel, muscle, Stachel, sting, Better, cousin, and colloquially Pantoffel, slipper, Stiefel, boot.

3. Latin derivatives in -or, take -s in the singular and may be placed in this class, but take -en in the plural ; der Doktor, des Doktors, die Doktoren.

4. *Bayer, Bavarian, and Pommmer, Pomeranian, are weak throughout.*

EXCEPTIONS TO CLASS 2, I. DECLENSION.

1. The following masculine monosyllables have their plural in -er, with Umlaut, according to class 3:

Mann, man, Gott, God, Leib, body, Geist, spirit, Wurm, worm, Wicht, wight (chiefly in *Wösewicht*, villain), *Walb, forest, Strauch, bush, Strauß, bouquet, Ort, place, Hand, rim*. The first six can be remembered by similarity and contrast in meaning.

2. The following masculine monosyllables belong to the weak declension; they are grouped so as to make memorizing easier: *Fürst, prince, Prinz, prince, Graf, count, Held, hero, Herr, lord, sir, Mensch, man, Christ, Christian, Mohr, Moor, Narr, fool, Tor, fool, Lump, vagabond, Geck, sop, guy, Pfau, peacock, Spatz, sparrow, Bär, bear, Hirt, shepherd, Schenf, cupbearer*.

3. The following masculine monosyllables are strong in the singular but weak in the plural: *Dorn, thorn, Mast, mast, Nerv, nerve, Psalm, psalm, See, lake, Sporn, spur, Staat, state, Strahl, beam, ray, Zins, rent, interest*.

EXCEPTIONS TO CLASS 3, I. DECLENSION.

1. The following monosyllabic neuters take -e instead of -er in the plural: *Jahr, year, Haar, hair, Paar, pair, Rohr, reed, Chor, choir, Tier, animal, Heer, army, Meer, ocean, Wehr, dam, Boot, boat*. It will be noted that they have nearly all a long vowel followed by -r.

2. The following are weak in the plural: *Bett, bed, Herz, heart, Ohr, ear*. *Herz*, has the irregular singular, *Herz, Herzens, Herzen, Herz*.

USES OF THE GENITIVE CASE.

The Genitive Case indicates 1. possession, kinship, authorship, general relationship, verbal object or subject, partitive relation, etc., mostly relations expressed by the possessive or by 'of' in English. 2. It is the object direct or indirect of certain verbs, mostly reflexive, as *schonen*, *to spare*, *sich erinnern*, *to remember*, *bedürfen*, *to need*, *sich schämen*, *to be ashamed of*, *berauben*, *to deprive of*. 3. The object of certain adjectives, as *bewußt*, *conscious*, *fähig*, *capable*, *gedenk*, *mindful*, *voll*, *full*, *würdig*, *worthy*. 4. The object of a few prepositions, as *wegen*, *on account of*, *während*, *during*, *statt*, *instead of*. 5. The Genitive sometimes expresses manner or time, as *abends*, or *des Abends*, *in the evening* (customary or repeated), *meines Wissens*, *within my knowledge*, *keineswegs*, *by no means*.

USES OF THE DATIVE CASE.

The Dative Case represents: 1. the indirect object of most transitive verbs, the one to or for or against whom the action is done: *Der Mann gab der Tochter das Buch*, *The man gave his daughter the book*; 2. the principal object of many verbs that in English are regarded as transitive and govern some with and some without a preposition, the chief meanings being approach, favor, gratitude, resemblance and their opposites, as *Ich danke dem Manne*, *I thank the man*, *Antworten Sie dem Vater*, *Answer your father*, *Das Buch gehört der Tochter*, *The book belongs to the daughter*;

3. a relation of interest more remote than that commonly ascribed to the indirect object, especially with impersonal verbs and phrases, *Es geht dem Vater gut*, *The father is prospering*, *Das bricht der Mutter das Herz*, *That is breaking mother's heart* (dative of possession), *Mach' mir keine Dummheit*, *Commit no stupidity* (ethical dative); 4. the complement of many adjectives with the meanings given in 2: *Das ist mir angenehm*, *That is agreeable to me*, *Er ist mir lieb*, *I am fond of him*; 5. the object of certain prepositions, as *mit*, *aus*, *nach*, *von*, *zu*, and of certain others when indicating a state of rest, as *in*, *vor*, *an*, etc., *Der Vogel saß auf dem Baume*, *The bird was sitting on the tree*.

USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

The Accusative Case represents: 1. the direct object of a transitive verb, *Er hat den Hut*, *He has the hat*; and also, 2. the supplementary object of certain transitive verbs, as *lehren*, *nennen*, *fragen*, *Er lehrte den Schüler die Musik*, or *Er lehrte den Schüler singen*, *He taught the pupil music*, or *taught him to sing*; *Man nennt den Mann den Lustigmacher*, *They call the man the merrymaker*; 3. the cognate object of certain verbs, *Er spielt ein gewagtes Spiel*, *He is playing a bold game*; 4. the complement of certain adjectives, which may also take the Genitive, *Es ist einen Taler wert*, *It is worth a dollar*; 5. the object of certain prepositions, as *für* and *durch*, and of certain others when indicating motion toward, as *in*, *auf*: *Saß auf*

den Baum, seated itself upon the tree; 6. specific time, in dates, as den 1sten Juli, July first (date of a letter); 7. definite measure of time, space, etc., Es dauert eine Stunde, It lasts an hour, Er geht eine Meile, He is going a mile; 8. absolute construction, den Tee vorbei, tea (being) past.

NOTE to 3.—Not every verb that takes a double object in English does so in German. ‘They chose him captain’ is in German Sie wählten ihn zum Hauptmann.

VERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE CASE.

1. With Genitive only: bedürfen, need, erwähnen, mention, gebrauchen, make use, gedenken, recall, mention, entbehren, dispense with, harren, wait for, lachen, laugh, schonen, spare, spotten, mock, vergessen, forget. All of these but spotten, lachen und harren may take the Accusative instead. Spotten and lachen take the Accusative after über, and harren the Accusative after auf.

2. With Genitive as indirect object: anklagen, accuse, berauben, rob, entlassen, dismiss, entsetzen, remove, dispossess, überführen, convict, überzeugen, convince, versichern, assure, würdigen, think deserving, and the following reflexives, in which the reflexive pronoun is the direct object: annehmen, adopt, take up with, bedienen, make use, bemächtigen, get possession, enthalten, abstain, erbarmen, take pity, freuen, enjoy, erinnern, remember, schämen, be ashamed. Freuen and schämen may also take the second object in the Accusative after über, erinnern the Accusative after an.

VERBS GOVERNING THE DATIVE CASE.

1. Certain verbs which in English are regarded as transitive take in German the Dative Case only: antworten, answer, begegnen, meet, danken, thank, dienen, serve, fehlen, lack, ail, folgen, follow, gefallen, please, gehorchen, obey, gehören, belong, geschehen, happen, glauben, believe, gleichen, resemble, helfen, help, leid tun, grieve (as in Es tut mir leid, I am sorry), nützen, serve, be of use, recht sein, suit, schaden, harm, trauen, trust, widerstehen, resist, wohl tun, do good, benefit, and many more with similar or opposite meanings.

2. The Dative Case as indirect object represents the person to or for whom the action is done, with verbs meaning: give, bring, communicate, command, send, show, advise, and their opposites.

ADJECTIVES GOVERNING THE GENITIVE CASE:

Bar, bare, lacking, bewußt, conscious, eingebett, mindful, frei, free, rid, gewiß, sure, ledig, rid, mächtig, master of, in control, müde, tired, fatt, tired, satiated, schuldig, guilty, sicher, certain, sure, voll, full, wert, worth, würdig, worthy.

ADJECTIVES GOVERNING THE DATIVE CASE:

Ahnlich, similar, angenehm, agreeable, bekannt, familiar, known, dankbar, grateful, feind(lich), hostile, fremd, strange, unknown, freundlich, friendly, folgsam, docile, gehorsam, obedient, gewachsen, equal, able, a match for, gut (only in predicate), kindly disposed, bold, gracious,

favorable, leicht, easy, lieb, dear, nahe, near, schwer, difficult, teuer, dear, treu, loyal, überlegen, superior, verbunden, obliged, vorteilhaft, advantageous, wert, dear, precious, willkommen, welcome, and many other less common adjectives with the general sense of approach, appurtenance, helpfulness, suitability, friendliness, resemblance and their opposites.

ADJECTIVES GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE:

Gewahr, aware, gewohnt, accustomed, los, rid, fett, sick, tired, wert, worth, may take an accusative instead of a genitive.

Some adjectives with prepositions unlike those connecting the same adjectives in English: *achtsam (auf) (acc.), attentive to, arm an (dat.), poor in, aufmerksam auf (acc.), watchful of, attentive to, bange vor (dat.), afraid of, beschämt über (acc.), ashamed of, besorgt um (acc.), anxious about, blind an, or auf (dat.), blind in (an eye), böse auf (acc.), angry with, eifersüchtig auf (acc.), jealous of, empfindlich gegen (acc.), sensitive toward, fähig zu (dat.), fit for, frank an (dat.), sick of (a disease), neidisch auf (acc.), envious of, reich an (dat.), rich in, sicher vor (dat.), secure against, stolz auf (acc.), proud of, verliebt in (acc.), in love with.*

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE CASE.

Anstatt, also statt, instead of, außerhalb, outside of, diesseits, on this side of, halber (with personal pronouns -halben, as deinethalben or -halb, with deshalb) for the

*sake of, innerhalb, inside of, jenseits, on that side of, kraft, by virtue of (authority given), laut, according to (a document or command), längs, alongside of, mittels, mittelst, by means of (an instrument), oberhalb, above (on a stream, road or slope), seitens, on the part of, trotz, in spite of, rarely in rivalry with (in this sense with dative), *ungeachtet, despite, notwithstanding, unweit, not far from, unterhalb, below, vermöge, by virtue of, während, during, *wegen, on account of, *willen, or *um . . . willen, for the sake of. Those marked * follow their object.*

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE CASE.

Aus, out of, from, außer, outside of, aside from, bei, by, near, at the house of, binnen, within (limits of time), entgegen, toward, against, gegenüber, facing, opposite, gemäß, according to, in accordance with, mit, with, together with, nach, to, toward (not with persons), after (sequence), according to, nächst, near to, nebst, along with, in addition to, samt, together with, seit, since, for (length of time), von, from, of, by (agent in passive voice), zu, to (with persons), at, zuwider, in opposition to.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Bis, until, as far as (in the latter sense more commonly bis nach, bis auf, bis an, bis zu), durch, through, by means of, für, for (a person), gegen, against, ohne, without (= not having), um, around, at (time of day), for (price), wider, against (opposed to).

PREPOSITIONS WITH EITHER DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

When physical motion is expressed or implied the following prepositions take the accusative, otherwise the dative. Sometimes an emotion, a purpose, or a tendency has the same effect as a verb of physical motion: *an, to, at, on, auf, on, upon, to, toward, for* (time ahead), *hinter, behind, in, in, into, neben, beside, über, over, above, about* (cause of action), *unter, under, among, vor, before, against* (protection), *zwischen, between*.

SOME PREPOSITIONS DISCRIMINATED.

1. **An:** am *Bette*, *at, by, or beside the bed* (yet *heim Bette* is much the same, and *neben dem Bette*, *beside or alongside the bed*) ; *am Fieber sterben*, *to die of fever* (yet we say *vor Kälte*, or *vor Gram sterben*, and *Hungrs sterben*, *to die of cold, grief, hunger*) ; *an einem Fieber leiden*, *to be ill of or with a fever* (but *an der Kälte* or *vor Kälte leiden*) ; *an das Fenster gehen*, *to go to the window* (but also *zum Fenster gehen*, not quite the same assurance of getting there) ; *nach dem Fenster gehen*, *to go to or toward the window* ; *bis an das Fenster gehen*, *to go as far as the window* ; *vor das Fenster gehen*, *to go to, i. e. to a place just in front of, the window*.
2. **At:** if on the other hand we take English *at*, which is the commonest equivalent of *an*, we may note these common cases in which some other preposition must be used to render it: *at three o'clock*, *um 3 Uhr* ; *at home*, *zu Hause* ; *at these words*, *bei*

diesen Worten ; *at the post-office*, auf der Post ; *at the mark*, nach dem Ziele (schießen) ; *at school*, in der Schule ; *to laugh at one*, über jemand lachen ; etc.

3. **Bei** ; **mit** : bei is ‘at the house of,’ mit ‘in company with.’ Thus, *Er war mit mir bei Ihnen*, *He was with me at your house*. Note well : bei is seldom English ‘by’ (by means of = durch ; by, through the agency of = von) and never the ‘by’ with the agent in the passive voice.
4. **Aus** ; **von** : aus indicates source, reason, material ; von, starting-point, distance, composition. Thus, *Er ist aus Paris und kommt soeben von Köln*, *He is from Paris* (i. e. his home is there) *and has just come from Cologne*; *Das ist von Holz und ist aus einem alten Stuhl gemacht*, *That is of wood and is made out of an old chair* (yet aus might be used for von in this sentence); *Es ist zwei Meilen von hier*, *It is two miles from here*; *Er sagt das von mir aus Arger*, *He says that of me from vexation*.
5. **Von** ; **über** after **sprechen** : von is more superficial, über indicates more time and attention, über also introduces the theme of conversation. Thus, *Sie sprechen von Ihnen*, *They are speaking of you*, *Sie sprechen über Sie*, *They are discussing you*. *Sagen Sie nichts von mir* may mean *Say nothing of me*, or *Say nothing from me*.
6. **Aus** ; **durch** ; **von** : aus, the motive, durch, the means, von, the deliberate agent. Thus, *Das wurde von dem jungen Manne aus Eifersucht*, und zwar durch eine zweite

Hand geschrieben, That was written by the young man from jealousy, and through the hand of another.

7. To, with verbs of motion: *To go to the window* (any destination in or about the building), *an das Fenster* (but see also *an* in paragraphs preceding) *gehen*; *to a neighbor's*, *zu dem Nachbar*; *to the river* (or any point in town) *zur Brücke*, etc.; *to the post-office, court-house, castle, university*, *auf die Post*, *auf das Rathaus*, etc.; *to town* (from without in the country) *zur Stadt*, *to town*, 'down town' (to the business-part from any other part) *in die Stadt*; *to Boston, to Germany* (any destination larger than the town) *nach Boston*, *nach Deutschland*.
8. A sort of compound preposition is afforded by the addition of an adverb with related sense after the object of the simple preposition. Thus, *ins Haus hinein*, *into the house*, *aus dem Haus hinaus*, *out of the house*, *zum Fenster herein*, *in at the window*, etc. The latter word is really a separable prefix with a verb of motion expressed or understood. *Der Vogel flog zum Fenster hinaus*, *The bird flew out of the window* (lit. at the window out). *Ich lasse ihn nicht ins Haus herein*, *I shall not let him (come) into the house*. In the first case we may say also *flog aus dem Fenster*, and in the second we may omit *herein*, but the sentences as given are peculiarly German, and the idiom should be learned and cultivated.
9. *Nach* or *auf* before the object with *zu* following give a more distinct notion of motion approaching.

Gegen . . . zu means 'facing,' 'in the direction of' without implying motion towards. Von . . . aus indicates a source of motion or base of action. Er ist von Haus aus katholisch, *He is Catholic by birth.* Von hier aus kann man es sehen, *One can see it from here.* Von . . . an, *from . . . on,* Über das Dach hinaus or hinweg, *Out above the roof.* Der Hund sprang an ihm hinauf, *The dog jumped up on him.* Hinter uns her, *Along behind us.*

In many cases there is a choice of prepositions, as in English, but by employing what would appear to be the very same option in another case the learner might fall into a ludicrous error. Only careful observation and continued practice will bring a measure of correctness and confidence in this field.

SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

The separable prefixes are adverbs with a peculiarly close relation to the verb. They are chiefly adverbs of place, direction and relation, corresponding to prepositions with similar meanings. Some of the most common are:

Aber, off, an, at, to, on, auf, up, upon, aus, out, away, bei, to, beside, davon, away, dahin, thence, along, daher, hence, along, dar, there, out, ein, in, into, entgegen, toward, fort, forth, away, her, hither, hin, thither, along, los, loose, free, mit, with, along, nach, after, along after, nieder, down, vor, before, forth, vorbei, past, weg, off, away, weiter, on, farther, zu, to, toward, zurück, back, zusammen, together.

Most of these may further be compounded with the adverbial particles of direction, hin-, away from the

speaker, and *her-*, toward the speaker, as *hinabsehen*, to look down from where the speaker is, *herabsehen*, to look down to where the speaker is. When so compounded the resultant verb has usually a literal sense, while the simple compounds with the above words often have peculiar idiomatic meanings.

VERBS BOTH SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

The particles *durch*, *um*, *über*, *unter*, *hinter*, *wider*, *wieder*, are compounded with a large number of verbs, especially verbs of motion.

Durch in the separable compounds means *through* = *past*, as through a membrane, a barrier, past a point; the inseparable *durch* means *through*, *from end to end*, *all over*, *thoroughly*. *Der König reiste durch*, *The king passed through* (i. e. the village), but *Der König durchreiste das Land*, *The king traveled over*, or *entirely across the country*.

Um in separables means *about*, *circuitously*, or, in transitive verbs, *over*, *over again*, *upside down*; the inseparable *um* makes transitives with the meaning *round about*, or *to surround with*. *Man ging weit um*, *They went far around*; *Schreibe das um*, *re-write that*; *Der Wagen wurde um' gefehrt*, *The wagon was upset*. *Man umging' den Befehl*, *They evaded the order*; *Sie umstellten den Wagen*, *They surrounded the wagon*; *Das Gesicht, von hellen Haaren umleuch'tet*, *The face surrounded by the light of her bright hair*.

über, separable, means *across*, *over* (remaining), and *over* (the edge); inseparable it means *out-* (excess, surpassing), *over* (again), and *over* (all over). *Wir führten den Mann über*, *we took the man across*; but *Wir überfuh'sten den Mann*, *we overran the man*. *Ü'bergießen*, *spill*, *übergießen*, *suffuse*, *douse*, *flood*; *ü'bergehen*, *go over or across*, *übergeh'en*, *omit*, *neglect*.

Unter, separable, means *under*, *on the under side*; inseparable it means *in between*, *separating*. *Unterschlagen*, *turn under*, *fold* (the arms), *unterschla'gen*, *intercept*, *embezzle*; *unterhalten*, *hold under*, *unterhal'ten*, *entertain*.

Hinter and **wider** occur as separables only once or twice each. **Wieder** occurs as inseparable only once; *wie'berholen*, *fetch again*; *wiederho'len*, *repeat*.

COÖRDINATING CONNECTIVES,

Followed by the normal or direct order:

aber, *but* (= *however*, *nevertheless*), may have any place that may be taken by ‘however’: *Ich bleibe hier, aber er geht heim*, or *er aber geht heim*, *I remain here, but he is going home*.

allein, *but* (= *only*), same as *aber*, introduces afterthought or obstacle; may stand, with this meaning, only at beginning of clause; elsewhere it means *alone*.

denn, *for*, expressing an added or parenthetic reason.

entweder, *either*, only correlative with *oder*, *or*; not to be used as adverb, as *He is not going either* (*Er geht*

auch nicht), nor as pronoun, as *He is not either* (i. e. *neither of two*) (*Er ist keines von beiden*); sometimes followed by inversion.

oder, *or*, correlative to entweder, sometimes *otherwise* (= *soußt*), as *Do this, or I go* (*Tue das, oder ich gehe*).

sondern, *but (on the contrary)*, especially when correlative in *nicht nur . . . sondern auch*; always preceded by a negative, as *Nicht ich, sondern mein Bruder war es*, *It was not I, but my brother*; *Er hat das nicht gesagt, sondern das Gegenteil*, *He did not say that, but the opposite*.

und, *and*. When the subject of a preceding clause is resumed in the shape of a pronoun, inversion may follow *und*: *Der Mann ist da gewesen, und hat derselbe nach dir gefragt*, *The man was here and asked after you*.

weder, neither, negative of entweder. After *noch, nor*, the correlative to *weder*, inversion is customary, as *Weder ich war (or war ich) da, noch hat er mich eingeladen, neither was I there, nor did he invite me*.

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

The following are the commonest subordinating conjunctions, requiring the transposed order:

als, *when* with past tenses, sometimes as (see *wenn*); *as* after comparisons of equality (better *wie*); *than* after comparatives; *als ob*, *as if*, *als wenn*, *as if or as when*, *als wie*, *as when*; *als* followed by inversion, the same, *als hätte er gesagt, as if he had said*.

bis, *until*; sometimes **bis daß**.

da (distinguish from **da** meaning *there* by position of the verb) *where, when, since* (inasmuch as); *der Ort, da ich ihn sah, the place where I saw him*; *der Tag, da ich ihn sah, the day when I saw him*; *Da ich ihn sah, so weiß ich, daß er da war, since I saw him, I know he was there.*

damit (distinguish from **damit** meaning *therewith* by position of the verb), *in order that*; with the same meaning though less frequent, **daß**, **so daß**, **auf daß**, **um daß**.

daß, *that*, introducing indirect statements, may be omitted, whereupon the dependent clause has the normal order; see also **damit**; **daß** or **damit . . . nicht** is often the rendering of *lest*.

ehe (note that this is neither preposition nor adverb) *before*.

indem, *while, just as, since* (causal) (distinguish from **indem** meaning *at that point*), often, especially in stage directions, to be suppressed in favor of the mere present participle: *Max (indem er ihn groß ansieht), Max (looking at him with wide open eyes)*.

indes, indeffen, same as **indem**, but less frequent.

je . . . desto, the . . . , the . . ., with comparatives: *Je mehr Sie gegen ihn sagen, desto fester halte ich mich an ihn, The more you say against him the closer I will hold to him.* Note that the transposed order comes after **je** only, the inverted after **desto**.

nachdem, after (distinguish from *nachdem* meaning *afterward* by the position of the verb).

ob, whether, introduces indirect and implied questions (do not use *wenn* for this purpose). *Ob ich ihn
kenne?* (*You ask*) *whether I know him?* *Obwohl, ob-
schon, obgleich*, or *ob . . . schon, ob . . . gleich*, *although,*
*ob . . . auch, even though, ob ich ihn auch hasse, even
though I hate him.* Also with about same meaning:
*wenn gleich, wenn . . . schon, wenn . . . auch, and wie-
wohl.*

seit, seitdem, since (temporal). *Seit* is also a preposition, and *seitdem* an adverb; distinguish by construction.

*so . . . auch, however . . . ; so groß er auch ist, however
great he is, or great as he is.*

sobald, sowie, so oft (without following *wie*), *as soon
as; Sobald mein Sohn herein ist, As soon as my son has
entered.*

*trotzdem, notwithstanding (the fact that); often trotz-
dem, daß.*

während, while (temporal); *während ich da saß, during
the time I was sitting there; wie ich da saß, at some
moment while I was sitting there; als ich mich setzte, as
I took my seat.*

wann, when, introduces indirect questions only; *Man
fragte, wann wir gehen, They asked when we were going;
Fragen Sie, wenn Sie gehen, Ask when you go; Fragen
Sie, ob sie gehen, Ask whether they are going.*

wenn, when, with present and future tenses (compare *als* and *wann*), *whenever*, with any tense, *Wir plauderten wenn wir fuhren*, *We talked when(ever) we drove*; *if*, with any tense, usually subjunctive mode if the tense is past; *Wir gehen, wenn wir können*, either *We shall go if we can*, or *We go whenever we can*; *Er ginge, wenn er könnte*, *He would go if he could*. *Wenn schon*, etc., see *ob*.

weil, because (the meaning *while* is archaic, and the student should be cautioned against employing it).

wie, how in indirect questions, as after comparisons of equality. *Er singt eben so gut, wie ich spiele*, *He sings as well as I play*; *than* (not good usage: see *als*); *as, while* (temporal) see *während*; *wie . . . auch, however . . . wie gut er auch singt, however well he sings*.

wo, where in indirect questions, *wo . . . auch, wherever, in case that* (colloquial); *wohin, whither, whence*, in indirect questions.

VERBS OF THE OLD CONJUGATION.

Forms not given go according to the New Conjugation. In general, those verbs are omitted which only occasionally have forms of the Old Conjugation. Principal parts are in **full-faced** type. The definition, if etymologically related, is in Italics. A hyphen prefixed indicates that the verb only occurs with a prefix. In the Present, the two forms given are the second and third persons singular of the Indicative. In the Preterit, the upper form is the Indicative, the lower the Subjunctive. Forms in parenthesis are less common, or poetical. Compounds are to be sought under the simple verb.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<i>backen</i>	bädt	büt	—	gebacken
<i>bake</i>	bädt	büte	—	—
<i>-bären</i> ¹	-bierst	-bar	bier	-boren
	-biert	-bäre	—	—
<i>beißen</i>	—	biß	—	gebissen
<i>bite</i>	—	bisse	—	—
<i>bergen</i>	birgt	barg	birg	geborgen
<i>hide</i>	birgt	(bärge), bürge	—	—
<i>bersten</i>	birstest	barst, borst	birst	geborsten
<i>burst</i>	birst	(bärstie), börstie	—	—
<i>biegen</i>	—	bog	—	gebogen
<i>bend</i>	—	böge	—	—
<i>bieten</i>	—	bat	—	geboten
<i>bid, offer</i>	—	böte	—	—
<i>binden</i>	—	band	—	gebunden
<i>bind</i>	—	bänbe	—	—
<i>bitten</i>	—	bat	—	gebeten
<i>beg</i>	—	bäte	—	—
<i>blasen</i>	bläfest	bliß	—	geblasen
<i>blow</i>	bläfst	bliße	—	—
<i>bleiben</i>	—	blied	—	geblieben
<i>remain</i>	—	bliede	—	—
<i>bleichen</i>	—	blich	—	geblichen
<i>bleach</i>	—	bliche	—	—
<i>braten</i>	brätst	brät	—	gebraten
<i>roast</i>	brät	briete	—	—

¹ Only in *gebären*, "bear," "bring forth."

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
brechen <i>break</i>	brichst bricht	brach brähe	brich	gebrochen
-deihen ¹	—	-dieh -diehe	—	-dichen
-derben ²	-dirbst -dirbt	-darb -dürbe	-dirb	-dorben
dingen <i>hire</i>	—	dung (dang) dünge	—	gedungen
dreschen <i>thresh</i>	drißhest drißt	(drasch), drosch (dräsche), drösche	driß	gedroschen
-drißten ³	—	-droß -dröfse	—	-droffen
dringen <i>crowd</i>	—	drang dränge	—	gedrungen
essen <i>eat</i>	ißest ißt	at̄ ähe	iß	gegessen
fahren <i>go</i>	fährst fähret	fuhr fühere	—	gefahren
fallen <i>fall</i>	fällst fällt	fiel fiele	—	gefallen
fangen <i>catch, seize</i>	fängst fängt	sing (sieng) singe (sienge)	—	gesangen
fechten <i>fight</i>	ſchtest ſieht	ſocht ſöchte	ſieht	gefochten
-ſchhlen ⁴	-ſiehſt -ſiehlt	ſahl (-ſähle), -ſöhle	-ſiehl	-ſohlen
finden <i>find</i>	—	ſand	—	gefunden
ſlechten <i>braid</i>	ſlichtſt ſliht	ſlocht ſlöchte	ſlicht	geſlochten
ſteißen <i>be diligent</i>	—	ſliß ſliſſe	—	geſliſſen
ſliegen <i>fly</i>	—	ſlog	—	geſlogen
ſliehen <i>flee</i>	—	ſlōge	—	geſlohen
		ſlōhe	—	

¹ Only in *gedeihen*, "thrive."² Only in *verderben*, "perish."³ Only in *verdriften*, "vex."⁴ Only in *befehlen*, "command," and *empfehlen*, "commend."

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
fießen	—	floß	—	geflossen
flew	—	flöße	—	gefragt
fragen	(frägt)	(frug)	—	gefragt
ask	(frägt)	(früge)	—	gesessen
fressen	frisst	fräß	friß	gesessen
eat	fräßt	frähe	—	gesroren
frieren	—	fror	—	gesroren
froze	—	fröre	—	gegoren
gären	—	gor	—	gegeben
ferment	—	göre	—	gegeben
geben	gibt (giebst)	gab	gib (gieb)	gegeben
give	gibt (giebt)	gäbe	—	gegangen
geben	—	ging (gieng)	—	gegangen
go	—	ginge (gienge)	—	gegolten
gelten	giltst	galt	gilt	gegolten
have value	gilt	(gälte), gölte	—	gegolten
-geffen ¹	-giffest	-gaff	-gib	-geffen
-	-gibt	-gäbe	—	—
gleissen	—	goff	—	gegoffen
pour	—	gölle	—	—
-ginnen ²	—	gann	—	-gonnen
gleichen	—	(-gänne), -gönne	—	—
be like	—	glich	—	geglichen
gleiten	—	gleiche	—	geglitten
glide	—	glitt	—	geglommen
glimmen	—	glomm	—	geglommen
glimmer	—	glümme	—	gegraben
graben	gräbst	grub	—	gegraben
dig	gräbt	grübe	—	gegriffen
greifen	—	griff	—	gegriffen
seize	—	griffe	—	gehalten
halten	hältst	hielt	—	gehalten
hold	hält	hielte	—	gehangen
hangen	hängst	hing (hieng)	—	gehangen
hang	hängt	hinge (hienge)	—	—
hauen	—	hielb	—	gehauen
cut, chop	—	hiebe	—	—

¹ Only in vergeffen, "forget."² Only in beginnen, "begin."

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
heben	—	hob, hub	—	gehoben
heave, raise	—	höbe, höbe	—	geheissen
heissen	—	hiess	—	geheissen
be called	—	hieste	—	geholfern
helfen	hilft	half	hilf	geholfen
help	hilft	(hälfe), hülste	—	geklossen
keifen	—	kißt	—	geklossen
chide	—	kißte	—	geklossen
kiesen	—	kos	—	geklossen
choose	—	köse	—	geklossen
kleben	—	klöb	—	geklossen
cleave	—	klöbe	—	geklossen
klimmen	—	klomm	—	geklimmten
climb	—	klömmme	—	geklimmten
klingen	—	klang	—	geklingten
sound	—	klänge	—	geklingten
kneifsen	—	kniff	—	gekniffen
pinch	—	kniffe	—	gekniffen
kneipen	—	knipp	—	geknippen
pinch	—	knippe	—	geknippen
kommen	(könnt)	kam	—	gekommen
come	(könmt)	käme	—	gekommen
kriechen	—	kröch	—	gekrochen
creep	—	kröde	—	gekrochen
küren	—	kor	—	gekoren
choose	—	köre	—	gekoren
laden	(lädt)	lud	—	geladen
load, invite	(lädt)	lübe	—	gelassen
lassen	lässt	ließ	—	gelassen
let, cause	lägt	ließe	—	gelassen
laufen	läuft	lief	—	gelaufen
run	läuft	ließe	—	gelaufen
leiden	—	litt	—	gelitten
suffer	—	litte	—	gelitten
leihen	—	lieh	—	geleihen
lend	—	liehe	—	geleihen
lesen	liest	las	lies	gelesen
read	liest	läse	—	gelezen
liegen	—	lag	—	gelegen
lie	—	läge	—	gelegen

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
-lieren ¹	—	-lor -lōre	—	-loren
-lingen ²	—	-lang -lānge	—	-lungen
löschen go out (of a fire)	löshest lijcht	lösch lösche	lijch	gelöschen
lügen <i>llo</i>	—	log lōge	—	gelogen
mahlen grind	mählst mählt	muht mühle	—	gemahlen
meiden avoid	—	mied miede	—	gemieden
melken <i>milk</i>	(milft)	molk mölte	(milf)	gemolken
messen <i>mets, measure</i>	misst mißt	maß mäge	miß	gemessen
nehmen take	nimmst nimmt	nahm nähme	nimm	genommen
-neßen ³	—	-naß -näße	—	-neßen
-nießen ⁴	—	-noß -nösse	—	-nussen
pfeifen <i>whistle, pipe</i>	—	pfliss pflisse	—	gepfiffen
pfliegen nurse, be accus- tomed	—	(pflag) pflog pflage	—	gepflogen
preisen <i>praise</i>	—	pries priese	—	gepriesen
quellen flow forth	quillst quillt	quoll quölle	quill	gequollen
rächen avenge	—	(roch) (röthe)	—	gerochen
raten advise	rätst räbt	riet riete	—	geraten
reiben rub	—	rieb riebe	—	gerieben

¹ Only in verlieren, "lose."² Only in gelingen, "succeed," and mißlingen, "fail."³ Only in genesen, "get well." ⁴ Only in genießen, "enjoy."

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERATIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
reissen	—	riss	—	gerissen
tear	—	rissse	—	
reiten	—	ritt	—	geritten
ride	—	ritte	—	
riechen	—	roch	—	gerochen
smell	—	röde	—	
ringen	—	rang	—	gerungen
wring, wrestle	—	ränge	—	
rinnen	—	rann	—	geronnen
run	—	ränne, rönne	—	
rufen	—	rief	—	gerufen
call	—	rieſe	—	
saufen	ſäuft	ſoff	—	gesoffen
swill, drink	ſäuft	ſoffe	—	
saugen	—	fog	—	gesogen
suck	—	föge	—	
schaffen	—	ſchuff	—	geschaffen
create	—	ſchüfe	—	
schallen	—	ſcholl	—	geschallten
resound	—	ſchölle	—	
-ſchehen ¹	-ſchicht	-ſchah	—	-ſchehen
		-ſchähe	—	
ſcheiden	—	ſchied	—	geschieden
separate	—	ſchiede	—	
ſcheinien	—	ſchien	—	geschieneſſen
appear	—	ſhiene	—	
ſchelten	ſchiltſt	ſchalt	ſchilt	gescholten
scold	ſhilt	ſhölte	—	
ſcheren	ſchierſt	ſchor	ſchier	geschoren
shear	ſhiert	ſhöre	—	
ſchaben	—	ſchob	—	geschoben
shove	—	ſhöbe	—	
ſchießen	—	ſchog	—	geschossen
shoot	—	ſhöſſe	—	
ſchinden	—	ſchund	—	geschunden
flay	—	ſhünbe	—	
ſchlafen	ſchläßt	ſchlef	—	geschlaſſen
sleep	ſchläßt	ſchlieſſe	—	

¹ Only in geschehen, "happen."

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERATIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
schlagen strike	ſchlägt	ſchlug	—	geschlagen
schleichen <i>slink, sneak</i>	ſchläge	ſchlich	—	geschlichen
schleisen whet	ſchläge	ſchliche	—	geschlissen
schleissen <i>silt, split</i>	ſchläge	ſchliß	—	geschlissen
schließen <i>slip, creep</i>	ſchläge	ſchliſſe	—	geschlossen
schließen shut	ſchläge	ſchloß	—	geschlossen
ſchlingen entwine, swal- low, <i>sling</i>	ſchläge	ſchloſſe	—	geschlungen
ſchmeißen <i>smite</i>	ſchmeißt	ſchlang	—	geschlungen
ſchmelzen <i>melt</i>	ſchmilzt	ſchlängel	ſchmilz	geschmolzen
ſchnauben <i>snuff, snort</i>	ſchnäubt	ſchmiede	—	geschnaubt
ſchneiden cut	ſchnidet	ſchmiede	—	geschnitten
ſchrauben <i>screw</i>	ſchraubt	ſchrob	—	geschroben
ſchrecken be frightened	ſchräckt	ſchröde	ſchrack	geschrocken
ſchreiben write	ſchrift	ſchräle	ſchräle	geschrieben
ſchreien cry out	ſchreit	ſchrieb	ſchrieb	geschrieben
ſchreiten stride	ſchreit	ſchriebe	ſchrie	geschrien
ſchwärzen ulcerate	ſchreit	ſchritt	ſchritt	geschritten
ſchweigen be silent	ſchweigt	ſchwor	ſchwert	geschworen
ſchwellen <i>swell</i>	ſchwillt	(ſchwör) (ſchwörte)	ſchwillt	geschwiegen
		ſchwüre		geschwollen
		ſchwieg		
		ſchwiege		
		ſchwoll		
		ſchwölle		

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. s. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERATIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
schwimmen <i>swim</i>	—	schwamm (<i>schwämme</i>), schwämme	—	geschwommen
schwinden <i>disappear</i>	—	schwand schwände	—	geschwunden
schwingen <i>swing</i>	—	schwang schwänge	—	geschwungen
schwören <i>swear</i>	—	schwör, schwar (<i>schwöre</i>), schwüre	—	geschworen
sehen <i>see</i>	siehst	sah	sieh	gesehen
sein <i>be</i>	bist	war	sei	gewesen
fieden <i>seethe, boil</i>	—	fott fiedete	—	gesotten
singen <i>sing</i>	—	sang sänge	—	gesungen
sinken <i>sink</i>	—	sank sänkte	—	gesunken
finnen <i>think</i>	—	sann (<i>sänne</i>), sönne	—	gesonnen
flyen <i>sit</i>	—	sag säße	—	gesessen
speien <i>spew</i>	—	spie spiee	—	gespieen
spinnen <i>spin</i>	—	spann (<i>spänne</i>), spönne	—	gesponnen
spießen <i>split</i>	—	spilg spilffe	—	gespliffen
sprechen <i>speak</i>	sprichst	sprach spräche	sprich	gesprochen
sprießen <i>sprout</i>	—	sproß sprösse	—	gesproffen
springen <i>spring, jump</i>	—	sprang spränge	—	gesprungen
stechen <i>prick</i>	sticht	stach	stich	gestochen
stecken <i>stick</i>	stießt	stöch	stid	gestocken

INFINITIVE	PRESENT 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
stehen	—	stand	—	gestanden
stand	—	stände (stünbe)	stehi	gestohlen
stehlen	stiehſt	stahl	stiehi	gestiegen
steal	stiehſt	(stähle), stöhle	—	—
steigen	—	stieg	—	—
ascend	—	stiege	—	—
sterben	ſtirbſt	ſtarb	ſtirb	gestorben
die	ſtirbt	(ſtarbe), ſtirbe	—	—
ſteben	—	ſtob	—	gestoben
ſly, scatter	—	ſtöde	—	—
ſtinken	—	ſtank	—	gestunken
ſtink	—	ſtänke	—	—
ſtoſſen	ſtöhſt	ſtieß	—	geſtoſſen
push	ſtöhſt	ſtieße	—	—
ſtreichen	—	ſtrich	—	geſtrichen
ſtrohe, graze	—	ſtriche	—	—
ſtreiten	—	ſtritt	—	geſtritten
dispute, strive	—	ſtritte	—	—
tragen	trägſt	trug	—	getragen
bear, carry	trägſt	trüge	—	—
treffen	trifſt	traj	triff	getroffen
hit	trifſt	träfe	—	getrieben
treiben	—	trieb	—	—
drive	—	triebe	—	—
treten	trittſt	trat	tritt	getreten
tread	trittſt	träte	—	—
triefen	—	troff	—	getroffen
drip	—	tröſſe	—	—
trinken	—	trank	—	getrunken
drink	—	tränke	—	—
trügen	—	trug	—	getrogen
deceive	—	tröge	—	—
tun	tuſt	tat	—	getan
do	tut	täte	—	—
wachsen	wächſtſt	wuchs	—	gewachsen
wax, grow	wächſtſt	wüchſe	—	—
wägen	—	wog	—	gewogen
weigh	—	wöge	—	—
waschen	wäscheſtſt	wusch	—	gewaschen
wash	wäscheſtſt	wüsche	—	—

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPL.
weben	—	wob	—	gewoben
weave	—	wöbe	—	-wogen
-wegen ¹	—	-wog -wöge	—	
weichen	—	wich	—	gewichen
yield	—	wiche	—	
weisen	—	wies	—	gewiesen
point out	—	wiese	—	
werben	wirbst	warb	wirb	geworben
woo	wirbt	würbe	—	
werden	wirfst	ward, wurde	—	geworden
become	wird	würde	—	
werfen	wirfst	warf	wirf	geworfen
throw	wirfst	würfe	—	
wiegen	—	wog	—	gewogen
weigh	—	wöge	—	
winden	—	wand	—	gewunden
wind	—	wände	—	
-winnen ²	—	wann (wänne), -wönne	—	-wonnen
ziehen	—	zieh	—	geziehen
accuse	—	ziehe	—	
ziehen	—	zog	—	gezogen
move, draw	—	zöge	—	
zwingen	—	zwang	—	gezwungen
force	—	zwänge	—	

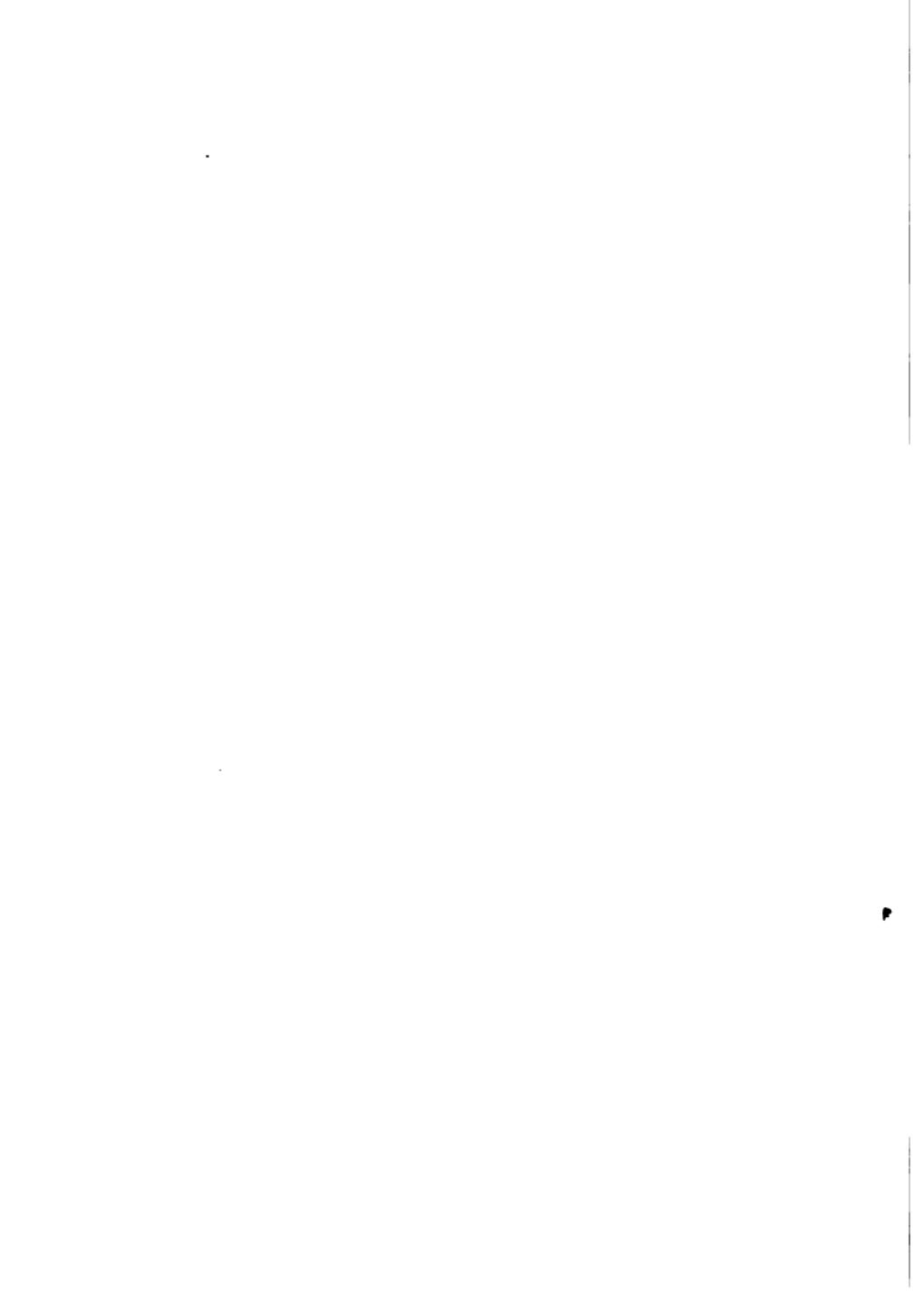
¹ Only in bewegen, "induce"² Only in gewinnen, "win."

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE NEW CONJUGATION.

Forms not given are regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT. 2. 3. p. sg.	PRETERIT. Indic. Subjunc.	IMPERA- TIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
brennen <i>burn</i>	—	brannte brennte	—	gebrannt
bringen <i>bring</i>	—	brachte brächte	—	gebracht
denken <i>think</i>	—	dachte dächte	—	gedacht
dürfen <i>be permitted</i>	darfst darf ¹	durste dürfste	wanting	gedurst ²
haben <i>have</i>	hast hat	hatte hätte	—	gehabt
kennen <i>know</i>	—	kannte kennte	—	gekannt
können <i>can</i>	fannst fann ¹	könnte könnite	wanting	gekonnt ²
mögen <i>may, like</i>	magst mag ¹	mochte möchte	wanting	gemocht ²
müssen <i>must</i>	mußt muß ¹	musste müßte	wanting	gemußt ²
nennen <i>name</i>	—	nannte nennte	—	genannt
rennen <i>run</i>	—	rannte rennrete	—	gerannt
senden <i>send</i>	—	sandte sendete	—	{ gesandt gesendet
sollen <i>shall</i>	sollst soll ¹	sollte sollte	wanting	gesollt ²
wenden <i>turn</i>	—	wandte wendete	—	{ gewandt gewendet
wissen <i>know</i>	weißt weiß ¹	wußte wüßte	—	gewußt
wollen <i>will</i>	wilst will ¹	wollte wollte	wolle	gewollt

¹ Also, 1st person singular. ² Instead of the participle, the infinitive is used to form the compound tenses of the "modal auxiliaries," when an infinitive depends upon the verb.



ALPHABET IN GERMAN SCRIPT.

The same written character we use is taught in the German schools, and it is generally used by foreigners when they write German.

CAPITAL. SMALL.

a *a*

L *b*

L *c*

D *d*

E *e*

F *f*

G *g*

H *h*

I *i*

CAPITAL. SMALL.

J *j*

K *k*

L *l*

M *m*

N *n*

O *o*

P *p*

Q *q*

R *r*

CAPITAL. SMALL.

T *t*, ^{final}*b*

U *t*

U *u*

V *v*

W *w*

X *x*

Y *y*

Z *z*

Z *z*

P

Umlauts.

A *ä*

O *ö*

U *ü*

GERMAN SCRIPT.

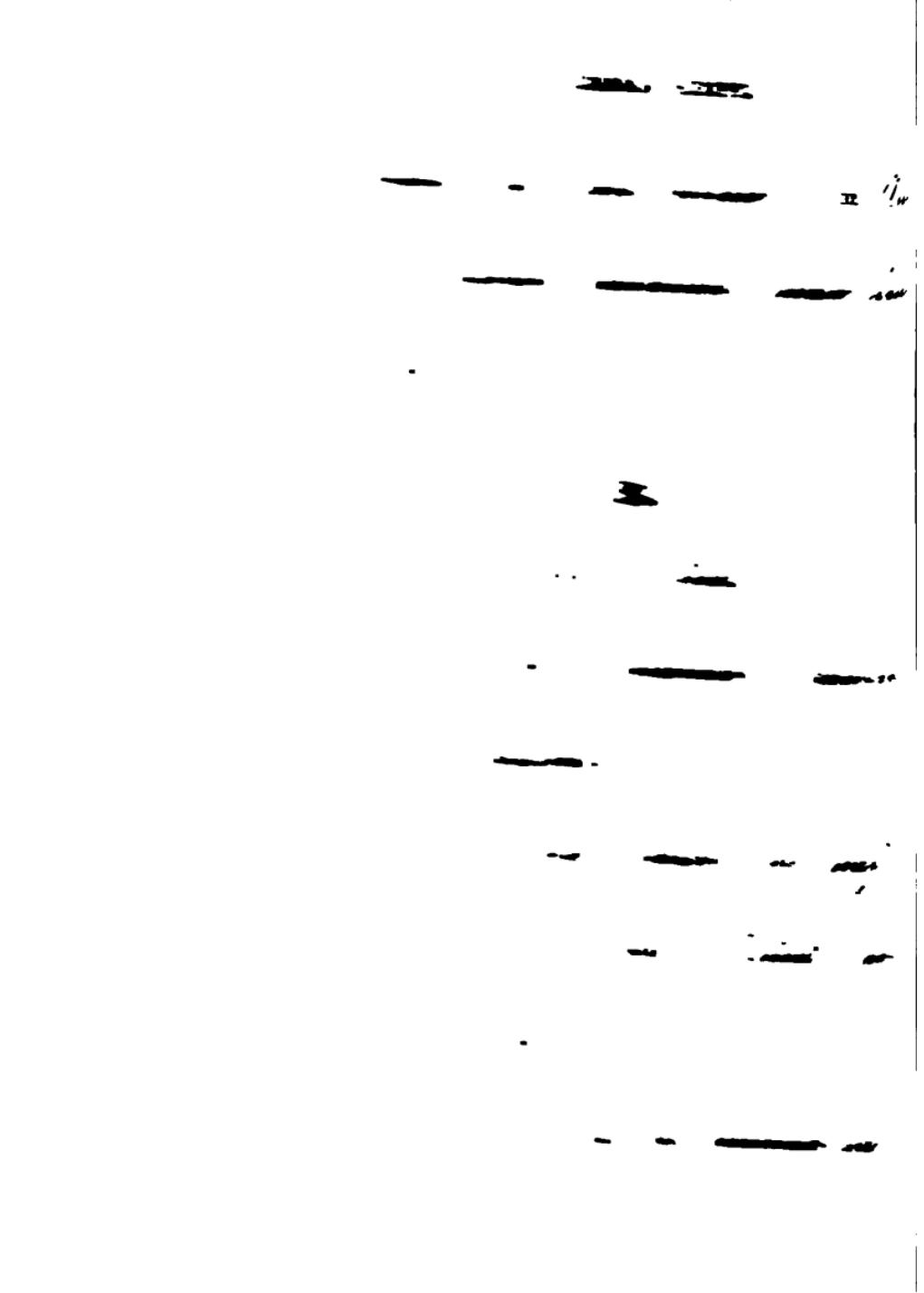
1.

1. Ann. 2. Lütf 3. Sonnt.
 4. Samt. 5. Früh. 6. Fuß.
 7. Garten. 8. Grün. 9. Kufal.
 10. Jahr. 11. König. 12. Lizzar.
 13. Markt. 14. Haftigall. 15. Oiff.
 16. Pagina. 17. Mühlar. 18. Roffa.
 19. Knin. 20. Taflar. 21. Uff.
 22. Natur. 23. Waffan. 24. Fann.
 25. Yfug. 26. Znit.

Öfan. Öl. Übal.

2.

1. Endt giebt, alleb giebt.
2. Fila mit Muilen. 3. Muuib
Augenpaar fgrift, kannib Lizzan-
gaar ffranigan. 4. Übung macht
den Meister. 5. Mir fayst b. min
kleiner Finger. 6. Glaief und
glaief gesalts fief gauw. 7. Man
a fayst, miß auf L fayun.
8. Gluck und Glab, mir bald
bringt dab. 9. Kurf yestamn



GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

1. When a separable or inseparable verb is indicated as belonging to the Old Conjugation, or as an irregular verb of the New Conjugation, the prefix must be thrown off before looking for the verb in the list at the end. Separable verbs are indicated by a hyphen between the prefix and the simple verb. Compounds with obvious meanings, as *jurild-gehen*, are not always given a place in the Vocabulary.
2. The genitive singular and nominative plural of nouns are indicated thus: *Garten*, -*s*, -*ärten*, i. e., the genitive singular is *Gartens*, and nominative plural *Gärten*; *Schüler*, -*s*, -, genitive singular *Schülers*, nominative plural same as nominative singular. The genitive singular of feminine nouns is not indicated.
3. The gender and declension of nouns in *dien* and *lein* are not indicated.
4. Adjectives used as adverbs or nouns, or when in the comparative or superlative, excepting those of irregular comparison, are not inserted separately.
5. Definitions in Italics (*evening*) are English words historically related.

6. ABBREVIATIONS

O.	= Old Conjugation.
irreg. N.	= irregular verb of the New Conjugation.
impers.	= impersonal verb.
refl.	= reflexive verb.
h. or s.	= auxiliary <i>haben</i> or <i>sein</i> .
a.	= auxiliary <i>sein</i> .

<i>m.</i>	= masculine.
<i>f.</i>	= feminine.
<i>n.</i>	= neuter.
gen.	= genitive.
dat.	= dative.
acc.	= accusative.
adj.	= adjective.

A

ab, *off*, away, down, from,
at.

Ahc, *n.* a b c, alphabet.

Abend, *m.* -*s*, -*e*, evening.

Abendbrot, *n.* -*(e)s*, -*e*,
evening bread, supper,
tea.

Abendlied, *n.* -*(e)s*, -*er*,
evening song.

Abendrot, *n.* -*(e)s*, eve-
ning glow.

Abendsonnenſchein, *m.* -*(e)s*,
evening sunshine, sunset
glow.

Abendwolke, *f.* evening cloud.
aber, but, however.

ab=fahren, O. s. go off, start.
ab=hangen, O. hang off or down, depend upon, von (with dat.).
ab=holen, call for.
ab=picken, pick off.
ab=reisen, s. travel off, de-part.
ab=richten, set right, train.
Abschied, m. -(e)s, -e, de-parture, farewell, dis-charge, leave.
ab=schreiben, O. write off, copy.
ab=steigen, O. s. descend, get out.
ab=wesend, absent.
Abwesenheit, f. -en, absence.
ach, ah! oh! alas!; ach Gott, oh dear!
acht, eight, eighth.
Acht, f. attention, heed, care.
achtzehn, eighteen.
achtzig, eighty.
Abres'je, f. -n, address, di-rection.
adieu' (ade'), adieu, good-by.
Adjektiv', n. -s, -e, adjective.
Adler, m. -s, -, eagle.
A'dolf, m. -s, Adolphus.
Abver'bium, n. -s, -ien, ad-verb.
Abvolt', m. -en, -en, law-yer.
ähnlich, like.
all, all.
allein, alone, only; but, yet.
allerdings, by all means, to be sure, undoubtedly.

allerlei', all kinds of, of all kinds.
allgemein, common to all, general.
allmählich, gradually.
Alphabet', n. -s, -e, al-phabet.
als, as, than, when; als ob, als wenn, as though, as if.
also, accordingly, conse-quently.
am = an dem.
A'men, amen.
Amerika, n. -s, America.
an (dat. or acc.), on, in, by, to; onwards, farther.
ander, another, other, dif-ferent.
ändern, alter.
anders, otherwise, differ-ently.
anderwo, elsewhere.
anderthalb, one and a half.
Anekdo'te, f. -n, anecdote.
Anfang, m. -s, -änge, be-ginning.
an=fangen, O. begin.
an=gehen, O. s. go on, begin; approach, concern.
angenehm, pleasant.
an=greifen, O. attack.
Angst, f. Angste, anxiety, fear.
an=halten, O. hold on, stop.
an=kommen, O. s. come on, arrive.
Anmerkung, f. -en, re-mark, observation, com-ment, note.

an=nehmen, O. accept; assume.
an=richten, do, cause.
an=schauen, gaze at.
an=schen, O. look on or at.
Anspruch, *m.* —es, —üche,
 claim; in—nehmen, claim.
anstatt, (gen.), instead of.
Antwort, *f.* —en, word in return, answer.
antworten, answer (dat. of person).
anwesend, present.
an=zichen, O. draw on, put on
Äpfel, *m.* —s, Äpfel, apple.
Äpfelbaum, *m.* —(e)s, —äume,
 apple-tree.
April', *m.* —s, —e, April.
Arbeit, *f.* —en, work.
arbeiten, work
ärgerlich, angry, vexed.
Ariθme'tik, *f.* —en, arithmetic.
Arm, *m.* —(e)s, —e, arm.
arm, poor.
Art, *f.* —en, kind, species, manner.
artig, of good kind, well-behaved.
Artikel, *m.* —s, —, article.
Arzt, *m.* —es, Ärzte, physician.
Atem, *m.* —s, breath.
auch, also, too, even.
auf (dat. or acc.), upon, at; up, on!
auf=atmen, take breath.
auf=blicken, look up.
auf das, in order that.

auf=drücken, impress.
auffallend, noticeable, striking.
Aufgabe, *f.* —n, lesson, task.
auf=geben, O. give up.
auf=gehen, O. s. go up, rise.
auf=heben, O. heave or lift up, suspend.
auf=hören, stop, end, cease.
auf=machen, open.
auf=passen, pay attention.
aufrecht=stellen, place upright.
aufs = auf das.
auf=schieben, O. postpone.
auf=stehen, O. s. stand up, get up, rise.
auf=suchen, hunt up.
Auftrag, *m.* —es, —äge, commission, errand.
auf=tragen, O. serve (at table).
auf=tun, O. open.
aufwärts, upwards.
Auge, *n.* —s, —n, eye.
Aug(e)lein, little eye.
Augenblick, *m.* —(e)s, —e, moment, instant.
augenblicklich, instantly.
August', *m.* —s, —e, August.
aus (dat.), out, out of.
Ausdruck, *m.* —s, —üde, expression.
aus=drücken, express.
auseinan'der, apart, asunder.
auseinander=gehen, O. s. separate.
Ausgabe, *f.* —n, expense.
Ausgang, *m.* —(e)s, —änge, outlet, exit.
aus=gehen, O. s. go out.

ausgenommen, excepting, excepted.
aus-lachen, laugh at.
Ausland, *n.* -(e)s, foreign country.
aus-lassen, O. omit.
aus-machen, arrange.
aus-nehmen, O. take *out*, except; **ausnehmend**, exceptional.
aus-rufen, O. cry *out*.
Ausrufungswort, *n.* -es, -örter, exclamation *word*, interjection.
aus-ruhen, rest *out*, repose.
aus-sehen, O. look, appear.
außen, *outside*, without.
außer (dat.), on the *outside* of, without, besides.
außerdem, apart from *that*, besides, moreover.
außerhalb (gen. or dat.), on the *outside* of, without, beyond.
außerordentlich, extraordinary, remarkable; extremely.
aus-sprechen, O. pronounce.
aus-steigen, O. s. dismount, get out.
auswendig, *outside*, outward, without book, by heart.

B

Bach, *m.* -es, -äche, brook.
Bäcker, *m.* -s, -, baker.
Bäckwerk, *n.* -(e)s, -e, bakers' wares.

Bab, *n.* -es, -äder, bath.
baden, bathe.
Badezimmer, *n.* -s, -, bath-room.
Bahn, *f.* -en, path, road.
Bahnhof, *m.* -(e)s, -öfe, station.
bald, soon; **bald — bald —**, now — now —.
Ball, *m.* -es, -älle, ball.
Band, *n.* -es, -änder, band, ribbon; *m.* -es, -ände, volume.
Bande, *f.* -n, bond, fetter.
bang(e), anxious, fearful.
Bank, *f.* -änke, bank, bench.
bar, in cash.
Barmen, *n.* -s, name of a German city.
Basel, *n.* -s, name of a Swiss city.
bauen, build; labor on the land, till.
Bauer, *m.* -n, (-s), -n, peasant; **Bauersmann**, *m.* the same.
Baum, *m.* -es, -äume, tree, beam.
Baumblatt, *n.* -(e)s, -ätter, leaf of a tree.
Bäumchen, little tree.
be=, inseparable prefix, strengthening the meaning of verbs, and forming new ones; prefix forming adjectives.
Beamte, *m.* w. official.
beantworten, answer (a question).

bedauern, regret.	beissen, O. <i>bite</i> .
bedecken, cover, overcast.	bekannt, known, acquainted.
bedenken, irreg. N. consider.	Bekanntschaft, f. —en, acquaintance.
bedeuten, signify.	
bedeutend, important.	bekommen, O. get, receive.
Bedeutung, f. —en, importance, significance.	belebt, lively, animated.
Bedingung, f. —en, condition.	belegen, lay on, secure, engage; <i>belay</i> .
bedürfen, irreg. N. need, require.	beleidigen, affront, insult.
Befehl, m. —es, —e, mandate, order.	beleuchten, light up.
befehlen, O. command.	Belichtung, f. lighting, illumination.
befinden, O. refl. <i>find</i> one's self, do, be.	Belgien, n. —s, <i>Belgium</i> .
befreien, make <i>free</i> , liberate.	beliebt, popular.
befühlen, feel of.	Belt, m. —es, the "Belt" (in Denmark).
befürchten, fear.	bemühen, refl. take pains, endeavor.
begegnen, (dat.), s. run against, meet.	bequem, convenient, comfortable.
begeistern, inspire.	Bequemlichkeit, f. —en, comfort.
begierig, eager for.	bereit, ready.
beginnen, O. <i>begin</i> .	bereiten, prepare.
begleiten, accompany.	bereits, already.
begreifen, O. comprehend.	Berg, m. —es, —e, mountain.
Begriff, m. —(e)s, —e, idea; im Begriffe sein, be on the point of.	Berlin', n. —s, <i>Berlin</i> .
behalten, O. <i>hold</i> , keep.	beruhigen, calm, compose.
behülflich, helpful, useful.	berühmt, famous.
bei (dat.), by the side of, by, near; at the house or store of.	berühren, touch.
beide, both.	beschäftigt, adj. occupied, busy.
Weißfall, m. —s, applause.	beschäftigen, occupy, busy.
Bein, n. —es, —e, bone, leg.	bescheren, give, bestow.
beinahe, nearly, almost.	beschützen, soil.
Beispiel, n. —(e)s, —e, instance, example.	beschützen, guard.
	besitzen, O. <i>sit upon</i> , possess.
	besonder, particular, especial.
	besonders, especially.

beforgt , anxious.	Bier , <i>n.</i> -es, -e, beer.
besser , better.	Bild , <i>n.</i> -es, -er, picture.
bessern , improve.	Billet , <i>n.</i> -(e)s, -e, ticket, billet.
beständig , constantly.	billig , <i>adj.</i> cheap; just.
bestehen , O. stand firm; — aus (with dat.), consist of.	binden , O. bind.
bestellen , put in place, order.	Bindewort , <i>n.</i> -(e)s, -örter, binding word, conjugation.
bestimmen , direct, determine.	bis (acc.), to, until, as far as.
Besuch , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -e, visit.	Bitschen (<i>bisgchen</i>), bit, little, trifle.
besuchen , seek for, visit.	bisher , as far as <i>here</i> ; hitherto.
Besuchzimmer , <i>n.</i> -s, -, visit-room, reception-room.	bitten , O. beg, ask for.
beten , pray.	bitter , bitter.
Betonung , <i>f.</i> accent.	blasen , O. blow.
betrübt , sad.	Blatt , <i>n.</i> -(e)s, -ätter, leaf.
Bett (<i>Bette</i>), <i>n.</i> -(e)s, -en, bed.	blattlos , leafless.
beunruhigen , make uneasy.	blau , blue.
bevor , before.	Blei , <i>n.</i> -es, lead.
bewahren , preserve.	bleiben , O. s. be <i>left</i> , remain.
bewegen , move; refl. move, be removed.	Bleistift , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -e, lead-pencil.
Bewegung , <i>f.</i> -en, motion.	bliden , look.
bewohnen , dwell in, occupy.	Blid , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -e, glance.
Bewohner , <i>m.</i> -s, -, inhabitant.	blinken , gleam.
bewundern , wonder at, admire.	Blitz , <i>m.</i> -es, -e, lightning.
bezahlen , pay.	blitzen , lighten, glisten, flash.
Bibliothek , <i>f.</i> -en, library (public).	bloß , bare; merely, simply, only.
Bibliothekar ', <i>m.</i> -s, -e, librarian.	blühen , blossom, flourish; blow.
Bibliothekzimmer , <i>n.</i> -s, -, library-room, library.	Blume , <i>f.</i> -n, flower; bloom.
bieder , upright.	Blüm(e)lein , flowret.
biegen , O. bend.	Blut , -es, blood; health.
Biene , <i>f.</i> -n, bee.	bluten , bleed.
	Boden , <i>m.</i> -s, -öden, garret; bottom.
	Boot , <i>n.</i> -es, -e or -öte, boat.

Bootfahrt, *f.* -en, *boat-trip.*
böß(e), *bad*, angry.
Braten, *m.* -s, -, roast.
brauchen, need, want.
Braunschweig, *n.* -s, *Brunswick.*
Brant, *f.* -äute, betrothed wife; *bride.*
Bräutigam, *m.* -s, -e, betrothed husband; *bride-groom.*
brav, good, *brave.*
brechen, *O.* *break.*
breit, broad.
Bremen, *n.* -s, *Bremen.*
brennen, irreg. *N.* *burn.*
Brenngas, *n.* -es, illuminating gas.
Brief, *m.* -es, -e, letter; *brief.*
Briefchen, little letter, note.
Briefkasten, *m.* -s, -, letter-box.
Briefmarke, *f.* -n, postage-stamp.
Briefträger, *m.* -s, -, letter-carrier.
bringen, irreg. *N.* *bring.*
Brot, *n.* -es, -e, *bread.*
Brötchen, little bread, roll.
Bruder, *m.* -s, -üder, *brother.*
brüderlich, brotherly, in a fraternal manner.
brüllen, roar, bellow, bray.
Brüssel, *n.* -s, *Brussels.*
Brust, *f.* -üste, *breast.*
Buch, *n.* -es, -ücher, *book.*
Buchhändler, *m.* -s, *book-seller.*

Buchstabe, *m.* -n, -n, letter of the alphabet.
buchstaben, *spell.*
Büreau, *n.* -s, -s, *bureau;* office.
Burg, *f.* -en, *fortress, castle.*
Bürger, *m.* -s, -, *citizen, burgher.*
Bürgermeister, *m.* -s, -, *burgomaster, mayor.*
Butter, *f.* *butter.*

C

Charakter, *m.* -s, -e, *character.*
Chemie, *f.* *chemistry.*
China, *n.* -s, *China.*
Chor, *m.* and *n.* -es, -öre, *chorus, choir.*
Christ, *m.* -en, -en, *Christ.*
Cicero, *m.* *Cicero.* [tian.
Columbus, *m.* *Columbus.*
Coupe, *n.* -s, compartment of a car; *coupé.*
Convert, *n.* -s, -e, *envelope.*

D

da, *there, then; as, since.*
dabei, *thereby, at the same time.*
Dach, *n.* -es, -ächer, *roof.*
dadurch, *therethrough, thereby.*
dafür, *therefor, for that; ich kann nichts dafür, I cannot help it.*

dagegen, against that, on the contrary.
daher', thence; for that reason, consequently; along.
dahin', thither, so far, along, away.
dahin-fahren, O. s. go away, off.
damals, at that time, then.
Dame, f. -n, lady.
damit', therewith, with it; in order that.
danach' (darnach), thereafter, after that.
Däne, m. -n, -n, Dane.
daneben, beside it, close by.
Dänemark, n. -s, Denmark.
dänisch, Danish.
Dank, m. -es, thanks.
dankbar, thankful.
danken (dat.), thank.
dann, then.
dar (= da), there.
daran', thereon, on that or it.
darauß' (drauf), thereupon, upon that.
daraußen (draußen), outside, out there, out of doors, abroad.
darin', therein, in that.
darin'nen, therein, inside, within.
darnach', that way; thereafter.
darüber, thereover, above it, at it.
darum', on account of that, therefore.

dass, that, so that, in order that.
datie'ren, date.
Dattel, f. -n, date (fruit).
Datum, n. -s, -a, date.
dauern, endure, last.
dauern, move to pity.
Damen, m. -s, -, thumb.
davon', thereof or from, of it or them.
davor', before or for that.
dazu', in addition.
Dede, f. -n, covering, ceiling.
dellinie'ren, decline.
dein, thy, thine.
demnach', according to that, accordingly.
denken, irreg. N. think, be of opinion.
denn, then, in that case, now; for.
dennnoch, nevertheless.
der, the; that; which.
derjenige, the one, that one.
derselbe, the selfsame, the same.
deshalb, on that account, therefore.
deswegen, on that account.
deutlich, clear.
deutsch, German.
Deutsche, m. -n, -n, (the) German.
Deutschland, n. -s, Germany.
Dezember, m. -s, December.
Dieb, m. -es, -e, thief.
dienen (dat.), serve.
Diener, m. -s, -, servant.

Dienstag, *m.* -*s*, -*e*, Tuesday.
dies (*dieser*), *this*, the latter.
dieweil, while.
Ding, *n.* -*es*, -*e*, thing.
doch, *though*, yet, nevertheless, however, I am sure, you know, but, I hope, why yes.
Dogge, *f.* -*n*, bull-dog.
Donau, *f.* Danube.
Donnerhall, *m.* -*s*, thunder-call.
donnern, thunder.
Donnerstag, *m.* -*s*, -*e*, Thursday.
Donnerwetter! by thunder!
Dorf, *n.* -*es*, -*örfer*, village.
Dörfchen, little village.
Dorn, *m.* -*es*, -*en*, -*e* or -*örner*, thorn.
dort (*dorten*), yonder, there.
dorthin, thither.
brauchen, see *daraufen*.
drei, three.
dreimal, three times.
dreißig, thirty.
dreizehn, thirteen.
dreizehnt, thirteenth.
Dresden, *n.* -*s*, Dresden.
dringend, urgent.
drinnen, see *darinnen*.
dritt, third.
drittens, thirdly.
drohen, threaten.
drollig (*t*), droll, comical.
Droschke, *f.* -*n*, hack; *drosky*.
drüben (*dariiben*), over there.

drücken, print.
drücken, press; squeeze.
drunten, see *darunten*.
du, *thou*, you.
dumm, stupid, foolish.
Dummheit, *f.* -*en*, folly, stupidity.
dunkel, dark.
dunkeln, grow dark.
durch (acc.), through.
durchaus, throughout, absolutely; quite.
durchgängig, pervading, general, in general.
durchlesen, O. read through.
durchtrieben, thorough.
dürfen, irreg. *N.* be permitted, may; need.
Dürre, *f.* -*n*, drowth.
Durst, *m.* -*es*, thirst.
dursten (*dürsten*), thirst, be thirsty.

E

eben, even, just, precisely.
echt, genuine.
Ecke, *f.* -*n*, corner.
edel, noble, precious.
Eduard, *m.* -*s*, Edward.
ehe, ere, before.
ehedem, before this time, formerly.
ehler, previously, sooner, rather.
ehren, honor.
ehrlich, honest.
Ei, *n.* -*es*, -*er*, egg.
Eiche, *f.* -*n*, oak.
eigen, own; proper; peculiar.

Eigenschaftswort, *n.* —(e)s, —örter, quality-word, adjective.
eigentlich, real, really.
ein, a, an, one.
ein-, separable prefix, into, in.
einander, one another, each other.
einerlei, one and the same, all the same, of one kind.
einfach, simple.
Einfluß, *m.* —es, —üsse, in-flux, influence.
einig, one, any; pl. einige, some.
ein laden, O. invite.
Einladung, *f.* —en, invitation.
einmal, one time, once, just, only.
Einmaleins, *n.* —es, —e, one time one; multiplication-table.
ein nehmen, O. take in, capp-tivate.
eins, one, one thing.
ein schlafen, O. s. go to sleep.
Einsiedler, *m.* —s, —, hermit.
einsilbig, monosyllabic, la-conic.
ein sperren, shut in.
einst, once, once on a time, some time.
ein steigen, O. s. step or climb in, get in, or aboard.
einstmals, once.
ein teilen, divide.
ein treten, O. s. enter.
Einwohner, *m.* —s, —, inha-bitant.

Einzahl, *f.* singular.
einzel, single, individual.
Eis, *n.* —es, ice.
Eisen, *n.* —s, iron.
Eisenbahn, *f.* —en, railroad.
Elektrizität, *f.* electricity.
elend, wretched, miserable.
Elefant, *m.* —en, —en, ele-phant.
elf, eleven.
elft, eleventh.
Elise, *fem. prop. noun*, Eliza.
Eltern (*pl.*), parents.
empfangen, O. receive, wel-come.
Empfangszimmer, *n.* —s, —, reception-room.
empfehlen, O. recommend, commend, give regards to ; take leave.
Empfehlung, *f.* —en, com-mendation, compliments.
empfinden, O. perceive, feel.
Ende, *n.* —s, —n, end.
endlich, finally, at last.
Engel, *m.* —s, —, angel.
England, *n.* —s, England.
Engländer, *m.* —s, —, Eng-lishman.
englisch, English.
ent- (emp=), inseparable prefix, earlier ant; against ; forth, from, out, away.
entbeden, discover.
entehren, dishonor.
entfliehen, O. s. fly away, es-cape.
entgegen (*dat.*), against.
entgegnen, object, rejoin.

enthalten, O. contain, withhold.
entlaufen, O. s. run away.
entnehmen, O. derive (from, dat.).
entrichten, pay.
entscheiden, O. decide.
entschlossen, decided, courageous.
entschuldigen, excuse.
Entsetzen, n. —s, —, terror.
entsetzlich, terrible.
entspringen, O. s. rise; run away.
entweder, either; entweder— oder, either — or.
entzwei, in two, asunder, apart.
entzweispringen, O. s. or h. spring in two, burst apart.
er, *he*.
er-, insep. prefix, same with *ur-*, adding to verbs the idea of beginning, endeavor, acquisition.
erblicken, perceive.
erblinden, s. grow or get blind.
Erde, f. —n, earth.
Erdgeschoß, n. —es, —ofse, ground-floor, first story.
ereignen, refl. happen.
erfahren, O. learn, find out.
Erfahrung, f. —en, experience.
Erfolg, m. —es, —e, result, success.
ersfrieren, O. s. freeze.
ersfüllen, fulfil, fill.

ergreifen, O. seize, lay hold of.
erhalten, O. receive, come in possession of; sustain.
erheben, O. raise; refl. rise.
erinnern (gen.), refl. remember.
erklälten, refl. catch cold.
erkennen, irreg. N. recognize.
erklären, make clear, declare; state.
Erläuterung, f. —en, explanation.
erlauben, permit, (pers. dat.).
Erlaubnis, f., permission.
Erle, f. —n, alder.
erleiden, O. suffer, sustain.
erquicken, quicken, refresh.
erraten, O. guess out.
erreichen, attain, get to.
erschallen, echo, resound.
erscheinen, O. s. shine forth, appear.
erschrecken, O. (N.) s. (also refl.) be frightened or startled.
erst, first, only; not until.
erstaunen, s. be amazed.
erstens, firstly, in the first place.
ertrinken, O. s. be drowned.
erwachsen, grown up.
erwähnen, mention.
erwarten, expect.
erweden, awake.
erwerben, O. acquire, gain.
Erz, n. —es, —e, ore.
erzählen, relate, tell.
Erzählung, f. —en, narrative.

erziehen, O. bring up, educate.
erzielen, aim at, attain.
es, it, there; es sind, there are.
Esel, m. -s, -, ass, donkey.
essen, O. eat; Essen, n. food.
Eßzimmer, n. -s, -, eating-room, dining-room.
etliche, some.
Etsh, f. name of a river, Adige.
etwa, nearly, about, indeed.
etwas, some, something, somewhat.
euer, your, yours.
Europa, n. -s, Europe.
Ew. (old form *iwer*, for *euer*), your.
ewig, eternal.
Exempel, n. -s, -, example.

S

Fabel, f. -n, fable.
Fahne, f. -n, flag, vane.
fahren, O. s. drive, go (in a wagon or boat), fare.
Fahrgeld, n. -(e)s, -er, fare.
Fahrplan, m. -(e)s, -e or -äne, time-table.
Fahrt, f. -en, passage, journey.
Falle, f. -n, pit-fall, trap.
fallen, O. s. fall; seem.
falsch, false.
Falschheit, f. falseness, treachery.

Fami'lie, f. -n, family.
fangen, O. catch, seize.
Farbe, f. -n, color.
fassen, hold, contain; lay hold of, seize.
fast, almost.
Faust, f. -äufte, fist.
Februar', m. -s, -e, Febrary.
Feder, f. -n, feather, pen.
federlos, featherless.
Federmesser, n. -s, -, pen-knife.
fehlen (dat.), fail, be wanting to, the matter with.
feiern, celebrate; be idle.
Festertag, m. -(e)s, -e, holiday.
Feind, m. -es, -e, foe.
Feinschmecker, m. -s, -, gourmand.
Feld, n. -es, -er, field, country.
Felsenriff, n. -(e)s, -e, rocky reef or ledge.
Fenster, n. -s, -, window.
Ferien (pl.), vacation, holidays.
fern, far.
fertig, ready.
Fertigkeit, f. dexterity.
fest, fast, firm, mighty.
Fest, n. -es, -e, festival, fête, feast.
fett, fat.
Feuer, n. -s, -, fire.
Feuerjo! fire!
finden, O. find, think.
Finger, m. -s, -, finger.
finster, dark.

Fisch, m. -es, -e, fish.	freilich, truly, indeed, for-sooth.
flattern, flatter.	Freitag, m. -s, -e, Friday.
Fleisch, n. -es, -e, flesh, meat.	fremd, strange, foreign.
Fleiß, m. -es, industry; mit Fleiß, on purpose.	Fremde, f. foreign country.
fleißig, industrious.	fressen, O. eat (of animals)
Fliege, f. -n, fly.	Freude, f. -n, joy.
fliegen, O. s. or h. fly.	freuen, make glad; refl. re-joice.
fließen, O. s. or h. flow.	Freund, m. -es, -e, friend.
Flügel, m. -s, -, wing.	Freundin, f. -nen, lady friend.
Flügeltür, f. -en, folding-door.	freundlich, friendly, kind.
Fluß, m. -es, -üsse, river.	Freundschaft, f. -en, friend-ship.
folgen (dat.), s. follow.	Friede, m. -ns, -n, peace.
fordern, take, require.	Friedrich, m. -s, Frederick.
Forst, m. -es, -e, forest.	Friedrichstraße, f. -n, Frederick street.
fort, forth, away! begone! be off!	frisch, fresh.
fort-fahren, O. s. keep on, make a further remark, continue.	froh, glad, joyous, happy.
fort-reißen, O. snatch or drag forth or away.	frömm, worthy, good, devout.
fort-schleichen, O. s. slink away, slip away.	Frucht, f. -üchte, fruit (of the earth or field).
Frage, f. -n, question.	früh, early.
fragen, N. (O.), ask.	früher, sooner, earlier.
Fragezeichen, n. -s, -, question-mark.	Frühling, m. -s, -e, spring.
frankiert, postpaid.	Frühstück, n. -(e)s, -e, early piece, breakfast.
Frankreich, n., -s, France.	frühstücken, take breakfast.
Franzo'se, m. -en, -en, Frenchman.	fügen, fit, unite, do; refl. submit.
franzö'sisch, French.	fühlen, feel.
Frau, f. -en, woman, wife.	führen, lead, conduct, carry on.
Fräulein, young lady, Miss.	Führer, m. -s, -, guide.
frei, free, open; das Freie, the open air, out-of-doors.	füllen, fill.
Freiheit, f. -en, freedom.	fünf, five.
	fünft, fifth.

fünfzehn (funfzehn), fifteen.
 fünfzig (funfzig), fifty.
 funkeln, sparkle.
 für (acc.), for.
 Furcht, f. fear.
 fürchten, fear; refl. be afraid.
 fürchterlich, frightful.
 Fürwort, n. -(e)s, -örter, for-word, pronoun.
 Fuß, m. -es, -üße, foot.
 Fußboden, m. -s, -öden, floor.
 Fußweg, m. -(e)s, -e, foot-way, side-walk.

G

Gabe, f. -n, gift.
 Gabel, f. -n, fork.
 ganz, whole, wholly, quite, entirely.
 gar, very, altogether, quite, absolutely; well-done; indeed; gar nicht, not at all; gar kein, none at all.
 Garten, m. -s, -ärten, gardens.
 Gärtner, m. -s, -, gardener.
 Gas, n. -es, -e, gas.
 Gaslicht, n. -(e)s, -er or -e, gaslight.
 Gast, m. -es, -äste, guest.
 ge-, inseparable prefix; with, together; prefix forming adjectives and collective nouns.
 Gebäck, n. -s, baker's wares.

gebären, O. bear, bring forth; geboren, born.
 Gebäude, n. -es, -, building, edifice.
 geben, O. give.
 Gebet', n. -(e)s, -e, prayer.
 Gebirge, n. -s, -, mountain range or region.
 geboren, born; see gebären.
 gebrauchen, use.
 Gebühr, f. -en, fee, charge.
 Geburtstag, m. -(e)s, -e, birthday.
 Gedicht, n. -(e)s, -e, poem.
 Gefahr, f. -en, danger.
 gefährlich, dangerous.
 gefallen (dat.), O. please.
 gefällig, pleasing, courteous; ist Ihnen etwas gefällig? do you wish anything?
 gefällst, if you please.
 gegen, gen (acc.), toward, against.
 gegenüber (dat.), over against, opposite.
 Gegenwart, f. presence, present time.
 gehen, O. s. go.
 gehorchen, (dat.), listen to (with submission), obey.
 Geige, f. -n, fiddle, violin.
 Geistliche, m. (decl. as adj.), clergyman.
 gelassen, calm, cool.
 geläufig, fluently.
 gelb, yellow.
 Geld, n. -es, -er, money.
 Gelegenheit, f. -en, opportunity.

gelingen , O. s. impers., be successful.	Gesellschaft , <i>f.</i> —en, company, society.
gelten , be valid, aimed at, pass for.	Gesetz , <i>n.</i> —es, —e, law.
Gemälde , <i>n.</i> —s, —, painting, picture.	gesetzt , granted, supposing.
gemein , common.	Gesicht , <i>n.</i> —(e)s, —e or —er, sight; face.
Gemüse , <i>n.</i> —s, vegetables.	gestehen , O. confess.
Gemüt(e) , <i>n.</i> —s, —(e)r, spirit.	gestern , yesterday.
General' , <i>m.</i> —es, —äle, general.	gesucht , popular, sought for.
genug' , enough.	gesund , healthy, well.
Geographie ', <i>f.</i> —i'en, geography.	Gesundheit , <i>f.</i> —en, health, "toast."
gerade , straight, precisely, directly, exactly, just.	gewinnen , O. <i>win</i> , gain.
gerade aus , point blank.	gewiß , certain; surely.
gering' , slight.	gewöhnlich , usual.
Germania , <i>f.</i> Germany.	Gipfel , <i>m.</i> —s, —, top, peak.
gern (gerne) , gladly.	Glanz , <i>m.</i> —es, splendor.
gern haben , like.	Glas , <i>n.</i> —es, —äser, glass.
Gesang , <i>m.</i> —s, —änge, song.	glästern , of glass.
Gesangbuch , <i>n.</i> —(e)s, —ücher, hymn-book.	Glaube(n) , <i>m.</i> —ns, —n, belief.
geschehen , O. s. impers. happen.	glauben , believe, think, suppose.
Geschichte , <i>f.</i> —n, story, history.	gleich , like, immediately, all the same, although.
Geschick(e) , <i>n.</i> —s, —, lot, fate.	Glocke , <i>f.</i> —n, bell.
Geschlechtswort , <i>n.</i> —(e)s, —örter, article.	Glück , <i>n.</i> —es, happiness.
Geschmack , <i>m.</i> —(e)s, taste.	glücklich , happy; lucky.
Geschmacksache , <i>f.</i> matter of taste.	glühen , glow.
Geschmeide , <i>n.</i> —s, jewelry.	Gold , <i>n.</i> —es, gold.
geschwind , quick.	golden , golden.
gesegnet , blessed.	Göthe , <i>m.</i> —s, Goethe.
gesellen , associate.	Gott , <i>m.</i> —es, —ötter, God; bei Gott, by heaven!
	Grab , <i>n.</i> —es, —äber, grave.
	Graf , <i>m.</i> —en, —en, count.
	Gräfin , <i>f.</i> —nen, countess.
	Gram , <i>m.</i> —s, grief.
	grämen , grieve.

Gramma'til, *f.* -en, *grammar.*
Gras, *n.* -es, -äſer, *grass.*
grau, *gray.*
Griechenland, *n.* -s, *Greece.*
groß, *great, big.*
grossartig, *grand, big.*
Großmutter, *f.* -ütter, *grandmother.*
Großsohn, *m.* -(e)s, -öhne, *grandson.*
Großvater, *m.* -s, -äter, *grandfather.*
grün, *green.*
Grund, *m.* -es, -ünde, *low ground, valley.*
grün'en, *grow green.*
grünzen, *grunt.*
Gruß, *m.* -es, -üße, *greeting, salutation, regards.*
grüßen, *greet, salute.*
gut, *good, well, kind.*
Gut, *n.* -(e)s, -üter, *property.*
Güte, *f.* *goodness.*
gütig, *good, kind.*

H

Haar, *n.* -es, -e, *hair.*
haben, *irreg. N.* *have.*
hageln, *hail.*
Hahn, *m.* -es, -ähne, *cock.*
halb, *half.*
Hals, *m.* -es, -älse, *neck.*
halten, *O.* *hold, keep; stop.*
Hamburg, *n.* -s, *Hamburg.*
Hand, *f.* -ände, *hand.*
handeln, *handle, treat of.*

Handschrift, *f.* -en, *manuscript.*
Handſchuh, *m.* -(e)s, -e, *glove.*
Handtuch, *n.* -s, -ücher, *towel, napkin.*
Handwerk, *n.* -(e)s, -e, *handwork, trade.*
hangen, *O.* *hang.*
Hanno'ver, *n.* -s, *name of a city.*
Hans, *m.* -ens, *Jack; (John'nes).*
Hänſchen, *little Jack, Jacky.*
Harfe, *f.* -n, *harp.*
hart, *hard, severe.*
Hase, *m.* -n, -n, *hare.*
Hat, *m.* -ſſes, *hate.*
häſlich, *hateful, homely.*
Haupt, *n.* -es, -äupter, *head, chief.*
Hauptlehrer, *m.* -s, -, *principal (teacher).*
Hauptmann, *m.* -(e)s, -änner or -leute, *captain.*
Hauptstadt, *f.* -ädte, *head city, capital.*
Hauptwerk, *n.* -(e)s, -e, *main work.*
Hauptwort, *n.* -(e)s, -örter, *head-word, noun.*
Haus, *n.* -es, -äuer, *house.*
Hausſtr, *f.* -en, *housedoor.*
Haut, *f.* -äute, *hide, skin.*
heben, *O.* *lift.*
Hecht, *m.* -es, -e, *pike (fish).*
Heidelberg, *n.* -s, *Heidelberg.*
heilig, *holy.*

heim , homeward, home.	herzlich , heartily.
Heimat , f. -en, home.	hente , to-day.
heim-gehen , O. s. go home.	heutzutage , nowadays.
heimlich , home-like, comfortable; secret.	hier , here.
heimwärts , homeward.	hierher , to <i>here</i> , hither.
Heinrich , m. -s, Henry.	Himmel , m. -s, -, heaven, sky.
heißen , O. be called or named, mean, signify.	himmlisch , heavenly.
heiter , cheerful.	hin , hence, that way, away; (opposite of <i>her</i>).
heizen , heat.	hinab=rufen , O. shout down.
Held , m. -en, -en, hero.	hinauf , up hither, up there.
helfen (dat.), O. help.	hinaus , out hence, forth, away.
hell , clear, bright.	hinein , in thither, into.
Henne , f. -n, hen.	hingehen , O. s. go along, pass.
her , hither, ago, since.	hin-kommen , O. s. come there.
herab , down hither, down.	hinten , behind.
herauf , up here.	hinter , hinder, behind.
Herbst , m. -s, -e, autumn.	hinunter , downward.
Herde , f. -n, herd, flock.	hinunter=werfen , O. throw down.
herein , in here, in; come in!	hinweg , away, off.
herein-kommen , O. s. come in.	hin-ziehen , O. s. go forth or away.
hernach , hereafter, afterwards.	hoch , höher, am höchsten, high.
Herr , m. -n, -en, master, lord, gentleman, Mr., Sir; der Herr, the Lord.	Hochdeutsch , high German.
herrlich , lordly, splendid.	Hochschule , f. -n, higher-school (University).
her-sagen , say over, recite.	Hochschullehrer , m. -s, -, highschool teacher.
herüber-scheinen , O. shine across.	höchstens , at the highest, at most.
herunter , down here.	Hochzeit , f. -en, high or festive time, wedding.
herunter-fallen , O. s. fall down.	Hof , m. -s, -öfe, courtyard, court.
hervor-bringen , irreg. N. produce.	hoffen , hope.
hervor-laufen , O. run forth.	
Herz , n. -ens, -en, heart.	

höfentlich (adv.), it is to be
 hoped, as I *hope*.

Hoffnung, f. —en, *hope*.

Höhe, f. —n, *height*, altitude;
 in die **Höhe**, up.

Höhle, f. —n, *hole*, cave.

holz, gracious, charming.

holen, fetch, bring.

Holz, n. —es, —e or —ölzer,
 wood.

Hölzchen, little piece of wood.

Holzkohle, f. —n, *wood-coal*,
 charcoal.

horchen, *hearken*, listen.

hören, *hear*.

häbsch, pretty, fine, nice.

Hui, im **Hui**, in no time.

Hülfe, f. —n, *help*; zu **Hülfe**,
 help!

Hund, m. —es, —e, *dog*,
 hound.

Hundert, n. —s, —e, *hundred*.

Hunger, m. —s, *hunger*.

hungern, *hunger*.

hungrig, *hungry*.

Hut, m. —es, —üte, *hat*.

hüten, keep, *keep to*; refl.
 take care, beware.

Hüter, m. —s, —, *guardian*.

Hütte, n. —s, —, *cottage*.

Hütte, f. —n, *hut*.

S

ich, I.

ihr, her, their; **Ihr**, your.

ihrig, hers, theirs; **Ihrig**
 yours.

im = in **dem**.

immer, always, constantly.

in (dat. or acc.), *in*, *into*, at.
—**in**, suffix forming feminine
 nouns from masculines.

indem *in that*, meanwhile.
 while, since.

indeß (—ßen), *in that*, mean-
 while, nevertheless, while.

innerhalb (gen. or dat.),
 within.

innig, warm, ardent.

insbesondere, *in particular*,
 especially.

Interjektion', f. —en, *inter-
 jection*.

Inschrift, f. —en, *inscription*.

inwendig, *inward*, *inside*,
 within.

irgendwo, anywhere.

irren, be in *error*; refl. be
 mistaken.

Iselberg, m. a mountain
 near Innsbruck.

Italien, n. —s, *Italy*.

Italiener, m. —s, —, (the)
 Italian.

italienisch (adj.), *Italian*.

J

ja, yes, indeed, you know, of
 course, why; **yea**.

jagen, hunt, chase.

Jäger, m. —s, —, *hunter*.

Jahr, n. —es, —e, *year*.

Jahreszeit, f. —en, *season of*
 the year.

Jahrhundert, n. —s, —e, *hun-
 dred years*, century.

Januar', m. —s, —e, *January*.

jawohl', yes, indeed.
je, ever, according as, the
 (with compar.).
jed (*jeder*), each, every;
 either.
jedenfalls, at all events.
jedermann, every man, every
 one.
jedoch', nevertheless, yet.
jeglich, every, each.
jemals, at any time, ever.
jemand, somebody, some
 one, any one.
jen- (*jener*), yonder one,
 that.
jenseit(s) (gen.), on that
 side, beyond.
Jesus, *m.* -u, -u, -um,
 Jesus.
jetzt, now.
Johann', *m.* -s, John.
Jude, *m.* -n, -n, Jew.
Jugend, *f.* youth.
Ju'li, *m.* July.
jung, young.
Jungfer, *f.* -n, young girl,
 virgin, maiden.
Jungfrau, *f.* -en, young
 woman, maiden.
Jüngling, *m.* -s, -e, young
 man.
Juni, *m.* June.

K

Kaffee, *m.* -s, coffee.
Kahn, *m.* -es, -ähne, boat.
Kaiser, *m.* -s, -, emperor.
kalt, cold.

Kälte, *f.* cold, coldness.
Kamel', *n.* -s, -e, camel.
Kamerad', *m.* -s or -en, -en,
 comrade, companion.
Kamin', *m.* -(e)s, -e, chim-
 ney, fireplace; fireside.
Kamm, *m.* -es, -ämme,
 comb.
kämmen, comb.
kämpfen, fight.
kanns = kann das.
Karl, *m.* -s, Charles.
Karlschen, Charley.
Käse, *m.* -s, -, cheese.
Kätz, *f.* -n, cat.
kaufen, buy.
Kaufmann, *m.* -(e)s, -änner
 or -leute, merchant.
kaum, hardly, scarcely.
kein, not one, no one; gar
 kein, none at all.
keineswegs, by no means.
Keller, *m.* -s, -, cellar.
Kellner, *m.* -s, -, butler,
 waiter, servant.
kennen, irreg. N. know.
Kenner, *m.* -s, -, expert,
 judge.
Kerkgitter, *n.* prison-bar,
 grating.
Kieferbaum, *m.* -(e)s, -äu-
 me, pine tree.
Kieferholz, *n.* -es, pine wood.
Kind, *n.* -es, -er, child.
Kinderzimmer, *n.* -s, -,
 children's room, nursery.
Kinn, *n.* -(e)s, -e, chin.
Kirche, *f.* -n, church.
Kirchenlied, *n.* -(e)s, -er,
 church-song, hymn.

Kirsche, f. -n, <i>cherry.</i>	Korrigieren, correct.
Klage, f. -n, <i>complaint.</i>	kostbar, costly.
Klagen, complain.	kosten, cost.
Klang, m. -es, -änge, <i>sound,</i> <i>clang.</i>	Krachen, crack.
Klapp, <i>clap!</i> clack.	Kraft, f. -äfte, <i>strength.</i>
Klar, <i>clear,</i> bright.	Krähen, <i>crow.</i>
Klasse, f. -n, <i>class.</i>	Krank, ill, sick.
Kleid, n. -es, -er, <i>garment,</i> <i>article of clothing, dress.</i>	Kräften, pain, grieve.
lein, little, small.	Kreide, f. -n, <i>chalk;</i> <i>crayon.</i>
Kleinigkeit, f. -en, <i>trifle.</i>	Kreis, m. -es, -e, <i>set, circle,</i> <i>band.</i>
Kleingeld, n. -s, <i>change,</i> <i>small coin.</i>	Krieg, m. -es, -e, <i>war.</i>
Klingen, O. <i>sound ring.</i>	Krone, f. -n, <i>crown.</i>
Klopfen, knock.	Krug, m. -es, -üge, <i>pitcher,</i> <i>jug.</i>
Klug, shrewd.	Küche, f. -n, <i>kitchen.</i>
Knabe, m. -n, -n, <i>boy.</i>	Kugel, f. -n, <i>ball, sphere.</i>
Knie, n. -es, -e, <i>knee.</i>	Kühl, cool.
Knistern, crackle.	Kunst, f. -ünste, <i>art.</i>
Koch, m. -es, -öhe, <i>cook.</i>	Kupfer, n. -s, <i>copper.</i>
Kochen, <i>cook.</i>	Kurz, short; <i>curt.</i>
Koffer, m. -s, -, <i>coffer,</i> <i>trunk.</i>	Kürzlich, recently, lately.
Köhler, m. -s, <i>man's name.</i>	Küssen, kiss.
Kommen, O. s. <i>come.</i>	Kutscher, m. -s, -, <i>coach-</i> <i>man, driver.</i>
Konditeur', m. -s, -e, <i>conductor.</i>	
König, m. -s, -e, <i>king.</i>	
Königin, f. -nen, <i>queen.</i>	
Königreich, n. -es, -e, <i>king-</i> <i>dom.</i>	
Konjunktion', f. -en, <i>con-</i> <i>junction.</i>	L
Winnen, irreg. N. <i>be able,</i>	laben, refresh, quicken.
Konzert', n. -es, -e, <i>concert.</i>	lachen, laugh.
Kopf, m. -es, -öpfe, <i>head.</i>	lächeln, smile.
Koran, m. -s, <i>Koran.</i>	lächerlich, absurd.
Körper, m. -s, -, <i>body;</i> <i>corpse.</i>	laden, load.
	Laden, m. -s, -äden, <i>shop,</i> <i>store.</i>
	lahm, lame.
	Lämpchen, n. -s, -, <i>little</i> <i>lamp.</i>
	Lampe, f. -n, <i>lamp.</i>

Land, *n.* -es, -e and -änder,
land, country; *hier zu
 Lande*, in this country.
Landesmarkt, *f.* -en, bound-
 ary.
Landmann, *m.* -(e)s, -än-
 ner or -leute, farmer.
Landsmann, *m.* -(e)s, -än-
 ner or -leute, fellow-
 countryman, citizen of the
 same country.
lang(e), *long*, a long while.
lange her, *long* ago or
 since.
länger, considerable.
längst, *long* since.
lassen, *O. let*, cause, leave.
Last, *f.* -en, load.
Laster, *n.* -s, vice.
lateinisch, Latin.
Lauf, *m.* -s, -äufe, course.
laufen, *O. s. or h. run.*
laufend, running, current,
 present.
Laut, *m.* -s, -e, sound.
laut (gen.), according to.
laut, *loud*, aloud.
lauten, sound, run, go.
lauter, pure; mere, nothing
 but.
leben, have *life*, live.
Leben, *n.* -s, -, life.
Lebenslauf, *m.* -es, -äufe,
 life's course, way of liv-
 ing.
lebewohl, farewell!
ledern, of *leather*, leathern.
legen, lay; cause to lie.
Lehne, *f.* -n, back or arm
 (of a chair).

lehren, teach.
Lehrer, *m.* -s, -, teacher.
leicht, light, easy, fickle.
Leid, *n.* -es, pain, harm; es
 thut (or ist) mir *leid*, I
 am sorry.
leider, alas! unfortunately, I
 am sorry to say.
leitern, play the lyre.
leihen, *O. lend*.
Lektion', *f.* lesson.
lenken, guide.
Leerde, *f.* -n, lark.
lernen, learn.
lesen, *O. read*.
Lesefur, *f.* -en, marks of
 wear (in reading).
Lesestück, *n.* -(e)s, -e, read-
 ing-piece.
letzt, last, latest.
leuchten, give *light*, shine.
Leute (pl.), people, men,
 folks.
Licht, *n.* -es; -er, light,
 candle.
lieb, lovely, dear; — haben,
 like, love.
Liebchen, Lieb, *n.* little *love*,
 sweetheart.
Liebe, *f.* *love*.
lieben, *love*.
lieber, rather; mir ist lieber,
 I prefer.
lieblich, lovely.
Liebling, *m.* -s, -e, darling,
 favorite.
Lied, *n.* -es, -er, song.
Liebchen, little song.
liefern, deliver, give (a
 battle).

liegen , O. h. or s. <i>lie</i> ; es liegt mir nichts daran, I care nothing for it.	Mahlzeit , f. -en, meal-time, meal.
Linch , Carrie.	Mai , m. -(e)s, -e or -en, May.
links , left, to the left.	Mal , n. -(e)s, -e, time, turn, bout.
Lippe , f. -n, lip.	malen , paint.
List , f. cunning, deceit, craft.	man , one, people, they.
Literatur , f. -en, literature.	mand(er) , many, many a.
Lob , n. -es, praise.	manchmal , many a time, sometimes.
loben , praise.	Mann , m. -es, -änner, man, husband.
Loch , n. -es, -öcher, hole.	Mantua , an Italian city.
Löffel , m. -s, -, spoon.	Märchen , story, tale, legend.
London , n. -s, London.	Mark , f. -en, mark, a coin = 100 Pfennige = about 25 cents.
Lorelei ', f. Lurley.	Markt , m. -es, -ärkte, market, mart.
los- (separable prefix), loose.	Marktplatz , m. -es, -äße, market place or square.
lösen , solve, (of tickets) buy.	marschi'ren , march.
 Löwe , m. -n, -n, lion.	März , m. -es, -e, March.
 Löwenhaut , f. -äute, lion's skin.	Maschi'ne , f. -n, machine.
Luft , f. -üste, air.	Maf , n. -es, -e, measure.
Lust , -üste, pleasure; Lust haben, be inclined.	Mäzen (pl.), bounds; über alle Mäzen, exceedingly.
lüstern , greedy.	mästen , feed with mast, fatten.
lustig , merry, jovial, cheerful; amusing.	Maut , n. -es, -äuler, mouth (of beasts).
Lustspiel , n. -s, -e, pleasure-play, comedy.	Maus , f. -äuse, mouse.
Luther , m. -s, Luther.	Mäuschen , little mouse.
M	
Maas , f. name of a river, Meuse.	Mäusefalle , f. -n, mouse-trap.
machen , make, do, act, play.	Meer , n. -es, -e, sea.
mächtig , mighty.	mehr , more; mehrere (pl.), several.
Mädchen , girl; maiden.	
Mägdelein , n. -s, -, maiden.	

Mehrheit, *f.* -en, plural, plurality.

Mehrzahl, *f.* plural (number).

Meile, *f.* -n, *mile*; the German mile equals about five English miles.

mein, *my, mine.*

meinen, think, *mean.*

meiner, mein (gen. sg. of *ich*), of *me, my*; um meinen willen, for my sake; meinetwegen, on my account; for all I care.

Meinung, *f.* -en, *meaning, opinion.*

meist, most; (superl. of *viel*).

meistens, mostly, at most.

Meister, *m.* -s, -, *master.*

Melodie', (-ei'), *f.* -i'en, *melody, air.*

Memel, *f.* name of a river.

Mendelssohn, *m.* -s, Mendelssohn. [human being.]

Mensch, *m.* -en, -en, *man, merkwürdig, remarkable.*

Messer, *n.* -s, -, *knife.*

Metall', *n.* -es, -e, *metal.*

Milch, *f.* *milk.*

milb, *mild.*

Million', *f.* -en, *million.*

Minu'te, *f.* -n, *minute.*

missfallen, O. displease.

mit (dat.), with; too, also.

mit-bringen, irreg. N. *bring along.*

mit-gehen, O. s. *go along, go (with).*

Mitleid, *n.* -s, *sympathy.*

mit-reisen, s. travel along (with).

Mitschüler, *m.* -s, -, *fellow-pupil.*

Mittag, *m.* -s, -e, *mid-day, noon.*

Mittagessen, *n.* -s, -, *mid-day eating, noon-meal, dinner.*

Mitte, *f.* *middle, midst.*

Mittel, *n.* -s, -, *middle, medium, means.*

Mittelfinger, *m.* -s, -, *middle-finger.*

mittels (gen.), by means of.

Mittwoch, *m.* -s, -e, *mid-week, Wednesday.*

mögen, irreg. N. like; be possible, may.

möglich, possible.

Möglichkeit, *f.* -en, possibility.

Mo'nat, *m.* -s, -e, *month.*

Mond, *m.* -es, -e, *moon.*

Montag, *m.* -s, -e, *Monday.*

Mord, *m.* -(e)s; *Mordio!* murder!

Morgen, *m.* -s, *morning.*

morgen, to-morrow; morgen früh, to-morrow early, to-morrow morning; morgen abend, to-morrow evening.

Morgenlied, *n.* -(e)s, -er, morning hymn.

Morgenrot, *n.* -(e)s, dawn.

Morgenstunde, *f.* -n, morning hour.

Moskito, *m.* -s, -s, mosquito.

müde, tired.	Nacht, f. —ähte, night.
Mühe, f. trouble, pains.	Nächtigall, f. —en, nightingale.
Mühl(en)rad, n. —(e)s, —äder, mill-wheel.	Nachtisch, m. —es, —e, dessert.
Müller, m. —s, man's name.	Nachtzug, m. —(e)s, —üge, night-train.
multiplizie'ren, multiply.	nah(e), near, nigh.
München, n. —s, Munich.	Rähe, f. nearness, neighborhood, vicinity.
Mund, m. —es, —e, —ünder, mouth.	näher, nearer, intimate.
mundlos, mouthless.	Name, m. —ens, —en, name.
Muse'um, n. —s, —e'en, mu- seum.	Narr, m. —en, —en, fool.
Musik', f. music.	Näs'chen, little nose.
Musiklehrer, m. —s, —, mu- sic-teacher.	Näscher, m. —s, —, dainty fellow.
müssen, irreg. N. be obliged to, must.	Natur', f. —en, nature.
Müßiggang, m. —s, idle- ness.	natür'lich, naturally, of course.
Mut, m. —es, mood, courage; spirits.	neben (dat. or acc.), beside, by, with.
Mutter, f. —ütter, mother.	Rebenfluiß, m. —es, —üsse, tributary river, branch.
Muttersprache, f. —n, mother- tongue.	Nebenwort, n. —(e)s, —örter, beside word, adverb.
Mütze, f. —n, cap.	nebst (dat.), along with, be- sides.
N	
nach (dat.), after, to.	Neffe, m. —n, —n, nephew.
Nachbar, m. —s or —n, —n, neighbor.	nehmen, O. take.
nachdem, after that, after, according as.	Neid, m. —es, envy, jealousy.
nach-he'r, afterwards.	nein, no.
nach-laufen, O. s. chase after.	nennen, irreg. N. name.
Nachmittag, m. —s, —e, after- noon.	Nest, n. —es, —er, nest.
	nen, new.
	Neujahr, n. —s, —e, New- year.
	neulich, newly, recently.
	neun, nine.
	neunt, ninth.

neunzehn, *nineteen.*
 neunzig, *ninety.*
 nicht, *not.*
 nichts, *naught, nothing.*
 nie, at no time, *never.*
 nieder, down, *downward.*
 nieder-laffen, O. *let down;*
 refl. *alight.*
 niemals, at no time, *never.*
 niemand, *nobody.*
 nimmer, *no more, never.*
 nimmermehr, *never more,*
 never.
 nirgends, *nowhere.*
 nit, dial. = nicht.
 noch, still, besides, moreover,
 as yet.
 noch nicht, *not yet; noch ein,*
 one more.
 Nordamerika, n. —s, *North*
 America.
 Norden, m. —ens, *north.*
 Not, f. *need, distress.*
 Note, f. *note, musical char-*
 acter.
 nötig, *needful, necessary.*
 Notizbuch, n. —s, —ücher,
 note-book.
 notwendig, *necessary.*
 Novel'le, f. —n, *tale, short*
 story; (distinguished from
 Roman, longer story or
 Romance).
 November, m. —s, —, *Novem-*
 ber.
 Nummer, f. —n, *number.*
 nun, now, *now that; well.*
 nur, *only.*
 Nut, f. —üsse, *nut,*
 nützlich, useful.

D

D, O!
 ob, whether; (archaic)
 above, over.
 ob — auch, although.
 oben, above, on high.
 Oberfläche, f. —n, *surface.*
 Oberst, m. —es or —en, —e or
 —en, *colonel.*
 oberst, uppermost.
 obgleich, although.
 obschon, although.
 Obst, n. —es, *fruit.*
 obwohl, although.
 oder, or.
 Ofen, m. —s, Öfen, *stove,*
 oven.
 offen, open.
 öffentlich, public.
 Offizie'r, m. —s, —e, *officer.*
 öffnen, open.
 oft, oft, often.
 öfters, often.
 oh! oh!
 Oheim, m. —s, —e, *uncle.*
 ohne (acc.), without.
 ohnedem, besides.
 Ohr, n. —(e)s, —e, *ear.*
 Oktober, m. —s, —, *Octo-*
 ber.
 Öl, n. —s, —e, *oil.*
 Onkel, m. —s, —, *uncle.*
 Oper, f. —n, *opera.*
 Ordnung, f. —en, *ordinance,*
 rule; order.
 Ort, m. —(e)s, —e, or Örter,
 place.
 Osten, m. —s, *east.*
 Österreich, n. —s, *Austria.*

B

- Baar**, *n.* -es, -e, pair; ein paar, a few.
baden, pack, seize, lay hold of.
Papier, *n.* -s, -e, paper.
Paris, *n.* Paris.
Park, *m.* -es, -e, park.
Partie, *f.* -en, trip, party.
Passagier, *m.* -s, -e, passenger.
passen, pass muster, fit, apply.
Pastor, *m.* -s, -en, pastor.
Paul, *m.* -s, Paul.
Perle, *f.* -n, pearl.
Perser, *m.* -s, -, Persian.
Perso'nenzug, *m.* -(e)s, -üge, accommodation train.
Pfennig, *m.* -es, -e, penny, a coin = 1/100 of a Mark = about 2½ mills.
Pferd, *n.* -es, -e, horse.
Pferdebahn, *f.* -en, horse-railroad.
Pferdebahnwagen, *m.* -s, - horse-car.
Pflanze, *f.* -n, plant.
Pflege, *f.* care, attendance.
pfliegen, wait upon, care for.
Pflicht, *f.* -en, duty.
pflücken, pluck.
pstui, fie! fo! for shame!
Philosophie, *f.* -i'en, philosophy.
Pilger, *m.* -s, -, pilgrim.
Pistole, *f.* -n, pistol.
Plan, *m.* -(e)s, -äne, plan.
Platz, *m.* -es, -äze, place, seat.

plaudern, converse, chatter.
 plötzlich, suddenly.

Portier, *m.* -s, -s, porter.
Post, *f.* -en, post, post-office, mail.

Präsident, *m.* -en, -en, president.

predigen, preach.

preisen, O. praise.

Preposition, *f.* -en, preposition.

Preußen, *n.* -s, Prussia.

Provo'men, *n.* -s, -ina, pronoun.

Publikum, *n.* -s, public.

Pult, *m.* -(e)s, -e, desk.

Pumpernickel, *m.* -s, pumpernickel.

Punkt, *m.* -es, -e, point, period.

pünktlich, prompt.

D

quälen, torment.

Quelle, *f.* -n, or **Quell**, *m.* -s, -en, spring.

E

Rad, *n.* -es, -äder, wheel.

rash, fast, swift.

rasend, frantic.

Rat, *m.* -es, -äte, advice, decree.

raten, O. advise, counsel, guess.

Rathaus, *n.* -es, -äuser,

council-house, city-hall, court-house.	reisen, h. or s. journey, travel.
Rathaussteller, m. -s, -, city- hall cellar.	Reisende, m. w. traveler.
Rathaustrurm, m. -(e)s, -ürme, city-hall tower.	reissen, O. tear, snatch away, drag.
ratsam, advisable.	reiten, O. h. or s. ride (on horseback).
Rätsel, n. -s, -, riddle.	Reiter, m. -s, -, rider, horseman.
rauben, steal, deprive.	Reitersmann, m. -(e)s, -änner, dragoon.
Räuber, m. -s, -, robber.	Reitpferd, n. -(e)s, -e, rid- ing horse, saddle horse.
rauchen, smoke.	reizend, charming.
Raum, m. -es, -äume, room, place. [away.	Restauration', f. -en, restau- rant.
räumen, make room, clear	Retour'billet', n. -(e)s, -e, return-ticket.
rauschen, move with a noise, rustle, rush, roar.	retten, rescue, save.
Rechnung, f. -en, reckoning, bill.	Rhein, m. -es, Rhine.
Recht, n. -es, -e, right, jus- tice; recht haben, be right.	richtig, right, correct.
recht, right, straight; very, well.	riechen, O. smell.
rechts, right, to the right.	Riegel, m. -s, -, bolt.
reden, talk, speak.	Ring, m. -es, -e, ring.
Redeteil, m. -(e)s, -e, part of speech.	Ringfinger, m. -s, -, ring- finger.
Reblichkeit, f. honesty.	Ringlein, little ring.
Regel, f. -n, rule.	ringsum, round about, all around.
Regen, m. -s, -, rain.	rinnen, O. run, flow.
Regenschirm, m. -(e)s, -e, umbrella.	Röd, m. -es, -öde, coat.
regie'ren, reign over, rule.	roh, rude, raw, rough.
regnen, rain.	Roman', m. -(e)s, -e, novel, romance.
Reich, n. -es, -e, realm.	Romanschreiber, m. -s, -, novelist.
reich, rich.	Römer, m. -s, -, (the) Ro- man.
reichen, reach, hand, pass.	Rose, f. -n, rose.
reif, ripe.	Röß, n. -es, -e, steed.
rein, clear, pure.	
reinlich, neat, clean.	
Reise, f. -n, journey.	

Not, *m.* -*s*, proper name.
rot, *red*.
Rüden, *m.* -*s*, -, ridge, back.
rückwärts, backwards.
rudern, row.
Ruf, *m.* -*s*, -*e*, call.
rufen, O. call out, cry out, shout; call to, summon.
Ruhe, *f.* rest, quiet.
ruhen, rest.
ruhig, quiet, at rest, unconcerned.
rund, round.
Rundreisebillett, *n.* -*es*, -*e*, roundtrip ticket.
Russe, *m.* -*n*, -*n*, (the) Russian.
russisch (adj.), Russian.
Rußland, *n.* -*s*, Russia.

S

Saal, *m.* -*es*, -*äl*e, hall, saloon, parlor.
Sache, *f.* -*n*, thing, affair.
Sachsen, *n.* -*s*, Saxony.
Sack, *m.* -*es*, -*äde*, sack, bag.
sagen, say, tell.
Salz, *n.* -*es*, -*e*, salt.
samt (dat.), together with.
Samstag, *m.* -*s*, -*e*, Saturday.
Sand, *m.* -*es*, sand.
sant, soft, gentle.
Sänger, *m.* -*s*, -, singer.
Sattel, *m.* -*s*, -, saddle.
Satz, *m.* -*es*, -*äze*, sentence.

sauer, sour, disagreeable, hard.
säumen, delay.
Schade(n), *m.* -*s*, -*äden*, harm, damage; es ist schade, it is a pity.
schaben (dat.), harm, injure; scathe.
schädlich, harmful.
Schaf, *n.* -*es*, -*e*, sheep.
schaffen, O. create, produce, be busy about, work; shape.
Schaffner, *m.* -*s*, -, porter, brakeman.
schämen, refl. be ashamed.
Schar, *f.* -*en*, troop, host.
Schatten, *m.* -*s*, -, shadow.
Schauder, *m.* -*s*, -, shuddering, horror.
schauen, look, behold; see.
Schankelstuhl, *m.* -(e)*s*, -*ühle*, rocking-chair.
Schaum, *m.* -*es*, -*äume*, foam, froth; scum.
Schauspiel, *n.* -(e)*s*, -*e*, spectacle; play.
Schauspielhaus, *n.* -*es*, -*äufer*, playhouse, theatre.
scheiden, O. s. part; das Scheiden, parting.
Schein, *m.* -*es*, -*e*, sheen, light.
scheinen, O. shine, seem, appear.
Schemel, *m.* -*s*, -, footstool.
schen, shy.
scheiden, send, refl. prepare, be fitting.
schießen, O. shoot.

Schiff , <i>n.</i> -es, -e, <i>ship.</i>	schön , handsome, fair, beautiful.
Schiffchen , little <i>ship.</i>	
Schiffer , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>boatman; skipper.</i>	schöpfen , draw, draw in, inhale.
Schiller , <i>m.</i> -s, <i>Schiller.</i>	Schöpfung , <i>f.</i> -en, <i>creation.</i>
Schirm , <i>m.</i> -s, -e, <i>shade, shield.</i>	Schornstein , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -e, <i>chimney.</i>
Schlacht , <i>f.</i> -en, <i>battle.</i>	Schottland , <i>n.</i> -s, <i>Scotland.</i>
schlafen , O. <i>sleep</i> , be asleep.	Schranke , <i>f.</i> -n, <i>barrier.</i>
Schlafzimmer , <i>n.</i> -s, -, <i>sleeping-room.</i>	Schrecken , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>terror, fright.</i>
Schlag , <i>m.</i> -es, -äge, <i>blow; warble (of a bird).</i>	schreien , O. N. to be afraid; frighten.
schlagen , O. <i>strike, beat.</i>	Schreibbuch , <i>n.</i> -(e)s, -ücher, <i>writing book.</i>
schlecht , <i>bad.</i>	schreiben , O. <i>write.</i>
schleichen , O. s. <i>move softly, creep, slink.</i>	Schreibfeder , <i>f.</i> <i>pen.</i>
schlichten , <i>settle, pacify.</i>	Schrift , <i>f.</i> -en, <i>writing.</i>
schließen , O. <i>close, shut, lock up; form.</i>	Schriftsteller , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>writer; Schriftstellerin, woman writer.</i>
Schloß , <i>n.</i> -es, -ößer, <i>lock; castle, palace.</i>	Schritt , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -e, <i>pace.</i>
Schlüssel , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>key.</i>	Schuh , <i>m.</i> -es, -e, <i>shoe.</i>
schmecken , <i>taste, savor, smack.</i>	Schuhmacher , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>shoemaker.</i>
Schmerz , <i>m.</i> -es or -ens, -en, <i>pain, smart.</i>	Schuld , <i>f.</i> -en, <i>fault, debt.</i>
Schmied , <i>m.</i> -es, -e, <i>smith, blacksmith.</i>	schuldig , guilty, to blame.
schmücken , <i>adorn.</i>	Schule , <i>f.</i> n. <i>school.</i>
Schnee , <i>m.</i> -es, <i>snow.</i>	Schüler , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>scholar, pupil.</i>
schneiden , O. <i>cut.</i>	Schulgebäude , <i>n.</i> -s, -, <i>school-building.</i>
Schneider , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>tailor.</i>	Schutz , <i>m.</i> -es, <i>protection, defence.</i>
schneien , <i>snow.</i>	schützen , <i>save, protect.</i>
schnell , <i>fast, quick.</i>	Schwachheit , <i>f.</i> -en, <i>weakness.</i>
Schnellzug , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -üge, <i>fast train, express train.</i>	Schwager , <i>m.</i> -s, -äger, <i>brother-in-law.</i>
schon , already, betimes, at least, surely, doubtless, even; schon recht , all right.	Schwalbe , <i>f.</i> -n, <i>swallow.</i>

Schwan , <i>m.</i> -s, -äne, <i>swan</i> .	selb (after <i>der</i>), <i>selfsame</i> , same.
schwarz , black, <i>swarthy</i> , <i>swart</i> .	selber , <i>self</i> .
Schwarzbrot , <i>n.</i> -s, <i>black-bread</i> .	selbst , <i>self</i> ; even.
schweben , float, hover.	selbstzufrieden , <i>self-satisfied</i> .
Schwede , <i>m.</i> -n, -n, <i>Swede</i> .	selten , rare; <i>seldom</i> .
Schweden , <i>n.</i> -s, <i>Sweden</i> .	senden , irreg. <i>N.</i> <i>send</i> .
schwedisch (<i>adj.</i>), <i>Swedish</i> .	September , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>September</i> .
schweifen , <i>s.</i> or <i>h.</i> roam, rove.	setzen , <i>set</i> , place; refl. <i>seat</i> one's self, sit down.
schweigen , <i>O.</i> be silent.	sich , himself, herself, itself, themselves, one another.
Schwein , <i>n.</i> -es, -e, <i>swine</i> , hog.	sicher , <i>sure</i> , <i>secure</i> , certain.
Schweiz , <i>f.</i> <i>Switzerland</i> .	sie , <i>she</i> , they.
Schweizer , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>Swiss</i> .	Sie , you.
schwelgen , revel.	sieben , seven.
schwer , grievous, sore, heavy.	siebent , seventh.
Schwert , <i>n.</i> -es, -er, <i>sword</i> .	sieb(en)zehn , seventeen.
Schwertgellirr , <i>n.</i> -s, <i>sword-clash</i> .	sieb(en)zig , seventy.
Schwester , <i>f.</i> -n, <i>sister</i> .	Sieg , <i>m.</i> -es, -e, <i>victory</i> .
schwimmen , <i>O. h.</i> or <i>s.</i> <i>swim</i> .	Siegel , <i>n.</i> -s, -, <i>seal</i> .
schwören , <i>O.</i> <i>swear</i> , vow.	siegen , conquer.
Schwur , <i>m.</i> -s, -üre, oath.	Silbe , <i>f.</i> -n, <i>syllable</i> .
sechs , six.	singen , <i>O.</i> sing.
sechst , sixth.	Singen , <i>n.</i> -s, <i>singing</i> .
sechzig , sixty.	Sänger , <i>m.</i> -s, -, <i>singer</i> .
See , <i>f.</i> -en, <i>sea</i> .	sinken , <i>O.</i> sink.
See , <i>m.</i> -(e)s, -en, lake.	Sinn , <i>m.</i> -es, -e, sense, meaning; mind, spirit.
Seele , <i>f.</i> -n, soul.	Sitz , <i>m.</i> -es, -e, seat.
segnen , bless.	sitzen , <i>O.</i> sit.
sehen , <i>O.</i> see.	so , <i>so</i> , thus, then, if; <i>so!</i> indeed!
sehr , very, very much.	sobald , as soon as; immediately.
sein , his, its.	soeben , just, now.
sein , <i>O. s.</i> be.	sofort , forthwith, immediately.
seit (<i>dat.</i>), since.	sogar , even.
seitdem , since <i>that</i> , since.	
Seite , <i>f.</i> -n, side, page.	

sogleich, immediately.

Sohn, *m.* —es, —öhne, *son*.

solch (*solcher*), *such, such a*.

Soldat, *m.* —en, —en, *soldier*.

föllen, *irreg.* *N.* *shall*,
should; be obliged to; be
said to.

Sommer, *m.* —s, —, *summer*.

Sommerzeit, *f.* —en, *summer-*
time.

sonderbar, *peculiar, strange.*

sondern, *but (after a nega-*
tive).

Sonnabend, *m.* —s, —e, *eve-*
ning before Sunday, Sat-
urday.

Sonne, *f.* —n, *sun.*

Sonnenschirm, *m.* —(e)s, —e,
sun screen, sun-umbrella.

Sonntag, *m.* —s, —e, *Sunday.*
sonst, *else, otherwise; for-*
merly.

Sorge, *f.* —n, *care.*

sorgen, *take care.*

Sorte, *f.* —n, *sort, kind.*

sowohl — als, *both — and.*

Spanien, *n.* —s, *Spain.*

Spanier, *m.* —s, —, *Spaniard.*

spanisch (*adj.*), *Spanish.*

spät, *late.*

spätestens, *at the latest.*

spazie'ren, *h. or s. go out for*
exercise or pleasure; spazie-
ren gehen, go out walk-
ing; spazieren fahren, go
out driving; spazieren rei-
ten, go out riding..

Spaziergang, *m.* —(e)s, —än-
ge, *walk, promenade.*

Speck, *m.* —es, *bacon.*

Speise, *f.* —n, *food.*

Speisekarte, *f.* —n, *bill of*
fare.

speisen, *take food, dine.*

Spiegel, *m.* —s, —, *mirror.*

Spiel, *n.* —s, —e, *play.*

spielen, *play.*

Spielmann, *m.* —(e)s, —än-
ner or —leute, *player, mu-*
sician, fiddler.

Spielvogel, *m.* —s, —ögel,
playing bird.

Spielzimmer, *n.* —s, —, *play-*
room.

spitzen, *sharpen (pencils).*

Sprache, *f.* —n, *speech, lan-*
guage.

sprechen, *O. speak.*

sprengen, *burst.*

Sprichwort, *n.* —(e)s, —ör-
ter, *saying, maxim.*

springen, *O. s. or h. spring,*
jump.

Spruch, *m.* —es, —üche, *pro-*
verb.

Stadt, *f.* —äfte, *city.*

Stadtrat, *m.* —(e)s, —äte,
city council.

Stadtuhr, *f.* —en, *city clock.*

Stahlfeder, *f.* —n, *steel pen.*

Stall, *m.* —es, —älle, *stable.*

Stand, *m.* —es, ände, *condi-*
tion; im stande sein, be
able.

Star, *m.* —(e)s, —e, *starling.*

stark, *strong, severe, heavy.*

Stärke, *f.* *strength.*

Stärlein, *little starling.*

Station', *f.* —en, *station.*

statt (gen.), instead of.
 stecken, stick, remain fast,
 fix, put.
 stehen, O. stand, be.
 stehlen, O. steal.
 steif, stiff.
 steigen, O. s. ascend, rise.
 Stein, m. -es, -e, stone.
 Steinlohle, f. -n, stone-coal,
 hard coal.
 Stelle, f. -n, place, posi-
 tion.
 stellen, put, place, set.
 sterben, O. s. die.
 Stern, m. -es, -e, star.
 stets, steadily, constantly.
 Stiefel, m. -s, -, boot.
 still(e), still, quiet.
 Stille, f. -n, stillness, quiet.
 Stimme, f. -n, voice.
 stimmen, vote.
 Stirn, f. -en, forehead,
 brow.
 Stock, m. -es, -öde, stick;
 story (of a house).
 Stockwerk, n. -(e)s, -e,
 floor, story.
 stolz, proud.
 Storch, m. -es, -örche, stork.
 stören, disturb.
 Strafgeld, n. -s, -er, fine.
 Straße, f. -n, street.
 strecken, stretch.
 Streichholz, n. -es, -ölzer,
 strike wood, match.
 Streit, m. -es, -e, dispute,
 strife, quarrel.
 streiten, O. strive, fight.
 streng, severe, strict.
 Stroh, n. -es, straw.

Strohhut, m. -(e)s, -üte,
 straw-hat.
 Strom, m. -(e)s, -öme,
 stream.
 strömen, stream.
 Stube, f. -n, sitting room.
 Stück, n. -s, -e, piece; play.
 Stückchen, little piece.
 Student, -en, -en, m. stu-
 dent.
 studie'ren, study.
 Studium, n. -s, Studien,
 study.
 Stuhl, m. -es, -ühle, stool,
 chair.
 Stunde, f. -n, hour, lesson,
 hour's walk (league).
 Sturm, m. -es, -ürme,
 storm.
 Substantiv', n. -es, -e, sub-
 stantive.
 suchen, seek, search for.
 Süden, m. -s, south.
 südlich, southward.
 Suppe, f. -n, soup.
 süß, sweet.

Σ

Tag, m. -es, -e, day.
 täglich, daily.
 Tal, n. -es, -äler, valley,
 dale.
 Taler, m. -s, -, (German)
 dollar, about 73 cents.
 Tannenbaum, m. -(e)s,
 -äume, fir-tree.
 Tante, f. -n, aunt.
 tanzen, dance.

tapfer, excellent, brave.	Tor, n. -(e)s, -e, gate.
Tasche, f. -n, pocket, satchel.	töten, kill.
Tasse, f. -n, cup.	tot-schlagen, O. strike <i>dead</i> , kill.
Tat, f. -en, deed.	Tracht, f. -en, dress, load, volley.
Taube, f. -n, dove.	tragen, O. bear, carry.
täuschen, deceive, disappoint.	Tramwagen, m. -s, -, street-car.
Tausend, n. -s, -e, thousand.	tranchieren, carve.
Tee, m. -s, -, tea.	Träne, f. -n, tear.
Teil, m. n. -es, -e, part; deal.	Trank, m. -es, -änle, drink.
teilweise, part wise, partly.	tränken, give to <i>drink</i> , soak, drench.
telephonieren, telephone.	trauen, trust.
Teller, m. -s, -, plate.	Traum, m. -es, -äume, dream.
Tenor', m. -s, -e or -öre, tenor (singer).	traurig, sad.
Teppich, m. -s, -e, carpet.	treffen, O. hit, fall upon, meet.
teuer, dear, precious, beloved.	treiben, O. drive.
Thea'ter, n. -s, -, theatre.	treunen, separate, divide; refl. part.
Theodor, m. -s, Theodore.	Treppe, f. -n, staircase; eine Treppe hoch, second story.
tief, deep.	treten, O. s. <i>tread</i> , step.
Tier, n. -es, -e, animal.	tren, true, faithful.
Tiergarten, m. -s, -ärten, animal-garden, zoölogical garden, park.	Treue, f. <i>truth</i> , honor.
Tinte, f. -n, ink; tint.	trinken, O. <i>drink</i> .
Tisch, m. -es, -e, table.	Tritt, m. -es, -e, <i>tread</i> , step.
Tischgebet', n. -s, -e, prayer at table, blessing.	Trommel, f. -n, drum.
Tischler, m. -s, -, cabinet-maker, joiner.	trösten, comfort.
Tischtuch, n. -es, -ücher, table-cloth.	trotz (gen. or dat.), in spite of.
Titel, m. -s, -, title.	Trotz (Trutz), m. -es, defiance.
Tochter, f. -öchter, daughter.	trotzdem, nevertheless.
Töchterchen, little daughter.	Tuch, n. -es, -ücher, cloth, canvas, <i>duck</i> ; shawl.
Tod, m. -es, (-e), death.	
Ton, m. -es, -öne, tone, sound. [sel.	
Topf, m. -es, -öpfe, pot, ves-	

tüchtig, sound, heavy, thorough.

tun, O. do, act.

Tür, f. -en, door.

Tyrol', n. -s, Tyrol.

U

u. f. w., und so weiter, *and so farther, etc., &c.*

übel, evil, ill, bad; übel nehmen, take amiss.

üben, practice.

über (dat. or acc.), over.

überall, all over, everywhere.

überein-stimmen, agree.

überfah-ren, O. run over.

überfluk, m. -es, overflow, profusion.

überge-ben, O. deliver.

überhaupt, in general, on the whole, anyway.

überlaß-en, O. turn over, leave.

übermorgen, over to-morrow, day after to-morrow.

überneh-men, O. undertake.

überrock, m. -(e)s, -öde, overcoat.

über-sehen, set over.

über-setz-en, translate.

übersetzung, f. -en, translation.

überzieher, m. -s, -, overcoat.

übung, f. -en, practice, exercise.

Uhland, m. -s, name of an author.

Uhr, f. -en, hour; watch, clock; wie viel Uhr ist es, what time is it?

um (acc.), around, at, for.

um das, in order that.

um — willen (gen.), on account of.

umgehend, by return mail.

umher=irren, wander about.

umhin=lännen, irreg. N. to help, forbear (used with a negative).

um=schreiben, O. rewrite, remodel.

umschrei-ben, O. circum-scribe.

umsonst, in vain.

umstehend, reverse, on the reverse side.

um-steigen, O. change cars.

un-, prefix of negation, corresponding to Eng. **un-**, **in-**; it generally has the accent.

unartig, ill-behaved, naughty.

unbegreiflich, inconceivable.

unbemerkt, unnoticed.

unbestimmt, indefinite.

und, and.

ungefähr, about, nearly.

ungern, unwillingly, reluctantly.

Unglück, n. -(e)s, -e, ill-luck, misfortune.

Universität, f. -en, university.

Unkosten (pl.), expenses.

Unrecht, *n.* —*s*, —*e*, wrong; unrecht haben, be wrong.
Unshuld, *f.* innocence.
unser, *our, ours.*
unten, below, beneath, down.
unter (*dat.* or *acc.*), *under.*
unterbre'chen, O. interrupt.
unterdessen, meanwhile.
unter-gehen, O. *s.* go under, set.
unterhalb (*gen.* or *dat.*), beneath, *under.*
unterhal'ten, O. refl. converse, entertain one's self.
unterwegs, *under way*, on the *way*.
ununterbrochen, *uninterrupted.*
unvorsichtig, careless.
unweise, *unwise.*
unweit (*gen.* or *dat.*), not far from.
unwohl, *unwell.*
Unze, *f.* —*n*, *ounce.*
urteilen, *Judge.*
Ursache, *f.* —*n*, cause.

B

v. = von.
Vater, *m.* —*s*, —*äter*, *father.*
Vaterland, *n.* —*s*, *fatherland*, one's own or native country.
Vaterlandslied, *n.* —*es*, —*er*, patriotic song.
Veilchen, *n.* —*s*, —, *violet.*

ver-, inseparable prefix, adding to verbs the idea of loss, reversal, complete or intense action; and of change of condition.
verachten, despise.
verbessern, make *better*, improve.
verbieten, O. *forbid.*
verbinden, O. *bind up*, oblige.
verblüfft, dazed.
verblühen, fade, die.
Verbrechen, *n.* —*s*, —, *crime.*
verbrennen, irreg. N. *burn up.*
Verbum, *n.* —*s*, —*a* or —*en*, *verb.*
verderben, O. *spoil*, ruin.
verdienen, earn, merit.
Verdruck, *m.* —*es*, —*üsse*, vexation.
veredeln, ennable.
Verfasser, *m.* —*s*, —, *composer*, author.
verfassen, compose.
vergangen, *gone by*, past, last.
vergebens, in vain.
vergessen, O. *forget.*
Bergkönig nicht mein (*Bergkönig-meinnicht*), *n.* —*s*, —, *forget-me-not.*
vergleichen, O. compare.
Bergfügen, *n.* —*s*, —, satisfaction, pleasure.
verheiratet, married.
verirren, refl. lose one's way.
verjagen, chase or drive away.

verlaufen , sell.	verstehen , O. understand; refl. es versteht sich, it is a matter of course, of course.
verlingen , O. die away.	versuchen , attempt, try, endeavor.
verlangen , require, demand.	vertieft , deeply engaged in, absorbed.
Verlangen , n. -s, -, longing, desire.	verwehen , blow away.
verlassen , O. leave, abandon.	verwerfen , O. throw away, reject.
verleihen , O. <i>lend</i> , bestow, confer.	verzeihen , O. pardon.
verliebt , loving, in love.	Vetter , m. -s, -n, cousin.
verlieren , O. lose; verloren, lost, <i>forlorn</i> , ruined.	viel , much.
vermeiden , O. avoid.	vielleicht , perhaps.
vermögen , irreg. N. be able.	vier , four.
vermutlich , presumably, probably.	viermal , four times.
vernachlässigen , neglect.	viert , fourth.
Bernunft , f. reason.	Viertel , n. -s, -, fourth part, quarter.
vernünftig , sensible.	viertens , fourthly.
verraten , O. betray.	vierzehn , fourteen.
Vers , m. -es, -e, verse.	vierzig , forty.
Versammlung , f. en, assembly, gathering, meeting.	Bogel , m. -s, -ögel, bird.
versäumen , miss, neglect.	Bög(e)lein , little bird.
verschieden , different, various.	Volt , n. -(e)s, -ölfer, people.
verschließen , O. close, shut.	Volksbuch , n. -es, -ücher, folksbook.
verschlingen , O. swallow up.	Volkslied , n. -es, -er, popular ballad.
verschwiegen , discreet.	Volksage , f. -n, popular tradition.
verschwinden , O. s. disappear.	voll , full.
versetzen , transfer, remove; rejoin.	-voll , suffix forming adjectives.
versinken , O. fade, die.	vollenden , end in full, finish.
versorgen , supply.	vollziehen , O. perform.
versprechen , O. promise.	vom = von dem.
Verstand , m. -es, understanding, sense.	von (dat.), from, of; by.
verständig , sensible.	

vor (dat. or acc.), before, on account of; **vor vierzehn Tagen**, a fortnight ago.

voran', on before, in front, at the head.

vorans'-sehen, O. foresee..

vorbei-fahren, O. s. go by or past.

vorbei-gehen, O. s. pass.

vorgerückt, advanced.

vorgestern, before yesterday, day before yesterday.

Vorhaben, n. -s, -, purpose.

vorher, before, previously, first.

vorig, former, preceding, last, next before.

vor-leSEN, O. read aloud.

vorletzt, before the last, last but one.

Vormittag, m. -s, -e, before midday, forenoon.

vor-schießen, O. lend, advance.

Vorfilbe, f. -n, prefix.

Vorstadt, f. -äfte, suburb.

vor-stellen, place before, introduce.

Vorstellung, f. -en, introduction.

vorteilhaft, advantageous.

vortrefflich, excellent, admirable.

vorü'ber-gehen, O. s. go by or past.

Vorurteil, n. -s, -e, prejudece.

vorwärts, forwards; forward!

Vorwort, n. -(e)s, -örter, before word, preposition.

vor-zeigen, show, display.

vor-ziehen, O. prefer.

W

Wacht, f. -en, watch, guard.

wacker, valiant.

Waffenbruder, m. -s, -üder, brother in arms.

Wagen, m. -s, -, wagon, car.

wahr, true; nicht wahr, is it not true, or so?

während (gen.), during; while.

wahrhaftig, true, truly, in fact.

wahrscheinlich, having the appearance of truth, probable.

Walb, m. -es, -älber, forest, wood, grove.

Wand, f. -ände, wall (of a room).

wandern, s. or h. *wander*.

Wange, f. -n, cheek.

wann, when?

warm, warm.

Wärme, f. warmth, heat.

warten, wait for, auf (acc.).

=wärts, -ward, adverbial ending.

warum', on account of what, why?

was, what, that which, whatever; **was für**, what for, what kind of?

Wasser, n. -s, -, water.

Wassergrube, *f.* —*n.*, water-pit or tank, cistern.
Wasserfall, *m.* —*(e)s*, —*älle*, waterfall.
weden, wake up, awake.
weder, neither; *weder* — *noch*, neither — nor.
weg, away, forth.
Weg, *m.* —*eß*, —*e*, way, road; weg, make way! *weg da*, out of the way!
wegen (gen.), on account of.
weg=gehen, *O. s.* go away.
weg=reißen, snatch away.
Weh, *n.* —*eß*, —*e*, woe, pain.
wehe, woe! alas!
Wehmutter, *f.* sadness.
Weihnacht, *f.* —*en*, Christmas.
Weihnachtsbaum, *m.* —*(e)s*, —äume, Christmas-tree.
Weihnachtstag, *m.* —*(e)s*, —*e*, Christmas-day.
weil, because, since.
Weile, *f.* while, space of time, leisure.
Wein, *m.* —*eß*, —*e*, wine.
weinen, weep.
Weise, *f.* —*n.*, manner, wise; melody, air.
weise, wise.
weiß, white.
weit, wide, far, distant.
welch (*welcher*), which, what, that, who.
Welle, *f.* —*n.*, wave, billow.
Welt, *f.* —*en*, world.
wenig, little.
wenigstens, at least.
wenn, when, if.

wenn — auch, although.
wenngleich, although.
wer, who, he who, whoever; iwer da, who's there!
werden, *O. s.* become, grow.
Werk, *n.* —*eß*, —*e*, work.
Wertag, *m.* —*eß*, —*e*, working day.
wert, worthy, worth; dear.
weshalb, on account of what, wherefore?
Westen, *m.* —*s*, west.
Wetter, *n.* —*s*, —, weather, storm, tempest.
wichtig, weighty, important.
wider (acc.), against.
wie, how, in what way; as.
wieder, again.
wieder=kommen, *O. s.* come again.
wieder=sehen, see again;
Wiedersehen, *n.* meeting.
Wien, *n.* —*s*, Vienna.
Wiese, *f.* —*n*, meadow.
wiewohl, although.
wild, wild.
Wilhelm, *m.* —*s*, William.
Wilhelmstraße, *f.* William Street.
Willen, *m.* —*s*, —, will, design, purpose; um meinet=willen, on my account.
willkommen, welcome.
Wind, *m.* —*es*, —*e*, wind.
Winter, *m.* —*s*, —, winter.
wirklich, actually, really.
wissen, irreg. *N.* know, know how to, be able.

Wissenschaft, *f.* —en, science, knowledge.
wo, *where*, in which; when, if.
Woche, *f.* —en, week.
Woge, *f.* —n, wave.
Wogenprall, *m.* —s, wave-dash.
woher, whence?
wohin, whither, what way?
wohl, well.
wohl, to be sure, indeed, probably, I presume; ja wohl, yes indeed, why certainly.
wohlan, well then! come on!
Wohltäterin, *f.* —en, benefactress.
wohnen, dwell, reside.
Wohnhaus, *n.* —es, —äufer, dwelling-house.
Wohnung, *f.* —en, dwelling, lodging, apartment.
Wolf, *m.* —es, —ölfe, wolf.
Wolke, *f.* —n, cloud.
wollen, irreg. *N.* *will*, be willing, wish, desire.
wollen, woolen.
womit, wherewith, with what or which.
worans, whereout, out of what or which.
worin, wherein, in what or which.
Wort, *n.* —es, —e, örter, word; Worte = words connectedly, as language; Wörter = words disconnectedly, as parts of speech.

Wörterbuch, *n.* —(e)s, —ücher, word-book, dictionary.
Wörtlein, *n.* —s, —, little word.
worüber, whereat, whereof, over what or which.
wovon, whereof, of or concerning what or which.
wozu, whereto, for what purpose?
wunderbar, wonderful.
wundern, refl. and impers. wonder.
wundersam, wonderful.
wunderschön, wonderfully beautiful.
wünschen, wish.
würdig, deem worthy of, honor with (pers. acc., thing gen.).
Wüste, *f.* —n, waste, wilderness, desert.

3

Zahl, *f.* —en, number; tale.
zähl, count.
Zahlwort, *n.* —(e)s, —örter, number-word, numeral.
zähm, tame.
Zahn, *m.* —es, —ähne, tooth.
zart, tender, delicate.
zehn, ten.
zehnmal, ten times.
zehnt, tenth.
Zeigefinger, *m.* —s, —, index finger.
zeigen, show, point out.

Seile , f. -n, line.	zuerst' , at first.
Zeit , f. -en, time; tide.	zu-fallen , O. s. <i>fall to or in</i> .
Zeitalter , n. -s, -, age, period.	zufällig , by chance.
Zeitverlust , m. -s, -, loss of time.	zufrie'den , at peace, satisfied.
Zeitung , f. -en, newspaper.	Zufrie'denheit , f. contentment.
Zeitwort , n. -(e)s, -örter, time-word, verb.	Zug , m. -es, -üge, <i>tug</i> ; draught; train.
zer- , inseparable prefix, adding the idea of apart, asunder, in pieces.	zu=geben , O. concede.
zerbrechen , O. <i>break to pieces</i> .	Zugführer , m. -s, -, train leader, conductor.
zerquetschen , crush, quash.	zugleich' , at the same time.
zerreißen , O. <i>tear in pieces</i> .	Zugluft , f. draught of air.
zerstören , destroy.	Zuhörer , m. -s, -, auditor.
Ziegelstein , m. -(e)s, -e, brick.	Zukunft , f. future.
ziehen , O. draw, <i>tug</i> ; s. march, go.	zuletzt' , at last, finally.
Ziel , n. -s, -e, aim, goal.	zum = zu dem.
ziemlich , suitable, proper, seemly, tolerably, pretty.	zu=machen , shut, close, fasten.
Zier , f. ornament, charmer.	Zunge , f. -n, <i>tongue</i> .
Zierde , f. -n, ornament.	zur = zu der.
Zimmer , n. -s, -, timber; structure; room.	zurecht'=kommen , O. s. get along.
Zimmermann , m. -(e)s, -änner or -leute, carpenter.	zurück' , back, backwards.
Ziste'rne , f. -n, <i>cistern</i> .	zurück=geben , O. give back.
Zitrone , f. -n, lemon.	zurück=gehen , O. s. back out, desert.
zittern , tremble.	zurück=schicken , send back.
zu (dat.), to; too.	zusam'men , together.
zu-bringen , irreg. N. <i>bring to</i> , spend.	zusammen=fallen , O. s. <i>fall down</i> , fall in ruins.
zuden , dart, flash.	zusammen=halten , O. hold together.
Zuckerwerk , n. -(e)s, confectionery, candy.	zusammen=rechnen , take or reckon together.
	zuvor' , before.
	zuvor=kommen , O. s. anticipate.

zuweißen, at times, sometimes.

zwanzig, twenty.

zwanzigst, twentieth.

zwar, indeed, to be sure.

Zweck, *m.* -(e)s, -e, purpose, aim.

zwei, two.

zweierlei, of two kinds.

Zweifel, *m.* -s, -, doubt.

Zweig, *m.* -es, -e, bough; twig.

zweimal, two times, twice.

zweit, second.

zweitens, in the second place, secondly.

zwischen (dat. or acc.), between.

zwölf, twelve.

zwölft, twelfth.



ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY

1. German words or parts of words spaced (A b e n b) are those historically related to the English (or a part of it) at the head of the article.

2. For abbreviations and further explanations, see the German-English vocabulary.

A

a, an, e i n.

able (be —), können.

about, concerning, . über
(acc.).

about, nearly, ungefähr.

about, (be — to), im Be=
griffe sein.

above, über, oberhalb (gen.).

accept, annehmen, O.

accident, Unglück, n. —s, Un=
glücksfall, m. —(e)s, —älle.

accompany, begleiten.

account (on), (um) — we=
gen; on my account, (um)
meinetwegen.

accusative, A c c u s a t i v, m.
—es, —e.

acquaintance, Bekanntschaft,
f. —en.

acquainted (be — with),
kennen, irreg. N.

act (as if), tun, O. (als ob).

actually, wirklich, wahr=
haftig.

address, anreden.

address, A d r e s s e, f. —n.

adjective, Eigenschaftswort,
n. —(e)s, —örter, A d j e k=
t i v, n. —s, —e.

admire, bewundern.

advance (lend), vorschie=
ßen, O.

advanced, vorgerückt.

adverb, Nebentwort, n. —(e)s,
—örter, A d v e r b (ium),
n. —s, —bien.

advise, raten (dat.).

afraid (be —), fürchten, refl.

after, nach (dat.).

afternoon, Nachmittag, m.
—s, —e.

again, wieder, nochmals.

against, gegen, wider
(acc.).

ago (a fortnight —), vor
vierzehn Tagen.

ago (an hour —), vor einer
Stunde.

agree, übereinstimmen.

agreeable, angenehm.

ah, a ö.	arm, <i>A r m</i> , <i>m.</i> -eß, -e.
alive (be —), live, <i>Le b e n</i> .	arrive, <i>a n = k o m m e n</i> , <i>O. s.</i>
all, <i>a l l</i> , ganz; all right, schon (recht).	article, <i>G e s c h l e c h t s w o r t</i> , <i>n.</i> -(e)ß, -örter; <i>A r t i f e l</i> , <i>m.</i> -ß, -.
almost, fast.	as, <i>a l s</i> ; as though, <i>a l s</i> ob.
alone, <i>a l l e i n</i> ; let alone, bleiben (or stehen) <i>l a f =</i> <i>s e n</i> .	as, like, wie.
aloud, <i>l a u t</i> ; read aloud, vorlesen, <i>O.</i>	as, since, da.
alphabet, <i>A b c</i> , <i>n.</i> <i>A I =</i> <i>p h a b e t</i> , <i>n.</i> -s, -e.	as yet, noch.
already, schon.	ask, <i>f r a g e n</i> , <i>N.</i> (<i>O.</i>).
also, auch, mit.	ask for, bitten, <i>O.</i> (with um).
although, obwohl.	at, um (acc.), <i>z u</i> (dat.), in.
always, immer.	at (the store or house of), bei (dat.).
America, <i>A m e r i k a</i> , <i>n.</i> -ß.	attention, <i>A d a t</i> , <i>f.</i> pay —, — geben.
an, a, e i n.	aunt, <i>T a n t e</i> , <i>f.</i> —n.
and, u n d.	author, <i>Verf a s s e r</i> , <i>m.</i> -ß, -.
and so forth, u n d s o weiter, u. f. w.	autumn, <i>H e r b s t</i> , <i>m.</i> -eß, -e.
angry, ärgerlich.	avoid, <i>vermeiden</i> , <i>O.</i>
animal, <i>E i e r</i> , <i>n.</i> -eß, -e.	
another, einander; noch ein.	
answer, <i>A n t w o r t</i> , <i>f.</i> -en.	
answer, <i>a n t w o r t e n</i> , be- a n t w o r t e n, erwidern.	
anxiety, <i>A n g s t</i> , <i>f.</i>	
anyway, denn, überhaupt, doch.	
anywhere, irgendwo; not anywhere, nirgendwo, nir- gends.	
apiece, <i>d a ß S t ü d</i> .	
appear, <i>e r s c h e i n e n</i> , <i>O.</i>	
apple, <i>A p p e l</i> , <i>m.</i> -ß, <i>Ä p f e l</i> .	
apple-tree, <i>A p p e l b a u m</i> , <i>m.</i> -(e)ß, -äume.	
April, <i>A p r i l</i> , <i>m.</i> -ß, -e.	
arise, <i>a u f - s t e h e n</i> , <i>O. s.</i>	
	B
	back, <i>z u r ü c k</i> , wieder da.
	bad, <i>s c h l e c h t</i> .
	baker, <i>B ä d e r</i> , <i>m.</i> -ß, -.
	ball (dance), <i>B a l l</i> , <i>m.</i> -ß, -älle.
	band, <i>S t r e i s</i> , <i>m.</i> -eß, -e.
	bath-room, <i>B a d e z i m m e r</i> , <i>n.</i> -ß, -.
	bathe, <i>b a d e n</i> .
	be, <i>s e i n</i> , <i>O. s.</i>
	beautiful, <i>s c h ö n</i> .
	beautiful (wonderfully —), m u n d e r f u l l y s c h ö n.
	because, <i>w e i l</i> .

become, werden, O. s. (of, aus).
 bed (go to —), zu Bett gehen.
 before, vor (dat. or acc.).
 begin, anfangen, O.; beginnen, O.
 beginning, Anfang, m. —s, —änge.
 Belgium, Belgien, n. —s.
 believe, glauben.
 belong, gehören (dat.).
 below, beneath, unten.
 Berlin, Berlin', n. —s.
 beside, neben.
 besides, außerdem', noch (dazu).
 between, zwischen (dat. or acc.).
 bill, Rechnung, f. —en.
 bill of fare, Speisekarte, f. —n.
 bind, binden, O.
 bird, Vogel, m. —s, —ögel.
 black, schwarz.
 blackbread, Schwarzbrot,
 blind, blind. [n. —s.
 blow, blasen, O.
 blue, blau.
 bold, fühn.
 book, Buch, n. —es, —ücher.
 bookseller, Buchhändler, m.
 —s, —.

boot, Stiefel, m. —s, —.
 born, geboren.
 both, beide.
 bottle, Flasche, f. —n.
 boy, Knabe, m. —n, —n.
 branch, Ast, m. —es, Äste.
 bread, Brodt, n. —es, —e.

break (— to pieces), (zer)=brechen, O.
 breakfast, Frühstück, n. —(e)s, —e.
 breakfast, frühstücken.
 breath (take —), aufatmen, Atmen holen.
 bridge, Brücke, f. —n.
 bright, hell, klar.
 bring, bringen, irreg. N.
 bring with or along, mitbringen, irreg. N.
 broad, breit. [—über.
 brother, Bruder, m. —s, —.
 brother-in-law, Schwager, m. —s, —äger.
 Brussels, Brüssel, n. —s.
 build, bauen.
 building, Gebäude, n. —s, —.
 burn, brennen, irreg. N.
 busy, beschäftigt.
 but, aber; nur.
 butter, Butter, f.
 buy, kaufen.
 by, by means of, mit (dat.), bei (dat.), mittels (gen.), von (dat.), durch (acc.).
 by (go —), vorbei=fahren, O. s.
 by the side of, neben (dat).

C

call, name, nennen, irreg. N.
 call, summon, rufen, O.
 called (be —), heißen, O.; what is that called, wie heißt das?

calm, gelassen.
can, können, irreg. N.
cap, Mütze, f. -n.
capital, Hauptstadt, f. -äfte.
captain, Hauptmann, m.
-(e)s, -änner or -leute.
car, Wagen, m. -s, -.
car (railway —), Eisen-
bahnwagen, m. -s, -.
care for (desire), wünschen,
wollen, mögen.
careless, unborsichtig.
carpenter, Zimmermann, m.
-(e)s, -änner or -leute.
carpet, Teppich, m. -s, -e.
carrier (letter —), Brief-
träger, m. -s, -.
carry, tragen, O.
carve, tranchieren (pr. tran-
schie'ren).
case, Fall, m. -s, -älle.
case (in grammar), Caſus,
m. -, -.
cash, bares Geld, n. -es; pay
cash, bar bezahlen.
castle, Schloß, n. -ſſes,
-öſſer.
cease, stop, auf-hören.
ceiling, Decke, f. -n.
cellar, Kell er, m. -s, -.
century, Jahrhundert, n.
-s, -e.
certain, gewiß.
certainly, wohl, gewiß; why
certainly, ja wohl.
chair, Stuhl, m. -es, -ühle.
change, Kleines Geld.
Charles, Karl, m. -s.
charming, reizend.
cheat, betrügen, O., täuschen.

cherry, Kirsche, f. -n.
child, Kind, n. -es, -er.
choose, wählen.
church, Kirche, f. -n.
citizen, Bürger, m. -s, -.
city, Stadt, f. -äfte.
city hall, Rathaus, n. -es,
-äuer.
claim to, wollen.
class, Klasse, f. -n.
clean, rein.
clear, klar.
clock, Uhr, f. -en; at what
o'clock, um wieviel Uhr?
close, zu-machen.
coachman, Kutscher, m.
-s, -.
coal, Kohle, f. -n; char-
coal, Holzkohle; hard
coal, Stein Kohle.
coat, Rock, m. -es, -öde.
coffee, Kaffee, m. -s.
cold, kalt.
cold (catch —), er fällt en,
refl.
cold, Erkrankung, f. -en.
Cologne, Köln, n. -s.
colonel, Oberst, m. -es or
-en, -e or -en.
color, Farbe, f. -n.
come, kommen, O. s.
come back, wieder kommen.
come in, here in = kommen,
O. s.; come in, her-
ein!
commence, an-fangen, O. be-
ginnen, O.
commend, empfehlen, O.
common, gewöhnlich, gemein.
company, Gesellschaft, f. -en.

concert, *Konzer t'*, *n.*
 -es, -e.
 conductor, *Zugführer*, *m.* -s,
 -, *Kondukteur'*, *m.*
 -s, -e.
 conjunction, *Bindewort*, *n.*
 -(e)s, -örter, *Kon =*
junction', *f.* -en.
 consist of, bestehen, *O.* (of
 aus) (dat.).
 constant, beständig.
 contain, enthalten, *O.*
 contrary to, gegen (acc.).
 copper, *Kupfer*, *n.* -s, -.
 copy, ab-schreiben, *O.*
 corner, *Ecke*, *f.* -n.
 correct, *korrigie ren*.
 cost, *kosten*.
 count, *Graf*, *m.* -en, -en.
 count, *zähl en*.
 country, *Land*, *n.* -es, -e or
 -änder; in the country,
 auf dem Lande; in this
 country, *hier zu Lande*.
 country (one's own or na-
 tive), *Vaterland*, *n.* -s.
 countryman, citizen of the
 same country, *Landes- =*
mann, *m.* -(e)s, -än= *n*
 ner or -leute.
 countryman, farmer, peasant,
Landmann, *m.* -(e)s,
 -änner or -Leute.
 coupé, *Coupe'*, *n.* -s.
 course (of —), es versteht
 sich, natür'lich, jawohl.
 court, *Hof*, *m.* -es, -öfe.
 court-house, *Rathaus*, *n.* es,
 -äuser.
 cousin, *Vetter*, *m.* -s, -n.

cover, bedecken.
 crackle, knistern.
 cup, *Tasse*, *f.* -n.
 cut, schneiden, *O.*

D

Dane, *Däne*, *m.* -n, -n.
 dangerous, gefährlich.
 Danish, *dänisch*.
 dare, *dürfen*, irreg. *N.*
 -wagen.
 dark (obscure), dunkel.
 dark (without light), finster.
 date, *Datum*, *n.* -s, -a.
 daughter, *Tochter*, *f.*
 -öchter.
 daughter (little), *Stöck =*
terchen.
 day, *Tag*, -es, -e.
 day after to-morrow, über= *morgen*.
 day before yesterday, vor= *gestern*; one of these
 days, *dieser Tag e*.
 dazed, verblüfft.
 deal (a great —), viel, recht
 viel.
 dear, beloved, *Lieb*; O dear!
 ach Gott!
 death, *Tod*, *m.* -es.
 December, *Dezember*, *m.*
 -s, -.
 decline, *deflinie ren*.
 deliver, überreichen, liefern.
 demand, verlangen, erfor= *dern*.
 Denmark, *Dänemark*,
n. -s.

depart, ab=reisen, s.
 deprive, rauben (pers. dat.,
 thing acc.).
 descend, steigen, O. s.
 dictionary, Wörterbuch, n.
 -(e)s, -ücher.
 die, sterben, O. s.
 different, verschieden, ander;
 differently, anders.
 difficult, schwier.
 diligent, fleißig.
 dine, zu Mittag essen or
 speisen.
 dining-room, Speisesaal, m.
 -s, -äle, Esszimmer, n.
 -s, -.
 dinner, Mittagessen, n. -s, -.
 disappoint, täuschen.
 do, tun, O. (in interrog. and
 emphat. forms involved in
 the simple verb).
 do, how do you do, wie be=
 finden Sie sich? wie geht es
 Ihnen?
 dog, Hund, m. -es, -e.
 door, Tür, f. -en.
 door-bell, Klingel, f. -n; the
 door-bell rings, es klingelt.
 doubt, zweifeln.
 doubtless, ohne Zweifel.
 draw (pull), ziehen, O.
 dress, Kleid, n. -es, -er.
 drink, trinken, O.
 drive, fahren, O. s.; go out
 driving, spazieren fahren.
 during, während (gen.).
 duty, Pflicht, f. -en.
 dwell, wohnen.
 dwelling-house, Wohn=
 haus, n. -es, -äuser.

E

each, jeder, -e, -es.
 each other, einander.
 ear, Ohr, n. -es, -en.
 early, früh.
 earn, verdienen.
 earth, Erde, f. -n.
 easy, leicht.
 east, Osten, m. -s.
 eat, essen, O. fressen, O.
 speisen.
 Edward, Eduard, m. -s.
 egg, Ei, n. -es, -er.
 eight, acht.
 eighteen, achtzehn.
 eighth, acht.
 eighty, achtzig.
 either, entweder; auch.
 eleven, elf.
 eleventh, elft.
 else, sonst, anders.
 England, England, n. -s.
 English, englisch.
 Englishman, Engländer,
 m. -s, -.
 enough, genug.
 entire, entirely, wholly, ganz.
 error, Fertum, m. -s, -ü=mer.
 especially, besonders.
 Europe, Europa, n. -s.
 even, auch, selbst, sogar; even
 though, wenn — auch.
 evening, Abend, m. -s, -e.
 evening (last —), gestern
 abend; vorigen Abend.
 ever, je, jemals; ever so —,
 noch so —.
 every, jed(-er, -e, -es).

every five minutes, alle
fünf Minuten.
every one, jedermann.
everything, alles.
example, Beispiel, *n.* -*s*, -*e*;
for example, zum Beispiel.
exceedingly, außerordentlich.
exclaim, ausrufen, *O.*
excuse, entschuldigen.
exercise, Aufgabe, *f.* -*n*.
expect, erwarten.
expense, Ausgabe, *f.* -*n*.
explanation, Erklärung, *f.*
-en.
express, ausdrücken.
express train, Schnellzug, *m.*
-(e)s, -üge.
extraordinarily, extremely,
außerordentlich.
eye, Auge, *n.* -*s*, -*n*.

F

fact (in —), wirklich, wahr=
haftig.
fail, fehlen.
faithful, treu.
fall, fallen, *O.* *s*.
far, fern, weit.
fare, Fahrtgeld, *n.* -(e)s,
-er.
farmer, Landmann, *m.*
-(e)s, -änner or -leute.
fast, schnell.
father, Vater, *m.* -*s*, -ä=
ter.
fault, Fehler, *m.* -*s*, -.
favor, würdigen (acc. pers.
gen. thing).

fear, Angst, *f.* Furcht, *f.*
February, Februar, *m.*
-*s*, -e.
feel, empfinden, *O.*; füh=
len, refl.
fifteen, fünfzehn,
(fünfzehn).
fifth, fünft.
fifty, fünfzig (funf=
zig).
fight, Kampf, *m.* -*s*, -äm=
pfen.
fight, kämpfen.
finally, endlich, zuletzt.
find, finden, *O.*
fine, handsome, schön.
finger, Finger, *m.* -*s*, -.
finish, vollenden.
fire, Feuer, *n.* -*s*, -.
first, erst.
first, previously, vorher.
first (at —), zuerst.
fish, Fisch, *m.* -*s*, -e.
fit, passen.
five, fünf.
floor, Fußboden, *m.* -*s*, -ö=
den.
flower, Blume, *f.* -*n*.
fluently, geläufig.
fly, fliegen, *O.*
follow, folgen (dat.), *O.*
fond of, lieben, mögen, gern
with appropriate verb.
foot, Fuß, *m.* -*s*, -üße.
footstool, Schemel, *m.* -*s*, -.
for, für (acc.), um (acc.),
auf (acc.).
forbid, verbieten, *O.*
forenoon, Vormittag, *m.*
-*s*, -e.

foresee, boraus se hen, O.
 forest, F o r s t, m. -es, -e.
 forget, ve r g e s s e n, O.
 forget-me-not, Ve r g i b -
 me i n n i c h t, n.
 fork, Gabel, f. -n.
 formerly, once, e i n s t, frü -
 her.
 fortnight (a — ago), vor
 v i e r z e h n Tagen.
 fortunate, g l ü c h l i c h t.
 forty-eight, a c h t u n d v i e r -
 z i g.
 four, v i e r.
 fourth, v i e r t.
 France, F r a n k r e i c h, n. -s.
 free, f r e i .
 French, f r a n z ö ß i s c h.
 Frenchman, F r a n z o ß e, m.
 -n, -n.
 fresh, f r i s c h.
 Friday, F reitag, m. -s,
 -e.
 friend, F r e u n d, m. -es,
 -e.
 friend (lady), F r e u n d i n,
 f. -nen.
 friendly, f r e u n d l i c h .
 from, von (dat.), aus (dat.).
 fruit (of trees), O b s t, n.
 -es,
 full, v o l l.

G

gain, gewinnen, O.
 garden, G a r t e n, m. -s,
 -ärt en.
 gardener, G ä r t n e r, m.
 -s, -.

gas, G a s, B r e n n g a s, n.
 -e s, -e.
 gaslight, G a s l i c h t, n.
 -(e)s, -er (or -e).
 gay, l u s t i g.
 gardener, G ä r t n e r, m.
 -s, -.
 generally, g e w ö h n l i c h .
 gentleman, H e r r, m. -n,
 -en; gentlemen! m e i n e
 H e r r e n!
 German, d e u t s c h .
 German (the), D e u t s c h e, m.
 -n, -n.
 Germany, D e u t s c h l a n d, n.
 -s; G e r m a n i a, f.
 get, b e k o m m e n, O.
 get along, z u r e c h t = k o m m e n,
 O. s.
 get in, e i n = s t e i g e n, O. s.
 get to, e r r e i c h e n (acc.).
 get up, r i s e, a u f = s t e h e n,
 O. s.
 girl, M ä d c h e n, n. -s, -.
 give, g e b e n, O. s c h e n k e n.
 glad (be —), f r e u e n, r e f l .
 glass, G l a s, n. -es, -ä s t e r.
 glove, H a n d s c h u h, m. -(e)s,
 -e.
 go (in a wagon or boat),
 f ä h r e n, O. s.
 go, walk, g e h e n, O. s.
 go away, w e g = g e h e n, O.
 go in, h i n e i n = g e h e n, O.
 go out, a u s = g e h e n, O. s.
 go out walking, s p a z i e r e n
 g e h e n.
 God, G o t t, m. -es, -ö t t e r.
 gold, G o l d, n. -es.
 gone (all —), a l l e .

good, *g u t.*good-bye, *Leben Sie wohl!*
auf Wiedersehen!grammar, *G r a m m a t i k,*
*f. -en.*grandfather, *G r o ß v a t e r,*
*m. -s, -äter.*gray, *g r a u.*great, big, *g r o ß.*Greece, *G r i e c h e n l a n d,* *n.*
*-s.*green, *g r ü n.*grow, become, *werden,* O. s.grown up, *erwachsen.*guest, *G a s t,* *m. -es, -äste.*guide, *F ü h r e r,* *m. -s, -.*gymnasium, *G y m n a s i u m,* *n. -s, -en.***H**hack, *D r o s c h k e,* *f. -n.*hail (it —s), *e s h a g e l t,*
impers.half, *h a l b.*Hamburg, *H a m b u r g,* *n.*
*-s.*hand, *h a n d,* *f. -ände.*hand, pass, reach, *r e i c h e n.*handsome, *s ch ö n.*Hanover, *H a n n o v e r,* *n.*
*-s.*happen, *geschehen,* O. s. *er-*
eignen, refl.happy, *gl ü d l i c h.*hard, *starr,* *h a r t,* *s ch w e r.*hardly, *faum.*Hartz mountains, *H a r z =*
gebirge, *n. -s, -.*hat, *h u t,* *m. -es, -üte;* hats
off, *h u t a b l.*hate, *h a f f e n.*have, *h a b e n,* irreg. N.he, *er.*head, *K o p f,* *m. -es, -ö p f e.*health, *G e s u n d h e i t,* *f. -en.*hear, *h ö r e n.*heart (learn by —), *a u s -*
*w e n d i g l e r a e n.*heat, *h e i z e n.*heaven, *H i m m e l,* *m. -s, -.*heavy, *s ch w e r.*help, *h e l f e n,* O.; neg.
nichts dafür (tun) können,
nicht umhin können.Henry, *H e i n r i c h,* *m. -s.*her (poss.), *i h r.*here, *h i e r.*hereafter, *n a c h h e r.*hero, *H e l d,* *m. -en, -en.*high, *h o c h.* [decl.]himself (adj.), *s e l b s t,* in-
himself (refl. pron.), *s ic h.*his, *sein.*hither, *h i e r h e r.*Hohenzollern, *H o h e n -*
*z o l l e r n.*hold, *h a l t e n,* O.home, *H e i m a t,* *f. -en.*home (at —), *d a h e i m,* zuhonest, *ehrlich.* *H a u s e.*hope, *h o f f e n.*hope (as I —), it is to be
hoped, *h o f f e n t l i c h*
(adv.).horse, *P f e r d,* *n. -es, -e.*horse-car, *P f e r d e b a h n w a g e n,*
m. -s, -. Tramwagen, *m.*
-s, -.

hotel, *Gästehaus*, *n.* -es, -äu-
ser; *Hotel*, *n.* -s, -s.
hour, *Stunde*, *f.* -n.
hour (an — ago), vor einer
Stunde.
house, *Haus*, *n.* -es, -äuser.
house (at the — of), bei
(dat.).
house (to our), zu uns.
house-door, *Hausstür*, *f.*
-en.
how, wie?
however, aber, wie... auch.
how much, wieviel? how
many, wie viele?
hundred, *Hundert*, *n.*
-s, -e.
hunger, *Hunger*, *m.* -s.
hungry, *hungrig*.
hunter, *Jäger*, *m.* -s, -.
hurry, hasten, eilen, s. or h.
husband, *Mann*, *m.* -es,
-änner.
hymn-book, *Gesangbuch*, *n.*
(-e)s, -ücher.

I

I, i ðj.
if, wenn.
ill, krank.
immediately, sofort, sogleich.
important, wichtig.
impossible, unmöglich.
improve, verbessern.
in, into, in (dat. or acc.).
incessant, beständig, unun-
terbrochen.
inclined (be —), mögen,
irreg. N., Lust haben.

indeed, ja, aber doch, zwar;
yes indeed, ja wohl.
index-finger, Zeige finger,
m. -s, -.
industrious, fleißig.
inhabit, bewohnen.
inhabitant, Einwohner, *m.*
injure, schaden, O. [-s, -.
ink, Tinte, *f.* -n.
instead, statt, anstatt
(gen.).
interjection, Ausrufungs-
wort, *n.* -(e)s, -örter.
Interjection, *f.* -en.
into, in, in (dat. or acc.).
introduce, vorstellen, ein-
führen.
invite, einladen, O.
invitation, Einladung, *f.*
-en.
iron, Eisen, *n.* -s, -.
it, es.
Italian, italienisch.
Italian (the), Italiener,
m. -s, -.
Italy, Italien, *n.* -s.
its, sein.

J

James, *Ja'kob*, *m.* -s.
January, *Januar*, *m.*
-s, -e.
John, *Jo'hann*, *m.* -s.
journey, Reise, *f.* -n.
joy, Freude, *f.* -n.
July, *Juli*, *m.*
June, *Juni*, *m.*
just, just so, precisely, eben.
just now, so eben (soeben).

K

- keep, behalten, O.
 key, Schlüssel, *m.* —*s*, —.
 kind, Art, *f.* —*en*, Sorte,
f. —*n*.
 kind, gut, freundlich; to be
 so kind, die Güte haben.
 kind (of every), allerlei'.
 kind (what — of), was
 für?
 king, König, *m.* —*s*, —*e*.
 kitchen, Küche, *f.* —*n*.
 knife, Messer, *n.* —*s*, —.
 knock, Klopfen.
 know, wissen, irreg. N.
 know, be acquainted with,
 kennen, irreg. N.

L

- lady, Dame, *f.* —*n*.
 lady (young), Fräulein.
 lamp, Lampe, *f.* —*n*.
 lamplight, Lampenlicht,
n. —*s*, —*er*.
 land, Land, *n.* —*s*, —*e* or
 —änder.
 language, Sprache, *f.* —*n*.
 large, groß.
 last, Letzt; at last, endlich.
 last, continue, dauern.
 last but one, vor Letzt.
 last evening, gestern
 late, spät. [abend.
 Latin, Lateinisch; in Lat-
 in, auf Lateinisch.
 laugh, Lachen; laugh at,
 aus Lachen.

- lay, legen.
 lead, Blei, *n.* —*s*.
 lead-pencil, Bleistift, *m.*
 —(*e*)s, —*c*.
 leaf, Blatt, *n.* —*s*, —ätter.
 learn, lernen.
 learn by heart, auswendig
 lernen.
 least, at least, wenigstens,
 mindestens.
 leave, depart, start, ab-
 fahren, O. s.; ab=gehen, O.
 s.; ab=reisen.
 leave, forsake, verlassen, O.
 leave (take —), Abschied
 nehmen, O.; empfehlen, O.
 refl.
 leg, Bein, *n.* —*s*, —*e*.
 Leipzig, Leipzig, *n.* —*s*.
 lend, leihen, O.
 lesson, Aufgabe, *f.* —*n*; Stun-
 de, *f.* —*n*.
 let, lassen, O.; let us go, ge-
 hen wir, wollen wir gehen.
 letter, Brief, *m.* —*s*, —*e*.
 letter (of the alphabet),
 Buchstabe, *m.* —*n*, —*n*.
 letter-carrier, Briefträger,
m. —*s*, —.
 Lewis, Ludwig, *m.* —*s*.
 librarian, Bibliothekar', *m.*
 —*s*, —.
 library, Bibliothek', *f.*; Bi-
 bliothek'zimmer, *n.* —*s*, —.
 lie, liegen, O. h. or s.
 light, Licht, *n.* —*s*, —*er*
 (or —*e*).
 lighting, Beleuchtung, *f.*
 lighten (it —*s*), es blüht,
 impers.

like, *gleich*.
 like, lieben, mögen, irreg. N.
 like (I should —), *i ch möch-*
 te gern.
 like (be pleased with), ge=
 fallen (impers. dat.).
 little, *klein.*
 little (a —), (*ein*) *wenig.*
 live, *leben, wohnen.*
 lock, *Schloß, n.* —*sses, -ößer.*
 locomotive, *Locomotiv=*
 ve c, f. -n.
 long, *lang, adv.* *lange;*
 no longer, *nicht mehr.*
 look at, *ansehen, O.*
 lose, *verlieren, O.*
 lose one's way, *verirren, refl.*
 lost, *verloren; from ver=*
 lieren.
 loud, *laut.*
 love, *lieben.*

M

make, *machen.*
 man, *Mann, m.* —*es, -än-*
 ner.
 man, human being, *Mensch,*
 m. -en, -en.
 manage, *machen.*
 manner, *Weise, f.* —, —*n.*
 many, *viele* (pl.).
 many, many a, *manch(er).*
 March, *März, m.* —*es, -e.*
 market, *Markt, m.* —*es,*
 -ärkte.
 mathematics, *Mathematik, f.*
 matter, *Sache, f.* —*n.*

matter (it is no —), *es*
 schadet nicht.
 matter (what is the —
 with), *was fehlt?* (dat.).
 may, dürfen, irreg. N.
 May, *Mai, m.* —*(e)s, -e*
 or -en. [zeit, f. —*en.*
 meal, meal-time, *Mahl-*
 mean to, intend, *wollen.*
 mean, *meinen.*
 meat, *Fleisch, n.* —*es, -e.*
 meet, begegnen (dat.) s.;
 treffen, O.
 merchant, *Kaufmann, m.*
 —*(e)s, -änner or -leute.*
 merry, *lustig.*
 metal, *Metall, n.* —*(e)s,*
 -e.
 middle, *Mitte, f.*
 middle-finger, *Mittelfinger, m.* —*s, -.*
 mile, *Mile, f.* —*n.*
 milk, *Milch, f.*
 million, *Million, f.* —*en.*
 mind, *Sinn, m.* —*es, -e.*
 mine, my, *mein.*
 minute, *Minute, f.* —*n.*
 minute (a — ago), *vor einer*
 Minute.
 Miss, *Fräulein.*
 miss, fail of, *versäumen.*
 mistake, by —, *aus Versehen.*
 mistaken, to be —, *sich irren.*
 moderately, *ziemlich.*
 Monday, *Montag, m.*
 —*s, -e.*
 money, *Geld, n.* —*es, -er.*
 month, *Monat, m.* —*s,*
 -e.
 moon, *Mond, m.* —*es, -e.*

moonlight, *Mondenlicht*, *n.* —es, —.
more, *mehr*; *noch* (*von* —).
morning, *Morgen*, *m.* —s, —.
morning (this —), *heute früh*; (to-morrow —), *morgen früh*.
most, *meist*.
mother, *Mutter*, *f.* —ütter.
mountain, *Berg*, *m.* —es, —e.
Mr., *Herr*, *m.* —n, —en.
Mrs., *Frau*, *f.* —en.
much, *viel*, *sehr*; how much, *wieviel?* how many, *wie viele?*
multiplication table, *Einmaleins*, *n.* —es, —e.
Munich, *München*, *n.* —s.
must, *müssen*, irreg. *N.*
my, *mine*, *mein*.

N

nail, *Nagel*, *m.* —s, —ägel.
name, *Name*, *m.* —s, —n.
name, *nennen*, irreg. *N.*
name (what is the name of), *wie heißt?*
narrate, *erzählen*; narrator = the narrating (one); narrative = the narrated (thing).
naughty, unartig.
near, by the side of, *neben* (dat.).
near, nigh, *nah*.
nearly, about, ungefähr.
necessary, *nötig*, notwendig.

need, *bedürfen* (gen.), irreg. *N.*; brauchen.
neither, *weder*; neither — nor, *weder — noch*.
nephew, *Neffe*, *m.* —n, —n.
never, *nie*, *niemals*.
nevertheless, *doch*.
new, *neu*.
newspaper, *Zeitung*, *f.* —en.
next, *nächst*.
next, coming, following, *folgend*.
night, *Nacht*, *f.* —ächte.
nine, *neun*.
nineteen, *neunzehn*.
nineteenth, *neunzehnt*.
ninth, *neunt*.
no, *nein*.
no, none, *kein*.
none at all, *gar kein*.
north, *Norden*, *m.* —s.
northeast, *Nordost*, *m.* —ens.
not, *nicht*.
not at all, *gar nicht*.
not yet, *noch nicht*.
note, *Briefchen*.
note (musical), *Note*, *f.* —n.
note-book, *Notizbuch*, *n.* —s, —ücher.
nothing, *nichts*.
noticeable, *auffallend*.
noun, *Hauptwort*, *n.* —(e)s, —örter; *Substantiv*', *n.* —es, —e.
novel, *Roman*', *m.* —(e)s, —e.
November, *November*, *m.* —s, —.
now, *jetzt*, *nu*n.

now (just —), **so eben** (soeben).

numeral, **Zahlwort**, *n.* —(e)s, —örter; **N u m e r a ' l e**, *n.* —s, —ia.

O

O! o, ach.

obey, gehorchen (dat.).

obliged, verbunden (dat.);
be obliged to, müssen.

occupy, dwell in, bewohnen.

October, **O k t o b e r**, *m.* —s, —.

o'clock, Uhr; at what o'clock,
um wieviel Uhr?

of, von (dat.).

of, von (dat.); often ex-
pressed by genitive case
alone.

of it or them, davon.

officer, **O f f i z i e r**, *m.* —s,
—e.

often, oft.

oil, **Ö l**, *n.* —s.

old, alt.

omit, auslassen, O.

on, an (dat. or acc.), auf
(dat. or acc.).

once, formerly, once on a
time, einst; at once, so-
gleich.

once, one time, einmal.

one, ein; the one, derjenige.

one, people, they, man.

one and a half, anderthalb.

one another, einander.

only, nur.

onwards, on, an.

open, auf-machen, öffnen.

open, offen.

opera, **Ö p e r**, *f.* —n.

opinion, Meinung, *f.* —en.

opinion (to be of), denken,

irreg. N.

opposite, gegenüber (dat.).

or, oder.

order, bestellen.

order (in — that), damit.

order (in — to), um zu.

other, ander.

ought (to), sollen (pret. and
plup.).

our, unser.

ourselves, adj. selbst.

out, auß.

over, über (dat. or acc.).

overcoat, überrock, *m.* —(e)s,
—öde.

owe, schuldig sein (dat.)

P

page, Seite, *f.* —n.

pair, Paar, *n.* —es, —e.

palace, **P a l a s t**, *m.* —es,
—äste.

paper, **P a p i e r**, *n.* —es, —e.

paper, newspaper, Zeitung,
f. —en.

parents, Eltern (pl.).

Paris, **P a r i s**, *n.*

park, **P a r k**, *m.* —(e)s, —e;
Tiergarten, *m.* —s, —ärtgen.

parlor, Saal, *m.* —(e)s,
—äle.

part, Teil, *m.* (*n.*), —(e)s,
—e; in part, zum Teile.

part of speech, *Wortteil*, *m.*
-(e)s, -e.
particularly, *besonders*.
pass (*hand*), *reichen*.
pass (*an evening*), *zubringen*, *irreg. N.*
past, *last*, *vergangen*.
past (*go —*), *vorbei=gehen*,
O. *s.*; *drive past*, *vorbei=fahren*, O. *s.*
patriotic song, *Vaterlands-Lied*, *n.* -(e)s, -er.
pay, *bezahlen*; *bestreiten*.
pen, *Feder*, *f.* -n.
pen-knife, *Federmesser*, *n.*
-s, -.
penny, *Pfennig*, *m.*
-es, -e.
people, *Leute* (*pl.*), *man*.
perhaps, *vielleicht*.
permit, *erlauben*, (*pers. dat.*).
permitted (*be —*), *dürfen*, *irreg. N.*
person, *Person*', *f.* -en;
Mensch, *m.* -en, -en.
picture, *Bild*, *n.* -es, -er.
piece, *Stück*, *n.* -s, -e;
apiece, *das Stück*.
piece for reading, *Lesestück*,
n. -(e)s, -e.
place, *seat*, *Platz*, *m.* -es,
-äke.
place (*in your —*), *an Ihrer Stelle*.
place (*take —*), *happen*, *geschehen*, O. *s.*
plan, *Plan*, *m.* -s, -äne.
plate, *Teller*, *m.* -s, -.
play, *spielen*.

play (*at the theatre*), *Schauspiel*, *n.* -s, -e, *Stück*, *n.* es, -e.
pleasant, *angenehm*.
please, *gefallen*, O. (*im-pers.*); *wollen*.
please (*if you —*), *gefälligst*, *bitte*. [-]
pleasure, *Vergnügen*, *n.* -s,
plural, *Mehrzahl*, *f.*, *Mehrheit*, *f.* -en.
pocket, *Tasche*, *f.* -n.
poem, *Gedicht*, *n.* -(e)s, -e.
point (*be on the — of*), *im Begriffe sein*.
popular song, *Vollständig*, *n.*
-(e)s, -er.
possible, *möglich*.
possibly, *vielleicht*.
postage-stamp, *Postmarke*, *f.* -n.
post-office, *Post*, *f.* -en.
pot, *Topf*, *m.* -es, -öpfen.
pound, *Pfund*, *n.* -es, -e.
practice, *üben*.
praise, *loben*.
praise, *Lob*, *n.* -(e)s.
precious, *noble*, *edel*.
precisely, *gerade*.
prefer, *vorziehen*, O.; ich
ginge lieber, I should prefer to go.
prepare, *bereiten*.
preposition, *Vorwort*, *n.*
-(e)s, -örter, *Preposition*, *f.* -en.
present, *anwesend*.
present, *give*, *schenken*.
present, *introduce*, *vorstellen*.

president, *P r ä s i d e n t'*, *m.*

—en, —en.

pretty, *h ü b s c h*.

pretty, tolerably, *ziemlich*.

probably, *w a h r s c h e i n l i c h*,
wohl.

produce, *h e r v o r = b r i n g e n*, ir-
reg. *N.*

promenade, walk, *S p a z i e r -*
g a n g, *m.* —(e)s, —änge.

promise, *v e r s p r e c h e n*, *O.*

promise, *V e r s p r e c h e n*, *n.* —s.

prompt, *p ü n k t l i c h*.

pronoun, *F ü r i v o r t*, *n.* —(e)s,
—örter, *P r o n o u m e n*, *n.*
—s, —nomina.

pronounce, *a u ß = s p r e c h e n*, *O.*

Prussia, *P r e u ß e n*, *n.* —s.

pshaw! O pshaw! ach was!
bah!

public, *ö f f e n t l i c h*.

pumpernickel, *P u m p e r -*
n i c k e l, *m.* —s.

pupil, *S c h ü l e r*, *m.* —s, —.

put, place, *s t e l l e n*, *s e t z e n*.

put on (of a hat), *a u f = s e t z e n*.

put on (of clothes), *a n -*
z i e h e n, *O.*

put oneself out, *b e m ü h e n*,
refl.

Q

quarter, *V i e r t e l*, *n.* —s, —.

question, *F r a g e*, *f.* —n.

quick, *s c h n e l l*.

quicksilver, *Q u e c h s i l -*
b e r, *n.* —s.

quite, *g a n z*; (tolerably)
ziemlich.

R

railroad, *E i s e n b a h n*, *f.* —en.

rain, *R e g e n*, *m.* —s.

rains (it), *e s* *r e g n e t*,

raise, *e r h e b e n*, *O.* [impers.

rapidly, *r a s c h*, *s c h n e l l*.

rascal, *S c h e l m*, *m.* —s, —e.

rather, I should rather, *i d y*
möchte lieber.

reach, *r e i c h e n*.

read, *l e s e n*, *O.*

ready, *b e r e i t*, *f e r t i g*.

real, *w i r t l i c h*.

receive, come in possession
of, *e r h a l t e n*, *O.*

receive, get, *b e k o m m e n*, *O.*

receive, welcome, *e m p f a n -*
g e n, *O.*

reception room, *B e s u c h s z i m -*
m e r, *n.* —s, —, *E m p f a n g s -*
z i m m e r, *n.* —s, —.

recite, *h e r = s a g e n*.

reckon together, *z u s a m m e n -*
r e c h n e n.

recommend, *e m p f e h l e n*, *O.*

recover, *e r h o l e n*, refl.

red, *r o t*.

refer to, *e r w ä h n e n*.

regret, *b e d a u e r n*.

relate, *e r z ä h l e n*.

relieve, *b e r u h i g e n*, *e r l e i c h -*
t e r n.

remain, *b l e i b e n*, *O.* s.

remember, *e r i n n e r n*, refl.
(gen. or an with acc.), *s i c h*
e n t s i n n e n (gen.), *n i c h t*
ver g e s s e n.

report, (is reported to), *s o l -*
l e n.

repose, *Ruhe*, *f.*
 require, (*er-*)fordern.
 reside, *wohnen*.
 restaurant, *R e s t a u r a = t i o n'*, *f.* —en.
 result, *Erfolg*, *m.* —(e)s, —e.
 retain, behalten, *O.*
 return, *zurück*-kommen.
 reward, belohnen.
 rich, *re i ch*.
 rid (be — of), *los* sein (gen. or acc.).
 ride (on horseback), *re i = ten*, *O. h.* or *s.*
 right, *re ch t*.
 right (be —), *re ch t* haben.
 right away, *gleich*, *sogleich*.
 right now, *soeben*.
 ring, *R i n g*, *m.* —es, —e.
 ring-finger, *R i n g f i n g e r*, *m.* —s, —.
 ripe, *re i f*.
 rise, get up, *a u f* stehen, *O. s.*
 rise (of sun and moon), *auf = gehen*, *O. s.*
 river, *F l u ß*, *m.* —es, —üsse.
 roast, *B r a t e n*, *m.* —s, —.
 rocking-chair, *S chaukelstuhl*, *m.* —(e)s, —ühle.
 roll, *Brötchen*.
 Roman (the), *R ö m e r*, *m.* —s, —.
 roof, *D ach*, *n.* —es, —ächer.
 room, *Zimmer*, *n.* —s, —.
 rose, *R o s e*, *f.* —n.
 round-trip ticket, *R u n d = reisebillett*, *n.* —s, —e or —s.
 route, *Linie*, *f.* —n.

run, *laufen*, *O. s.*; *r e n n e n*, *irreg. N.*; run after, *nach = laufen* (dat.).
 Russia, *R u s s l a n d*, *n.* —s.
 Russian, *r u s s i s c h*.
 Russian (the), *R u s s e*, *m.* —n, —n.

S

safe, *sicher*.
 sake (for my —), *um m e i = netwillen*.
 same (the —), *d e r s e l b e*.
 same (all the —), *gleich*, *e i = nerlei*.
 satisfied, *zufrieden*.
 Saturday, *S o n n a b e n d*, *m.* —s, —e, *S a mstag*, *m.* —s, —e.
 save, *schützen*, *retten*.
 Saxony, *S a x o n e*, *n.* —s.
 say, tell, *s a g e n*.
 saying, proverb, *S p r i c h w o r t*, *n.* —(e)s, —örter.
 scarcely, *taum*.
 scholar, pupil, *S c h ü l e r*, *m.* —s, —.
 school, *S c h u l e*, *f.* —n.
 school building, *S c h u l g e = b äude*, *n.* —s, —.
 Scotland, *S c h ö t t l a n d*, *n.* —s.
 search, *suchen*.
 season-of-the-year, *S a h = reszeit*, *f.* —en.
 seat, *S i c k*, *m.* —es, —e, *Plat*z, *m.* —es, —äze.
 seat (take a —), *Plat*z neh = men, *sa*ßen, *refl.*

second, zweit.	sidewalk, Fußweg, <i>m.</i> -(e)s,
see, sehen, O.	-e.
seem, scheinen, O.	silver, Silber, <i>n.</i> -s.
seldom, selten.	simple, einfach.
sell, verkaufen.	simply, (merely), nur.
send, schicken, senden, ir-	since, seit (dat.).
reg. N.	since, as, da.
sense (good —), Verstand,	sing, singen, O.
<i>m.</i> -es.	single, einzeln.
sentence, Satz, <i>m.</i> -es, -äße.	singular (number), Einheit.
September, September,	sir, mein Herr. [f.
<i>m.</i> -s, -.	sister, Schwester, <i>f.</i> -n.
serve, dienen; (of meals)	sit, sitzen; sit down, sich
auf-tragen, O.	setzen.
set (of sun and moon), un-	sitting-room, Stube, <i>f.</i> -n.
ter-gehen, O. s.	six, sechs.
seven, sieben.	sixth, sechst.
seventeen, sieben (en) =	sixty, sechzig.
zehn.	sky, Himmel, <i>m.</i> -s, -.
seventh, sieben-t.	sleep, to be asleep, schlafen, O.
seventy, sieben (en) zig.	sleeping room, Schlafzimmer, <i>n.</i> -s, -.
several, mehrere (pl.).	slow, langsam.
shade (shield), Schirm, <i>m.</i>	small, klein.
she, sie. [-s, -e.	smith, Schmied, <i>m.</i> -es,
shine, scheinen, O.	-e.
ship, Schiff, <i>n.</i> -es, -e.	smoke, rauchen.
shoe, Schuh, <i>m.</i> -es, -e.	smoking, Rauchen, <i>n.</i> -s.
shoemaker, Schuhmä-	snow, Schnee, <i>m.</i> -s.
cher, <i>m.</i> -s, -.	snow (it —s), es schneit,
shop, store, Läden, <i>m.</i> -s, -	impers.
or —äden.	so, thus, so.
short, kurz, klein.	so (is it not —), nicht wahr?
should, sollen (in pret. and	soft, mild.
plup.).	soldier, Soldat', <i>m.</i> -en.
show, zeigen.	-en.
shut, zu-machen.	some, einige (pl.).
sick, krank.	some, somewhat, etwas,
side, Seite, <i>f.</i> -n; this	
side, diesseits (gen.); that	
side, jenseits (gen.).	

somebody, some one, jemand.	still, yet (of time), noch;
something, etwas, was.	(adversative) doch.
sometimes, zuweilen.	stop, an-halten, O.
son, Sohn, m. -es, -öhne.	stop, cease, auf-hören.
song, Lied, n. -es, -er.	store, shop, Laden, m. -s, -
soon, bald.	or -äden.
sorry (I am —), es tut mir Leid.	store (at the — of), bei (dat.).
sorry (I am — to say), unfortunately, leider.	story, Märchen, n. -s, -, Aneldeote, f. -n.
sort, kind, Sorte, f. -n;	story (of a house), Stod=werk, n. -(e)s, -e.
what sort of, was für.	story (first), Erdgeschoß, n. -fies, -osse.
sound, run, go, laufen.	story (second), eine Treppe hoch.
soup, Suppe, f. -n.	stove, Ofen, m. -s, Öfen.
sour, sauer.	straight, gerade.
south, Süden, m. -s.	straw hat, Strohhut, m. -(e)s, -üte.
Spain, Spanien, n. -s.	street, Straße, f. -n.
Spaniard, Spanier, m. -s, -.	strike, schlagen, O.
Spanish, spanisch.	strong, stark.
speak, sprechen, O.	student, Student, m. -en, -en.
speech (part of), Redeteil, m. -(e)s, -e.	study, studieren.
spell, buchstaben-ren.	study, Studium, n. -s, Studien.
spend, pass, zu-bringen, ir-reg. N.	such, such a, solch (solcher).
splendid, prachtvoll, herrlich.	summer, Sommer, m. -s, -.
spread, belegen.	sun, Sonne, f. -n.
spring, Frühling, m. -s, -e.	sun shade, sun umbrella, Sonnenschirm, m. -(e)s, -e.
square, Platz, m. -es, -äze.	Sunday, Sonntag, m. -s, -e.
stand, stehen, O.	supper, Abendbrot, n. -(e)s, Abendessen, n. -s.
start, ab-fahren, O. s., ab-gehen, O. s.	
station, Station, f. -en.	
stay, remain, bleiben, O. s.	
steal, stehlen, O.	
steel pen, Stahlfeder, f. -n.	
step, treten, O. s.	
stiff, steif.	

supply, versorgen.	teacher, Lehrer, <i>m.</i> -s, -.
suppose, glauben; I suppose, vermutlich, wohl.	telephone, t e l e p h o n i e r e n .
supposing, gesetzt.	tell, sagen; erzählen.
sure, secure, si ch e r, gewiß.	ten, z e h n .
surely, gewiß.	tenth, z e h n t .
sure (to be —), freilich, wohl.	than, als.
surprised (I am —), es wundert mich.	thank, d a n k e n (dat.); thank you, d a n k e s chön .
Swede (the), S ch w e d e , <i>m.</i> -n, -n.	thankful, d a n k bar .
Sweden, S ch w e d e n , <i>n.</i> -s.	thanks, gratitude, D a n k , <i>m.</i> -e s .
Swedish, s ch w e d i s ch .	that, d a s .
sweet, sü ß .	that, jen= (jener), d a s .
Swiss, native of Switzerland, S ch w e i z e r , <i>m.</i> -s, -.	the, d e r , d i e , das .
Switzerland, S ch w e i z , <i>f.</i>	theatre, T h e a t e r , <i>n.</i> -s , -, Schauspielhaus, <i>n.</i> -e s .
syllable, S i l b e , <i>f.</i> -n.	-äuser.

T

table, T i s ch , <i>m.</i> -s, -e .	their, ihr .
tailor, Schneid e r , <i>m.</i> -s, -.	then (following a condition), so .
take, nehmen; (require) fordern, erfordern.	then, at that time, d a n n .
take care, sich hüten.	then, in that case, d e n n ; also.
talk, sprechen, reden.	there, d a , dort; over there, d a dr ü b e n .
tall, groß .	there are, es sind, es gibt; there is, es ist, es gibt .
taste, schmecken.	therefore, daher, darum, d e s h a l b .
taste, Geschmack , <i>m.</i> -s ; matter of taste, Geschmacksache , <i>f.</i>	therein, in that, d a r i n .
tea, T e e , <i>m.</i> -s , Abend- brod , <i>n.</i> -(e)s, -e .	thereon, on that, d a r a n .
tea (take —), Abendbrod essen or nehmen.	thereupon, upon that, d a r = a u f .
teach, lehren.	they, sie .
	they, people, one, man .
	think, glauben, meinen, d e n k e n , irreg. N .
	think (I —), nevertheless, doch .
	third, d r i t t .

thirsty (I am —), es dürrt
stet mich, impers.
thirteen, dreizehn.
thirty, dreißig.
this, dies (dieser).
thorn, Dorn, m. —s, —en.
thorough, durchtrieben.
thou, du.
though, doch, aber; as
though, als ob.
thousand, Tausend, n.
—s, —e.
three, drei.
through, durch (acc.).
through or done with, fertig.
thumb, Daumen, m. —s, —.
Thuringia, Thüringen,
n. —s.
Thursday, Donnerstag,
m. —s, —e.
thus, so, so.
thy, dein.
ticket, Billet', n. —(e)s,
—e.
ticket office, Billettbüro, n. —s, —s.
ticket there and back, Reisebillett, n. —(e)s, —e.
time, Zeit, f. —en, Mal, n.
—es, —e.
time (that —), damals.
time (at the same —), also,
mit.
time-table, Fahrplan, m.
—(e)s, —e or —äne.
tired, müde.
to, bis (acc.), nach (dat.),
zu (dat.).
to-day, heute.

together with, mit, mit=
tolerably, ziemlich. [samt.
to-morrow, morgen.
to-morrow evening, morgen abend.
to-morrow morning, morgen früh.
tongue, Zunge, f. —n.
too, auch (also), zu, mit=.
town, Stadt, f. —äfte; (go)
down town, in die Stadt.
trade, Handwerk, n.
—(e)s, —e.
train, Zug, m. —es, —üge.
train (accommodation),
Personenzug, m. —(e)s,
—üge.
train (fast or express),
Schnellzug.
transitive, transitiv.
translate, übersetzen.
treat of, handeln von.
tree, Baum, m. —es, —äume.
tree (little), Bäumchen.
trifle, Bischofchen (bischofchen);
Kleinigkeit, f. —en.
true (is it not — or so),
richt wahr?
trunk, Koffer, m. —s, —.
try, versuchen.
Tuesday, Dienstag, m.
—s, —e.
twelfth, zwölft.
twelve, zwölf.
twentieth, zwanzigst.
twenty, zwanzig.
twenty-one, einundzwanzig.
two, zwei.

U

- umbrella, Regenschirm, *m.*
-(e)s, -e.
uncle, Oheim, *m.* -s, -e,
Onkel, *m.* -s, -.
under, unter (dat. or
acc.).
understand, verstehen, *O.*
undertake, unternehmen
men, *O.*
uneasy, unruhig.
unfortunately, leider.
United States, die Vereinig-
ten Staaten.
until (conj.), bis.
until (prep.), bis (acc.);
not until, erst.
unwell, unwohl.
unwise, unweise.
up, auf; up stairs, oben.
upon, auf (dat. or acc.).
use, sich bedienen (gen.),
brauchen.
useful, nützlich.
usual, üblich.
usually, gewöhnlich.

V

- vain (in —), vergebens.
valley, Tal, *n.* -s, -äler.
vegetables, Gemüse, *n.* -s, -.
verb, Zeitwort, *n.* -(e)s,
-örter, Verb (um), *n.*
-s, -a or -en.
very, very much, sehr.
Vienna, Wien, *n.* -s.
village, Dorf, *n.* -s, -örfer.

- visit, Besuch, *m.* -s, -e.
visit, besuchen.
voice, Stimme, *f.* -n.
vote, stimmen.

W

- wagon, carriage, Wagen,
m. -s, -.
wait, warten, for, auf
(acc.).
waiter, Kellner, *m.* -s, -.
waiting-room, Wartesaal, *m.*
-(e)s, -äle.
walk, gehen, *O. s.*
walk, promenade, Spazier-
gang, *m.* -(e)s, -änge.
walking (to go out —), spa-
zie'ren gehen, *s.*
wall (of a room), Wand, *f.*
-ände.
want, wollen, irreg. *N.*, wün-
schen, brauchen.
warm, warm.
watch, time-keeper, Uhr,
f. -en.
watch, guard, Wacht, *f.*
-en.
water, Wasser, *n.* -s, -.
way (road), Weg, *m.* -(e)s,
-e.
way (manner), Weise, *f.* -n.
wear, tragen, *O.*
weary, müde.
weather, Wetter, *n.* -s.
Wednesday, Mittwoch, *m.*
-s, -e.
week, Woche, *f.* -n.
well, gut, wohl.

well, I suppose, *w o h l*.
 well (introductory), *nun*.
 well-done, *gar*.
 west, *W e s t e n*, *m.* —*s*.
 what (of — number), *wie=vielst?* what day of the month have we to-day?
den wievielsten d e s M o n a t s h a b e n w i r h eute.
 what, that which, whatever, *w a s*.
 what kind of, *w a s f ü r?*
 when, *a ls*, *w a n n?* *w e n n*.
 where, *w o r*?
 wherein, in what or which, *w o r i n*.
 whereof, of what or which, *w o v o n*.
 whereout, out of what or which, *w o r a u s*.
 wherewith, with what or which, *w o m i t*.
 whether, *ob*.
 which, (*w e l c h*), *w e l c h e r*; rel. *der* or *welcher*.
 while, *w ä h r e n d*, *indem*.
 white, *w e i ß*.
 whitebread, *Weißbrot*, *n.* —*s*.
 who, whoever, he who, *w e r*.
 whole, *g a n g*.
 why, *warum*.
 why (exclamation), *aber, doch, ja*.
 wife, *F r a u*, *f.* —*en*, *G e m a h l i n*, *f.* —*nen*.
 will, *W i l l e (n)*, *m.* —*s*.
 will, *w o l l e n*, irreg. *N.*
 William, *W i l h e l m*, *m.* —*s*.
 William street, *W i l h e l m s t r a ß e*, *f.* —*n*.

willing (be —), *w o l l e n*.
 wind, *W i n d*, *m.* —*eß*, —*e*.
 window, *F e n s t e r*, *n.* —*s*, —.
 wine, *W e i n*, *m.* —(e)s, —*e*.
 winter, *W i n t e r*, *m.* —*s*, —.
 wise, in no wise, *a u f f e i n e W e i s e*, *keineswegs*.
 wish, *W u n s c h*, *m.* —*eß*, —*ü n s c h e*.
 with, *mit* (dat.).
 with, at the house of, *b e i* (dat.).
 without, *ohne* (acc.).
 woman, *F r a u*, *f.* —*en*.
 wonder (I —), *eß w u n d e r t m i c h*, *impers.*
 wood, *H o l z*, *n.* —*eß*, —*e* or —*ö l z e r*.
 wood, grove, *W a l d*, *m.* —*eß*, —*äl d e r*.
 woolen, *w o l l e n*.
 word, *W o r t*, *n.* —(e)s, —*e* or —*örter*.
 work, *A r b e i t*, *f.* —*en*.
 work, *a r b e i t e n*.
 world, *W e l t*, *f.* —*en*.
 write, *s c h r e i b e n*, *O.*
 write over, *u m s c h r e i b e n*, *O.*
 wrong, *u n r e c h t*.
 wrong (be —), *u n r e c h t h a b e n*.

Y

year, *J a h r*, *n.* —*eß*, —*e*.
 yellow, *g e l b*.
 yes, *j a*; o yes, *d o c h*.
 yesterday, *g e s t e r n*.
 yet, *n o c h*; yet, however, *d o c h*.

yet (not —), noch nicht.
yonder, dort.
you, du, Sie.

young, jung.
young lady, Fräulein.
your, dein, Ihr.

INDEX

The references are to pages, and (in smaller figures above the line to) sections.

Ablaut, 35, ⁵, 50, ⁷.

ACCENT 10, ¹⁸; in inseparable and separable verbs, 126, ⁸; Note 28.

ACCUSATIVE CASE, office of, 15, ⁶, 244; nominative and accusative have the same form in feminine and neuter, 16, ⁷; prepositions governing dat. or acc., 53, Note 12; in expressions of time "when?" and "how long?" 86, Note 19; place of dat. and acc. depending upon the same verb, 91, Note 21, 189, ¹⁵; prepositions governing, 39, Note 10, 248; after verbs of measure, 245, ⁷; absolute, 245, ⁸.

ADDRESS, pronouns in, 19, Note 1; 70, Note 14.

ADJECTIVES, of nationality not written with capital initial, 3, ⁶; attributive, 103, ⁸; predicate, 103, ⁴; as adverb, 104, ⁶; as noun, 103, ⁵, 112, ⁷; comparison

of, 119 ff.; when declined, 104, ⁷; declension of, 104, ⁹⁻¹²; first declension of, 104, ⁸; irregular comparison of, 121, Note 26; second declension of, 111, ⁸⁻⁴; second declension, class I (after *der*-words), 111, ⁶⁻¹⁰; second declension, class II, after *ein*-words), 113, ¹¹⁻¹⁴; governing the genitive, 246, the dative, 246, the accusative, 247.

ADJUNCTS OF THE VERB, order of, in the sentence, 188, ¹²⁻²⁰; nouns, 189, ¹⁸, 1, ²; personal and reflexive pronouns, 190, ¹⁵, ⁸; adverbs, 190, ¹⁵, ⁶; prepositions, 191, ¹⁹, 251, ⁸, ⁹.

ADVERB, 225, ⁴⁻¹⁸; compound adverb instead of preposition with demonstrative, 22, ¹⁰, or relative pronoun, 84, Note 18; adjective used as, 104, ⁶; comparison of, 119, ⁸, ⁶; order of in the sentence, 190, ¹⁵, ⁵.

- ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS,** 228, ¹⁸.
- ALPHABET**, German, 1; use of capitals, 3, ⁶; 19, Note 1, 112, ⁷, 103, ⁶; in German script, 271.
- als (when)**, Appendix 255.
- am**, with superlative of adjective, 119, ⁵.
- ARRANGEMENT**, of the sentence, 61, Note 13; 70, Note 15; 78, Note 16; Lessons XXV and XXVI.
- ARTICLE (definite)**, serves to introduce German declension, 15; declension of, 16, ⁸; to be prefixed in naming German nouns, 17, Remark; abbreviated and appended to preceding word, 17, Remark; for English possessive, 23, Note 4; used when we do not have it in English, Appendix 240; separated by intervening words from its noun, 189, ¹⁸, 211, ⁴.
- ARTICLE (indefinite)**, declension of, 28, ⁴; omitted in German, 241.
- ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE**, 103, ⁸.
aufs, with superlative of adverb, 120, ⁶.
- AUXILIARIES**, of tense, 57, ⁴⁷; sein instead of haben, 58, ⁸; of mood see "MODAL AUXILIARIES"; of passive, 172, ¹⁻⁶; "causative" auxiliary, 151, ⁹.
- BRACKETS**, how used in the Exercises, 19, Remark.
- CAPITAL LETTERS**, use of, 3, ⁵, 103, ⁶, 112, ⁷; in pronouns of address, 19, Note 1.
- CARDINAL NUMERALS**, 33, Note 8, 41.
- CASES**, 16, ⁶; table of case endings in first noun-declension, 76, ¹⁸; different cases in German and English after a verb, 94, Note 22; in second noun-declension, 96, ⁵; table of noun-declensions, 98; in class II. of second adjective-declension, 113, ¹².
- "CAUSATIVE AUXILIARY,"** 151, ⁹.
- CHARACTER**, German printed, 1; written, 271.
- chen, -lein**, declension of nouns in, 76, ¹⁶; significance of, 78, Note 17; gender and declension of, not indicated in the vocabularies, 277, ⁸.
- CLASSES**, in first declension of nouns, 75, ¹⁸; in second declension of adjectives, 111, ^{4, 5, 11}.
- COMMAND OR WISH**, use of the subjunctive to express, 218, ⁶, 220, ⁵.
- COMPARISON**, of adjectives and adverbs, Lesson XVI, diminishing, 121, ⁸.
- COMPOUND ADVERBS**, used instead of preposition with

- relative or demonstrative pronoun, 84, Note 18.
- COMPOUND NOUNS**, declension and gender of, 75, ¹¹, 91, Note 20; in -mann have -leute in plural, 129, Note 27.
- COMPOUND RELATIVES**, 90, ⁶.
- COMPOUND TENSES**, formation of, 57, ⁴⁻⁸; paradigm of, 59, ¹⁰; position of, in the sentence, 61, Note 13, 188, ¹⁰, 191, ¹⁸; of haben, sein, werden, 66-69; in subjunctive, 142, ⁸.
- COMPOUND VERBS**, see INSEPARABLE and SEPARABLE VERBS.
- CONDITION**, expressed by inversion of subject and verb, 70, Note 15, 144, Note 30, 196, ⁵; subjunctive of, 141, ⁶.
- CONDITIONAL MOOD**, 141, ⁶.
- CONDITIONAL SENTENCE**, the clause following introduced by so, 220, Remark.
- CONJUGATION OF VERBS**, New and Old, 35, ⁴⁻⁷; New, 36, ⁸⁻¹⁶; Old, 43, ⁴⁻¹⁰. See also VERBS.
- CONJUNCTIONS**, 228-9; general connectives, 196, ⁶; Appendix, 254; adverbial, 78, Remark, 228, ¹⁸; subordinating, 197, ¹⁰⁻¹⁸, Appendix, 255.
- CONSONANT SOUNDS**, English equivalents, 4-9; exercise on, 12.
- CONTRACTIONS**, scarcity of in German, 24, Footnote 2.
- damit (*in order that*) introduces transposed sentences, 78, Note 16, 197, ¹⁰; followed by the subjunctive, 219, ².
- das**, referring to plural number and different genders, 22, ⁸.
- daß**, introduces transposed sentences, 78, Note 16, 197, ¹⁰; when expressing a purpose followed by the subjunctive, 219, ²; omission of, causes change from transposed to normal order, 197, ¹².
- DATIVE CASE**, office of, 16, ⁶; Appendix 243; always ends in n in plural, 16, ⁷; as indirect object after a verb, 16, ⁶; prepositions governing, 45, Note 11; prepositions governing dat. or acc., 53, Note 12; e (in parenthesis) may be dropped, 76, ¹⁴; order of dat. and acc. depending upon the same verb, 91, Note 21, 188, ¹⁶; after a verb where an objective case is used in English, 94, Note 22; of possession, 85, Footnote 2; with verbs, Appendix 246; with adj. and adv., Appendix 246; prepositions, Appendix 248.

- DAY, time of, 136, Note 29; 139, Conversation 17.
- DAY OF THE MONTH, 81, Vocabulary.
- DAYS OF THE WEEK, 72, Vocabulary.
- DECLENSION, general introduction to, 15-16; of nouns, a table of, 98; see NOUNS; of compound nouns, 91, Note 20; of adjectives, see ADJECTIVES.
- DEFINITE ARTICLE, see der.
- dein (possessive adjective), declension of, 28, ⁸.
- DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, 97, ⁸.
- denn (*for*), does not require transposed order of sentence, 188, ¹¹.
- DEPENDENT SENTENCE, arrangement of, 197, ⁹⁻¹⁴.
- der and welcher, may both introduce a relative clause, 90, ⁸.
- der (definite article), declension of, 16, ⁸; "der" words, 21, ⁵⁻⁶, III, ⁴⁻⁵; appended in abbreviated form to preceding word, 17, Remark; for English possessive, 23, Note 4; where we do not have it in English, Appendix 240; declension of adjective after, III, ⁸.
- der (demonstrative pronoun), declension of, 97, ⁸.
- der (relative pronoun), declension of, 90, ⁷.
- "der" WORDS, 21, ⁵⁻⁶, III, ⁴⁻⁵; declension of adjective after, III, ⁴⁻⁷.
- dies (dieser), declension of, 21, ⁶.
- dieses referring to plural number and different genders, 22, ⁸.
- DIMINUTIVES, in -chen and -lein, 76, ⁶, 78, Note 17.
- DIPHTHONGS, table of English equivalents of, 4-9; Exercise on, 12.
- DIRECT OBJECT, of a transitive verb, 16, ⁸; in English not always so in German, 94, Note 22.
- doch, schon, etc., how used and importance of, 78, Remark.
- du, how used, 19, Note 1; 37, ¹⁴, 70, Note 14; declension of, 69.
- dürfen, signification of, 151, ¹²; conjugation of, 153, ¹⁴; uses, 149, ¹⁻¹².
- e, in personal endings of the verb, 36, ¹⁰⁻¹⁵; when inserted before preterit ending, 37, ¹⁸; in gen. and dat. of nouns, 76, ¹⁴.
- ein (indefinite article), declension of, 28, ⁴; (numerical), declension and uses of, 33, Note 8.
- "ein" WORDS, 28, ⁵⁻⁶; declension of adjective after, 113, ¹¹⁻¹².

einige (*some*), 23, Note 3; III, ⁵.

-el, nouns in, 76, ¹⁶.

EMPHASIS, inversion to express, 196, ⁵.

-en, nouns in, 76, ¹⁶.

ENDINGS, of nouns and adjectives, see CASES.

ENDINGS, of verbs, see PERSONAL ENDINGS.

ENGLISH AND GERMAN, comparison between, with reference to the pronunciation, 3, ⁶⁻¹⁶; periphrastic forms of the verb, 19, Note 2, 39, Note 9; order of the sentence, 187, ⁵, ⁸, 195, ¹, 197, ⁷; preposition with case and compound adverb, 84, Note 18; different cases after a verb, 94, Note 22; use of the definite article, 23, Note 4; use of the passive voice, 173, ⁵⁻⁹; use of reflexive verbs, 179, ³; genitive after reflexives, 182, Note 40; use of impersonal verbs, 182, ¹⁰; use of the present and perfect tenses, 66, ⁵; use of the subjunctive, 218, ¹⁻⁶; tenses in indirect statement, 219, Note; use of the perfect and preterit tenses, 66, ⁶⁻⁷; words historically related, see the Vocabularies.

entweder, does not require transposed order of sentence, 188, ¹¹.

er, declension of, 78.

-er, nouns in, 76, ¹⁶.

es, declension of, 78; meaning "there," 27, Footnote 1, 30, Note 7; in impersonal verbs, 181, ¹⁻¹⁰; substitute for adjectives and nouns, 18, Footnote 1.

es gibt, es ist, (*there is, there are*), distinction between, 30, Note 7.

etwas, translates *some* when, 23, Note 3.

euer (gen. plural of du), 69. euer (possessive adjective), declension of, 28, ⁵⁻⁶.

FEMININE NOUNS, rules for, 237; do not change for declension in the singular, 75, ⁹; in first declension, 74, ⁵, 76, ¹⁶, 83, ⁶; in second declension, 97, ⁴, ⁷; in -in, 99, Note 24. See also GENDER.

FIRST DECLENSION, of nouns, 74, ⁴⁻¹²; of adjectives, 103, ¹⁻¹².

FOREIGN WORDS, pronunciation of, 10, ¹⁴.

FRENCH AND GERMAN, comparison between, with reference to the pronunciation, oi 7, ü 8; use of the passive voice, 175, ⁸; indefinite pronoun in, 25, Note 5.

für, in was für (*what kind of*), 63, 84, Vocabulary.

FUTURE TENSE, how formed,

- 58, ⁶; of conjecture, 92, footnote 7.
- ge-**, used to form past participle, 36, ⁸; omitted in inseparable verbs, 128, ¹²; omitted in *geboren* as auxiliary of passive, 172, ².
- geben**, inflection of the simple tenses indicative, 44, ¹⁰; of the subjunctive, 144, ¹⁰.
- GENDER**, general remarks on, 15, ⁴, ⁵; of infinitives used as nouns, 205, ¹⁷; of nouns in *d̄en* and *lein*, 78, ¹⁷; of nouns in *el*, *en*, *er*, 76, ¹⁶; of nouns in *tunf*, *nis*, and *sal*, 83, ⁶; of compound nouns, 75, ¹¹, 91, Note 20; of nouns in *-in*, 99, Note 24; See Appendix, 237, 238; also **MASCULINE**, **FEMININE**, and **NEUTER**.
- GENITIVE CASE**, office of, 16, ⁶, 243; ending in nouns, 75, ¹, 96, ⁶; must be known in order to decline a noun, 75, ¹⁰; whether *-es*, or *-s*, 75, ¹, ¹⁴; after reflexive verbs, 182, Note 32; mode of indication of in the vocabularies, 277, ²; with prepositions, Appendix 243; verbs, Appendix 245; adj., Appendix 246; adverbial, Appendix 243, ⁶.
- GERMAN PRINTED CHARACTER**, I; written, 287.
- haben**, inflection of present indicative of, 23; of preterit indicative of, 29, ⁷; used as tense auxiliary, 57, ⁴, ⁸; distinguished from *sein*, 58, ⁸; inflection of compound tenses indicative of, 67; simple tenses subjunctive of, 142, ⁶.
- have (let, cause)**, 151, ⁹.
- HOUR**, of the day, mode of expressing, 136, Note 29, Conversation, 17.
- how long? when?** expressions of time in answer to, 86, Note 19.
- HYPHEN**, indicates separable verbs in the vocabularies, 277, ¹.
- ich**, not written with a capital, 3, ⁶; declension of, 61.
- if**, expressed by inverted order of sentence, 70, Note 15, 196, ⁶.
- IMPERATIVE MOOD**, formation of, 37, ¹⁵; place supplied by the subjunctive, 220, ⁵.
- IMPERFECT TENSE**, see **PRETERTIT**.
- IMPERSONAL VERBS**, definition of, 181, ¹; proper impersonals, 181, ⁸; verbs used like proper impersonals, 181, ⁶; more common in German than in English, 182, ¹⁰; no new mode of inflection, 182, ¹¹.
- in**, feminine nouns in, 99, Note 24.

in order that, expressed by daß, damit, with the subjunctive, 78, Note 16, 219, ³.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE, see ARTICLE (indefinite).

INDICATIVE MOOD, nature of, 218, ⁴. See also VERBS.

INDIRECT OBJECT, dative the case of, 16, ⁶; order in sentence, 91, Note 21, 189, ¹⁵.

INDIRECT STATEMENT, subjunctive of, 219.

INFINITIVE MOOD, ending of, 36, ⁶; place of, in the sentence, 39, Footnote, 61, Note 13, 188, ¹⁰, 191, ¹⁸; gender of, when used as noun, 205, ¹⁷; omission after the "modal auxiliaries," 149, ⁴; active translated by passive, 205, ¹⁸; not preceded by *zu* after what verbs, 149, ⁸, 204, ¹², ¹⁴; two at the end of a transposed sentence, 191, ¹⁸; omission of subject, 201, ⁷; used instead of the past participle in "modal auxiliaries," 150, ⁵.

INSEPARABLE PREFIXES, 125, ⁶⁻¹²; separable prefixes used as, 136, Note 28, meaning, 126, ¹⁰. See also in German-English Vocabulary.

INSEPARABLE VERBS, 125, ⁶⁻¹²; inflection of, 128, ¹⁸.

INTERJECTIONS, 230, ¹⁹.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, 89, ⁵.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE, order of, 70, Note 15, 106, ⁶.

INTRATRANSITIVE VERBS, sein as auxiliary in compound tenses, 58, ⁸.

INVERTED SENTENCE, order of, 31, Footnote 1; 46, Footnote 4, 70, Note 15, 187, ⁶; in what cases required, 196, ⁸; to express a condition, 70, Note 15, 144, Note 30, 196, ⁵; not required after general connectives or adverbial conjunctions, 188, ¹¹.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON, of adjectives, 121, Note 26.

ITALICS, signification of, in the vocabularies, 277, ⁸.

jen- (jener), declension of, 21, ⁶; contrasted with, dieser, 22, ⁷, 97, ⁸.

sein, declension of, 28, ⁵.

fönnen, signification of, 152, Note 13; dependent verb often not expressed, 149, ⁴, does not take *zu* before a following infinitive, 204, ¹²; conjugation of, 153, ¹⁴; infinitive used for participle, 150, ⁵; further uses of, 151, ¹¹.

lassen, "causative auxiliary," 151, ⁹; does not take

zu before a following infinitive, 204, ¹², 205, ¹⁶; further uses, 175, ⁹.
let (have, cause), see *Lassen*.
 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET, printed, 1, written, 171.
 See also ALPHABET.

man, meaning of, 25, Note 5; difference between man and sie in translating *they*, 30, Note 6; oblique cases of, 25, Note 5.
 manch- (*mancher*), declension of, 21, ⁹.
 Mann, distinguished from Mensch, 99, Note 23; form of plural of, in compounds, 129, Note 37.
 MANNER (adverbs of), position of, in the sentence, 190, ⁵.
 MASCULINE NOUNS, rules for, 237; of the first declension, 83, ⁵; in el, en, er, 76, ¹⁶, 89, ⁴; of second declension, 96, ⁴. See also GENDER.
 MEASURE, case of the noun after words of, 39, Footnote 2, 99, Note 25.

mein (possessive adjective), declension of, 28, ⁴.
 "MODAL AUXILIARIES," Lessons XX-XXII; defective in English, 149, ²; substitutes for, 150, ⁸; verb depending upon them often not expressed, 149, ⁴; do not take zu before a fol-

lowing infinitive, 149, ³, 204, ¹²; inflection of, 153-4, 160-1, 167-8; infinitive used for participle, 150, ⁵; peculiar uses, 149-167; signification of, see dürfen, etc., in this index.
 MODIFIED VOWELS, see *Umlaut*.

mögen, signification of, 158, ²; dependent verb often not expressed, 149, ⁴; does not take zu before a following infinitive, 204, ¹²; conjugation of, 160-1; infinitive used for participle 150, ⁵; further uses, 159.

MONOSYLLABIC NOUNS, retain e (in parenthesis) in gen. and dat., 76, ¹⁴.

MONTHS, names of, 81, Vocabulary.

MOODS, comparison between indicative and subjunctive, 141, ¹⁻⁴, 218, ⁴. See also IMPERATIVE, INDICATIVE, INFINITIVE, and SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

müssen, signification of, 165, ¹⁻²; dependent verb often not expressed, 149, ⁴; does not take zu before a following infinitive, 204, ¹²; conjugation of, 167, ⁴; infinitive used for participle, 150, ⁵.

NEGATIVES, modify the personal verb, 150, ¹; posi-

tion of in the sentence, 190, ¹⁶.

NEUTER NOUNS, rules for, 237; in first declension, 74, ⁵⁻⁶; in -*hen* and -*lein*, 76, ¹⁶, 78, Note 17; in class III of first declension, 89, ⁴. See also **GENDER**.

NEW CONJUGATION, characteristics of, 35, ⁵⁻⁶; formation of, 36, ⁸⁻¹⁰; inflection of a verb of, 37, ¹⁶; list of irregular verbs of, Appendix 269.

NEW SOUNDS, in German, 4-8.

nicht, position of, in the sentence, 40, Footnote 2.

NOMINATIVE CASE, office of, 16, ⁶; nominative and accusative the same in feminine and neuter, 16, ⁷; plural, ending of, 75, ¹², 96, ⁵; must be known in order to decline a noun, 75, ¹⁰; plural, mode of indication in the vocabularies, 277, ².

NORMAL ORDER OF SENTENCE, 187, ⁵, 188, ⁹⁻¹⁰; not affected by the general connectives, 188, ¹¹; instead of transposed order when *dass* is omitted, 197, ¹².

NOUNS, declension of, 74, ⁴⁻¹¹; first declension of, 75, ¹²⁻¹⁵; first declension, class I, 76, ¹⁶⁻¹⁷; exceptions, 241; class II, 83, ⁴⁻⁶,

exceptions, 242; class III, 89, ⁴⁻⁵; exceptions, 242; declension and gender of compound, 75, ¹¹, 91, Note 21; second declension of, 96, ⁴⁻⁷; a table of, 98; adjectives used as, 103, ⁵; order of, in the sentence, with double gender, 238, 189, ¹⁸.

NUMERALS, cardinal, 33, 41; ordinal, 72, Vocabulary.

NUMERALS, meaning of, before words in the Exercises, 40, Footnote.

OBJECT, indirect, 16, ⁶; direct, of a transitive verb, 16, ⁶.

OLD CONJUGATION, characteristics of, 35, ⁵; formation of, 43, ⁴⁻¹⁰; classes and irregularities, 50, ⁷⁻⁸; inflection of a verb of, see *geben*; list of verbs of, Appendix 259.

OPTATIVE OR IMPERATIVE SENTENCE, arrangement of, 196, ⁴.

OPTATIVE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, 220, ⁴.

ORDER OF THE SENTENCE, Lessons XXV and XXVI.

PARENTHESIS, meaning of, in the Exercises, 18, Footnote; 25, Footnote 3.

PARTICIPLE, formation of past, 36, ⁸, 44, ⁵; of present, 36, ⁹, 44, ⁶; position of, in

- the sentence, 61, Note 13, 188, ¹⁰, 191, ¹⁸⁻¹⁹; Lesson XXVIII; declension of, 104, ¹.
- PARTITIVE CONSTRUCTION**, 99, Note 25.
- PARTS OF SPEECH**, names of, in German, 64; Vocabulary.
- PASSIVE VOICE**, nature and formation of, 172, ¹⁻⁹; conjugation of a verb in the, 172, ⁸; distinction between passive and form with *sein*, 173, ⁴⁻⁶; more frequent in English than German, 175, ⁸; passive use of active infinite, 175, ⁹.
- PERFECT TENSE**, formation of, 58, ^{5, 8, 9}; use of, 66, ^{5, 7}.
- PERIPHRASTIC FORMS OF THE VERB**, (*I do, I am, I have been*, etc.), 19, Note 2, 39, Note 9, 47, Footnotes.
- PERSONAL ENDINGS**, of present, 36, ¹⁰; of preterit, 37, ^{12, 18}.
- PERSONAL PART OF THE VERB**, position of in the sentence, 187, ⁴, 188, ¹⁰, 195, ⁴, 197, ⁴.
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS**, use of, in address, 19, Note 1, 37, ¹⁴, 70, Note 14; declension of, 61, 69, 78; place of in the sentence, 90, Note 21, 189, ¹⁶; reflexive use of, 180, ⁴.
- PLACE (adverbs of)**, position of in the sentence, 189, ¹⁴, 190, ⁵.
- PLUPERFECT TENSE**, formation of, 58, ⁵.
- PLURAL**, of nouns, 76, ¹⁵; dative always ends in -n; ending determines class in first declension of nouns, 75, ¹²; ending in second declension, 75, ⁸, 96, ⁵; nouns with double, 239.
- POSITIVE DEGREE OF ADJECTIVES**, 104, ⁹.
- POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES**, definite article used for, 23, Note 4; declension of, 28, ⁸; pronouns, 29, ⁹.
- POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS**, 97, ⁹; agreement of, 99, ¹⁰.
- PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**, 103, ⁴; its form in the superlative, 119, ⁸.
- PREFIXES**, separable used inseparably, 136, Note 28, 253. See also INSEPARABLE and SEPARABLE PREFIXES.
- PREPOSITIONS**, contracted with definite article, 17, Remark; governing dat. or acc., 53, Note 12 and Appendix 249; compounded with an adverb instead of a following case, 84, Note 18; governing acc., 39, Note 10, and Appendix 248; general uses, 227, Appendix 249, with inf. 202, ⁵; with gen.,

- 227, ¹⁴, and Appendix 247; dat., 45, Note 11, and Appendix 248; acc., 244, 248.
- PRESENT TENSE**, formation of, in the indicative, 36, ¹⁰; used for English future, 65, ⁴; for English perfect, 66, ⁵; formation of, in the subjunctive, 141, ⁸.
- PRETERIT TENSE**, distinguishes between New and Old Conjugations, 35, ⁵; formation of, in New Conjugation, 37, ¹²; in Old, 43, ⁴ and ⁸⁻¹⁰; in subjunctive, 141, ⁴.
- PRINCIPAL PARTS OF A VERB**, 36, ⁷.
- PRONOUNS**, possessive, 29, ⁶, 97, ⁸; agreement of, 99, ¹⁰; personal, 61, 69, 78; relative, 90, ⁷⁻¹²; interrogative, 89, ⁵, 84, Note 18; demonstrative, 22, ⁹, 97, ⁸; order of in the sentence, 189, ¹⁶; reflexive, 180, ⁴.
- PRONUNCIATION**, remarks on, 3, ⁶ ff, 11, ¹⁶.
- QUANTITY**, 9, ⁸⁻¹².
- REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**, position of, in the sentence, 189, ¹⁶; form of, 180, ⁴.
- REFLEXIVE VERBS**, definition of, 179, ¹⁻⁶; proper reflexives, 179, ²; more frequent in German than English, 179, ³; conjugation, 180,
- ⁶; followed by the genitive, 182, Note 32.
- REGULAR OR NORMAL ORDER OF SENTENCE**, 188, ⁹⁻²⁰.
- RELATIVE PRONOUNS**, declension and use of, 90, ⁷⁻¹²; never omitted, 90, ¹¹; require transposed order of sentence, 91, ¹², 197, ¹⁰.
- ROMAN**, printed character, I; written, 271.
- ROOT**, of a verb, 36, ⁴.
- SCRIPT**, German, 271.
- SEASONS**, names of, 86, Vocabulary.
- SECOND DECLENSION**, of nouns, 96, ⁴⁻⁷; of adjectives, III, ⁸⁻¹⁴.
- sein** (verb), inflection of present indicative of, 17; of preterit indicative of, 29, ⁷; use as tense auxiliary, 57, ⁴⁻⁵⁻⁸; distinguished from *haben*, 58, ⁸; inflection of compound tenses indicative of, 67; not auxiliary of the passive, 173, ⁴; inflection of simple tenses subjunctive of, 142, ⁸.
- SENTENCE**, order of, has three forms, 187, ⁴; normal order of, 187, ⁵, 188, ⁹⁻²⁰; inverted order of, 187, ⁶, 195, ¹⁻⁸; transposed order of, 187, ⁷, 197, ⁹⁻¹⁴; order of the verbal adjuncts in the, 188, ¹⁰⁻¹²⁻²⁰.
- SEPARABLE PREFIXES**, 134,

- ¹⁻⁶, 252; separable prefixes used inseparably, 136, Note 28, Appendix 253.
- SEPARABLE VERBS**, conjugation of, 134, ⁶; separable used inseparably, 136, Note 28; Appendix, 253. See also VERBS.
- fie**, declension of, 69; both singular and plural, 19, Note 1.
- solch- (solcher)**, declension of, 22, ⁶.
- follen**, signification of, 165, ¹⁻⁸; dependent verb often not expressed, 149, ⁴; does not take *zu* before a following infinitive, 204, ¹²; conjugation of, 167, ⁴; infinitive used for participle, 150, ⁵.
- some**, translation of, 23, Note 3.
- SOUNDS**, new, in German, 4-8.
- STEM**, of a verb, 36, ⁶.
- STRONG VERBS**, see OLD CONJUGATION.
- SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**, formation of, 141, ¹⁻⁸; inflection of, 143, ⁹⁻¹⁰; nature of, 141, ¹, 218, ⁴⁻⁶; in conditions, 220, ³; in indirect statement, 219, ⁶; to express a wish or command, 218, ⁶, 220, ⁵.
- SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS**, 146, Note 31, 255.
- SUBSTANTIVE**, see NOUN.
- SUPERLATIVE DEGREE OF AD-**
- JECTIVES**, 119, ⁴⁻⁵; formation of, 119, ⁴; declension of, 119, ⁴.
- TENSES**, formation of the compound, 57, ⁴⁻⁹; correspondence of, 65, ¹⁻⁸; present for English perfect, 66, ⁵; in subjunctive of indirect statement, 219; perfect for English preterit, 66, ¹.
- there is, there are**, how to translate, 30, Note 7.
- TIME** (adverbs of), position of, in the sentence, 190, ⁶.
- TIME**, expressions of, in answer to "when?" "how long?", 86, Note 19; of day, mode of expressing, 136, Note 29; and Conversation 17.
- TRANSITIVE VERB**, can be turned into passive, can be used reflexively, 175, ⁶, 179, ².
- TRANSPOSED ORDER OF SENTENCE**, 187, ¹, 197, ⁹⁻¹⁴; 47. Footnote 4, 146, Note 31; when required, 197, ¹⁰; changed to normal order when *dass* is omitted, 197, ¹²; changed to inverted order when *wenn* is omitted, 198, ¹³; position of personal part of verb when there are two infinitives at end of, 191, ¹⁸.
- Um'laut**, nature of, 2, ¹,

ö 7, ü 8; in conjugation of the verb, 52, ⁸, 141, ⁸; in plural of nouns, 76, ¹⁸; in nouns in *d̄en* and *lein*, 78, Note 17; in feminines with ending *-in*, 99, Note 24; in comparison of adjectives, 119, ⁸.
unser (possessive adjective), declension of, 28, ^{5, 6}.

VARIATION, of radical vowel in verbs of the Old Conjugation, 43, ⁴, 50, ⁷.

VERBS, emphatic and progressive forms, 19, Note 2; conjugation of, 35, ⁴⁻¹⁰; stem of, 36, ⁶; principal parts of, 36, ⁷; New Conjugation, 36, ⁸⁻¹⁶; personal endings of present and preterit, 36, ¹⁰⁻¹²; Old Conjugation, 43, ⁴⁻¹⁰; compound tenses of, 57, ⁴⁻¹⁰; (*haben*, *sein*, *werden*), 66, ^{9 ff}; inseparable and separable, 125, ⁴; inseparable, 125, ⁶⁻¹⁸; separable, 134, ⁴⁻⁵; separable used inseparably, 136, Note 28; in the passive voice, 172, ¹⁻⁹; "causative auxiliary," 151, ⁹; omission of *zu* before the infinitive of, 204, ¹²; position of, in the sentence, Lessons XXV and XXVI; order in the sentence of adjuncts of, 188, ¹⁰⁻²⁰; reflexive, 179, ¹⁻⁶; reflexive with genitive, 182,

Note 32; impersonal, 181, ⁷⁻¹¹; conjugation of in the subjunctive, 143, ⁹⁻¹⁰; nature and uses of the subjunctive, 218, ⁴⁻⁶; of Old and Irregular Conjugation, list of, 259; governing the genitive, 245; the dative, 246.

VOCABULARY, German-English, 277; English-German, 319.

VOICE, passive, 172, ¹⁻⁹; active translated by English passive, 175, ^{8, 9}.

VOWELS, modified, 7, 8; quantity of, 9, ⁸⁻¹²; English equivalents, 3, ^{6 ff}; pronunciation of, 3, ⁶⁻⁸; exercise on, 11; change of, in the Old Conjugation, 52, ⁸, 141, ⁸.

war, declension of, 89, ⁴.

war für, signification of, 63, 84, Vocabulary.

WEAK VERBS, marks of, 50, ⁶.
welch- (*welcher*), declension of, 21, ⁶; use of, 90, ⁷⁻⁹.

wenn, signification of, 258.
wer, declension of, 89, ⁴; signification of, 90, ⁶.

werden, inflection of present and preterit indicative of, 29; use as tense auxiliary, 58, ⁶; inflection of compound tenses of, 68, use as auxiliary of passive, 173, ¹⁻⁷; does not take *zu* before a following in-

- finitive, 204,¹²; forms conditional mood, 141, ⁶.
what kind of? what sort of? how to translate, 63, 84. Vocabulary.
when, how to translate, 255, 257, 258.
when? how long? expressions of time in answer to, 86, Note 19.
WISH OR COMMAND, subjunctive to express, 218, ⁶, 220, ⁸.
wollen, conjugation of, 160, ⁴; signification of, 158, ¹, ⁸; principal verb often not expressed, 149, ⁴; does not take *zu* before a fol- lowing infinitive, 204, ¹²; infinitive used for participle, 150, ⁵; further uses, 159, ⁸.
worden, instead of *gewor- den*, in conjugation of passive, 172, ².
WRITTEN CHARACTER, German, Appendix 271.
YEAR, months of the, 81; seasons of the, 88.
you, how to translate, 19, Note 1, 37, ¹⁴.
zu, when omitted before a following infinitive, 204, ¹²⁻¹⁶.

